



MCUXpresso SDK Documentation

Release 26.03.00-pvw2



NXP
Feb 20, 2026



Table of contents

1	Middleware	3
1.1	Boot	3
1.1.1	MCUXpresso SDK : mcuxsdk-middleware-mcuboot_opensource	3
1.1.2	MCUboot	4
1.2	Connectivity	5
1.2.1	lwIP	5
1.3	eIQ	6
1.3.1	eIQ	6
1.4	File System	35
1.4.1	FatFs	35
1.5	Motor Control	37
1.5.1	FreeMASTER	37
1.6	MultiCore	75
1.6.1	Multicore SDK	75
1.7	Wireless	173
1.7.1	NXP Wireless Framework and Stacks	173
1.7.2	EdgeFast Bluetooth	218
2	RTOS	295
2.1	FreeRTOS	295
2.1.1	FreeRTOS kernel	295
2.1.2	FreeRTOS drivers	295
2.1.3	backoffalgorithm	295
2.1.4	corehttp	295
2.1.5	corejson	295
2.1.6	coremqtt	296
2.1.7	corepkcs11	296
2.1.8	freertos-plus-tcp	296

This documentation contains information specific to the evkmimxrt595 board.

Chapter 1

Middleware

1.1 Boot

1.1.1 MCUXpresso SDK : mcuxsdk-middleware-mcuboot_opensource

Overview

This repository is a fork of MCUboot (<https://github.com/mcu-tools/mcuboot>) for MCUXpresso SDK delivery and it contains the components officially provided in NXP MCUXpresso SDK. This repository is part of the MCUXpresso SDK overall delivery which is composed of several sub-repositories/projects. Navigate to the top/parent repository (mcuxsdk-manifests) for the complete delivery of MCUXpresso SDK.

Documentation

Overall details can be reviewed here: [MCUXpresso SDK Online Documentation](#)

Visit [MCUboot - Documentation](#) to review details on the contents in this sub-repo.

Setup

Instructions on how to install the MCUXpresso SDK provided from GitHub via west manifest [Getting Started with SDK - Detailed Installation Instructions](#)

Contribution

Contributions are not currently accepted. If the intended contribution is not related to NXP specific code, consider contributing directly to the upstream MCUboot project. Once this MCUboot fork is synchronized with the upstream project, such contributions will end up here as well. If the intended contribution is a bugfix or improvement for NXP porting layer or for code added or modified by NXP, please open an issue or contact NXP support.

NXP Fork

This fork of MCUboot contains specific modifications and enhancements for NXP MCUXpresso SDK integration.

See *changelog* for details.

1.1.2 MCUboot



This is MCUboot version 2.3.0

MCUboot is a secure bootloader for 32-bits microcontrollers. It defines a common infrastructure for the bootloader and the system flash layout on microcontroller systems, and provides a secure bootloader that enables easy software upgrade.

MCUboot is not dependent on any specific operating system and hardware and relies on hardware porting layers from the operating system it works with. Currently, MCUboot works with the following operating systems and SoCs:

- [Zephyr](#)
- [Apache Mynewt](#)
- [Apache NuttX](#)
- [RIOT](#)
- [Mbed OS](#)
- [Espressif](#)
- [Cypress/Infineon](#)

RIOT is supported only as a boot target. We will accept any new port contributed by the community once it is good enough.

MCUboot How-tos

See the following pages for instructions on using MCUboot with different operating systems and SoCs:

- [Zephyr](#)
- [Apache Mynewt](#)
- [Apache NuttX](#)
- [RIOT](#)
- [Mbed OS](#)
- [Espressif](#)
- [Cypress/Infineon](#)

There are also instructions for the *Simulator*.

Roadmap

The issues being planned and worked on are tracked using GitHub issues. To give your input, visit [MCUboot GitHub Issues](#).

Source files

You can find additional documentation on the bootloader in the source files. For more information, use the following links:

- [boot/bootutil](#) - The core of the bootloader itself.
- [boot/boot_serial](#) - Support for serial upgrade within the bootloader itself.
- [boot/zephyr](#) - Port of the bootloader to Zephyr.
- [boot/mynewt](#) - Bootloader application for Apache Mynewt.
- [boot/nuttX](#) - Bootloader application and port of MCUboot interfaces for Apache NuttX.
- [boot/mbed](#) - Port of the bootloader to Mbed OS.
- [boot/espressif](#) - Bootloader application and MCUboot port for Espressif SoCs.
- [boot/cypress](#) - Bootloader application and MCUboot port for Cypress/Infineon SoCs.
- [imgtool](#) - A tool to securely sign firmware images for booting by MCUboot.
- [sim](#) - A bootloader simulator for testing and regression.

Joining the project

Developers are welcome!

Use the following links to join or see more about the project:

- [Our developer mailing list](#)
- [Our Discord channel](#) [Get your invite](#)

1.2 Connectivity

1.2.1 lwIP

This is the NXP fork of the [lwIP networking stack](#).

- For details about changes and additions made by NXP, see [CHANGELOG](#).
- For details about the NXP porting layer, see [The NXP lwIP Port](#).
- For usage and API of lwIP, use official documentation at <http://www.nongnu.org/lwip/>.

The NXP lwIP Port

Below is description of possible settings of the port layer and an overview of a few helper functions.

The best place for redefinition of any mentioned macro is `lwipopts.h`.

The declaration of every mentioned function is in `ethernetif.h`. Please check the doxygen comments of those functions before.

Link state Physical link state (up/down) and its speed and duplex must be read out from PHY over MDIO bus. Especially link information is useful for lwIP stack so it can for example send DHCP discovery immediately when a link becomes up.

To simplify this port layer offers a function `ethernetif_probe_link()` which reads those data from PHY and forwards them into lwIP stack.

In almost all examples this function is called every `ETH_LINK_POLLING_INTERVAL_MS` (1500ms) by a function `probe_link_cyclic()`.

By setting `ETH_LINK_POLLING_INTERVAL_MS` to 0 polling will be disabled. On FreeRTOS, `probe_link_cyclic()` will be then called on an interrupt generated by PHY. GPIO port and pin for the interrupt line must be set in the `ethernetifConfig` struct passed to `ethernetif_init()`. On bare metal interrupts are not supported right now.

Rx task To improve the reaction time of the app, reception of packets is done in a dedicated task. The rx task stack size can be set by `ETH_RX_TASK_STACK_SIZE` macro, its priority by `ETH_RX_TASK_PRIO`.

If you want to save memory you can set reception to be done in an interrupt by setting `ETH_DO_RX_IN_SEPARATE_TASK` macro to 0.

Disabling Rx interrupt when out of buffers If `ETH_DISABLE_RX_INT_WHEN_OUT_OF_BUFFERS` is set to 1, then when the port gets out of Rx buffers, Rx enet interrupt will be disabled for a particular controller. Everytime Rx buffer is freed, Rx interrupt will be enabled.

This prevents your app from never getting out of Rx interrupt when the network is flooded with traffic.

`ETH_DISABLE_RX_INT_WHEN_OUT_OF_BUFFERS` is by default turned on, on FreeRTOS and off on bare metal.

Limit the number of packets read out from the driver at once on bare metal. You may define macro `ETH_MAX_RX_PKTS_AT_ONCE` to limit the number of received packets read out from the driver at once.

In case of heavy Rx traffic, lowering this number improves the realtime behaviour of an app. Increasing improves Rx throughput.

Setting it to value < 1 or not defining means “no limit”.

Helper functions If your application needs to wait for the link to become up you can use one of the following functions:

- `ethernetif_wait_linkup()`- Blocks until the link on the passed netif is not up.
- `ethernetif_wait_linkup_array()` - Blocks until the link on at least one netif from the passed list of netifs becomes up.

If your app needs to wait for the IPv4 address on a particular netif to become different than “ANY” address (255.255.255.255) function `ethernetif_wait_ipv4_valid()` does this.

1.3 eIQ

1.3.1 eIQ

eIQ TensorFlow Lite for Micro Library User Guide

- [Overview](#)
- [TensorFlow Lite for Microcontrollers](#)
- [Build Status](#)
 - [Official Builds](#)
 - [Community Supported TFLM Examples](#)
 - [Community Supported Kernels and Unit Tests](#)
- [Contributing](#)
- [Getting Help](#)
- [Additional Documentation](#)
- [RFCs](#)

Overview TensorFlow Lite is an open source software library for running machine learning models on mobile and embedded devices. For more information, see www.tensorflow.org/lite.

For memory constrained devices, the library contains TensorFlow Lite for Microcontrollers. For more information, see www.tensorflow.org/lite/microcontrollers.

The MCUXpresso Software Development Kit (MCUXpresso SDK) provides a comprehensive software package with a pre-integrated TensorFlow Lite for Microcontrollers based on version 25-04-08 (from the 8th of April 2025 with [commit](#)). This document describes the steps required to download and start using the library. Additionally, the document describes the steps required to create an application for running pre-trained models.

Note: The document also assumes knowledge of machine learning frameworks for model training.

TensorFlow Lite for Microcontrollers TensorFlow Lite for Microcontrollers is a port of TensorFlow Lite designed to run machine learning models on DSPs, microcontrollers and other devices with limited memory.


Additional Links:

- [Tensorflow github repository](#)
- [TFLM at tensorflow.org](#)





Build Status

- [GitHub Status](#)




Official Builds

Build Type	Status
CI (Linux)	
Code Sync	 Sync from Upstream TF passing

Community Supported TFLM Examples This table captures platforms that TFLM has been ported to. Please see *New Platform Support* for additional documentation.

Platform	Status
Arduino Coral Dev Board Micro	 CI no status  Arduino examples tests no status
Espressif Systems Dev Boards	 CI passing
Renesas Boards	TFLM Examples for Renesas Boards
Silicon Labs Dev Kits	TFLM Examples for Silicon Labs Dev Kits
Sparkfun Edge Texas Instruments Dev Boards	 CI no status

Community Supported Kernels and Unit Tests This is a list of targets that have optimized kernel implementations and/or run the TFLM unit tests using software emulation or instruction set simulators.

Build Type	Status
Cortex-M	
Hexagon RISC-V	 Run-Hexagon passing
Xtensa	 Run-Xtensa passing
Generate Integration Test	 Generate Integration Tests passing

Contributing See our *contribution documentation*.

Getting Help A Github issue should be the primary method of getting in touch with the TensorFlow Lite Micro (TFLM) team.

The following resources may also be useful:

1. SIG Micro [email group](#) and [monthly meetings](#).
2. SIG Micro [gitter chat room](#).
3. For questions that are not specific to TFLM, please consult the broader TensorFlow project, e.g.:
 - Create a topic on the [TensorFlow Discourse forum](#)
 - Send an email to the [TensorFlow Lite mailing list](#)
 - Create a [TensorFlow issue](#)
 - Create a [Model Optimization Toolkit issue](#)

Additional Documentation

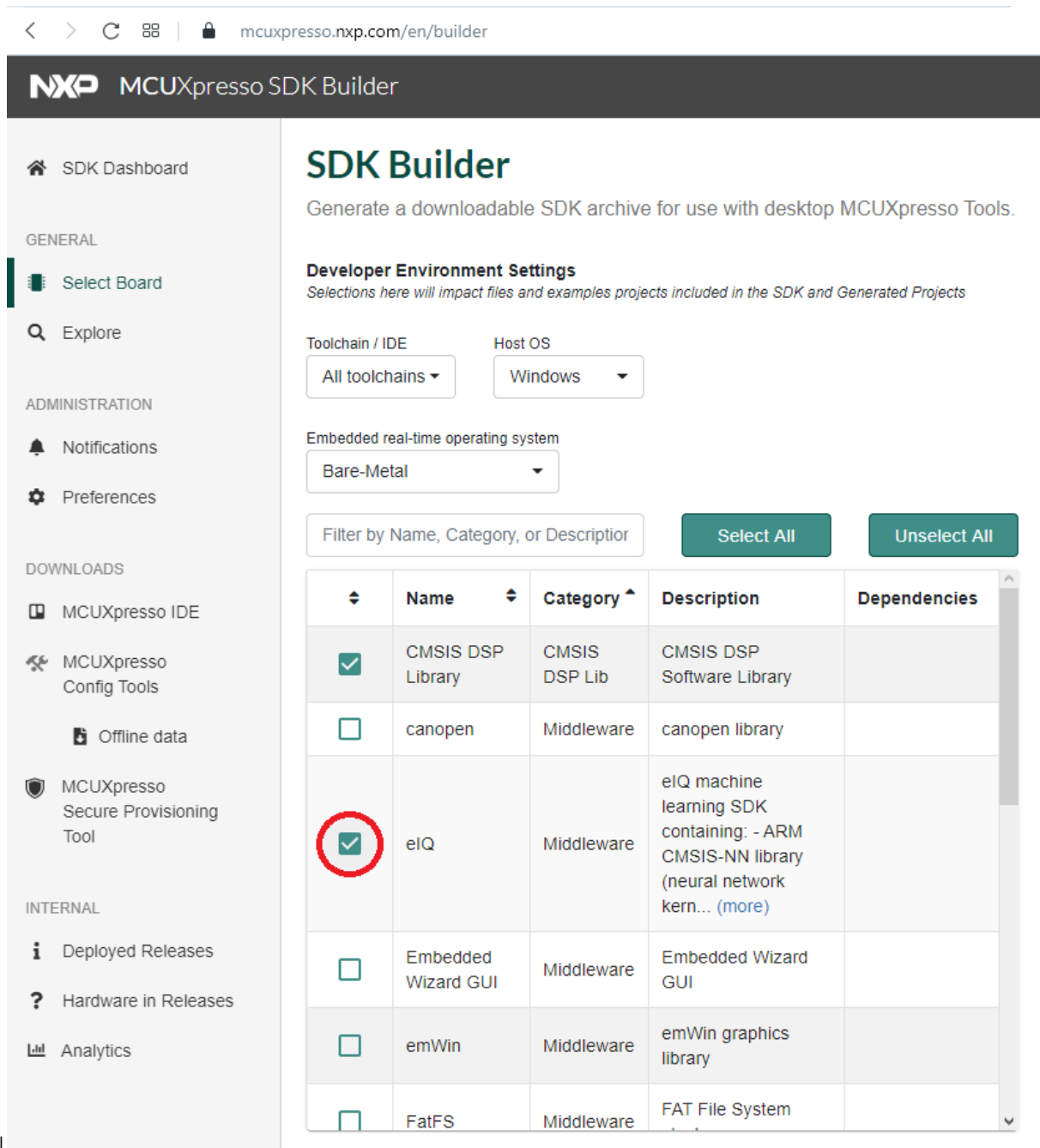
- [Continuous Integration](#)

- *Benchmarks*
- *Profiling*
- *Memory Management*
- *Logging*
- *Porting Reference Kernels from Tflite to TFLM*
- *Optimized Kernel Implementations*
- *New Platform Support*
- Platform/IP support
 - *Arm IP support*
- *Software Emulation with Renode*
- *Software Emulation with QEMU*
- *Python Dev Guide*
- *Automatically Generated Files*
- *Python Interpreter Guide*

RFCs

1. *Pre-allocated tensors*
2. *TensorFlow Lite for Microcontrollers Port of 16x8 Quantized Operators*

Deployment The eIQ TensorFlow Lite for Microcontrollers library is part of the eIQ machine learning software package, which is an optional middleware component of MCUXpresso SDK. The eIQ component is integrated into the MCUXpresso SDK Builder delivery system available on mcuxpresso.nxp.com. To include eIQ machine learning into the MCUXpresso SDK package, the eIQ middleware component is selected in the software component selector on the SDK Builder page when building a new package. See *Figure 1*.



Once the MCUXpresso SDK package is downloaded, it can be extracted on a local machine or imported into the MCUXpresso IDE. For more information on the MCUXpresso SDK folder structure, see the Getting Started with MCUXpresso SDK User’s Guide (document: MCUXSDKGSUG). The package directory structure is similar to *Figure 2*. The eIQ TensorFlow Lite library directories are highlighted in red.

- SDK_2_15_000_EVKB-IMXRT1050
 - boards
 - evkbimxrt1050
 - cmsis_driver_examples
 - component_examples
 - demo_apps
 - driver_examples
 - eiq_examples
 - deepviewrt_camera_label_image
 - deepviewrt_image_detection
 - deepviewrt_labelimage
 - glow_cifar10
 - glow_cifar10_camera
 - glow_lenet_mnist
 - glow_lenet_mnist_camera
 - tflm_cifar10
 - tflm_kws
 - tflm_label_image
 - tflm_iib
 - littlefs_examples
 - lwip_examples
 - project_template
 - sdmmc_examples
 - xip
 - CMSIS
 - components
 - devices
 - docs
 - middleware
 - bm
 - cjson
 - eiq
 - deepviewrt
 - doc
 - glow
 - mpp
 - tensorflow-lite
 - lib
 - signal
 - tensorflow
 - third_party

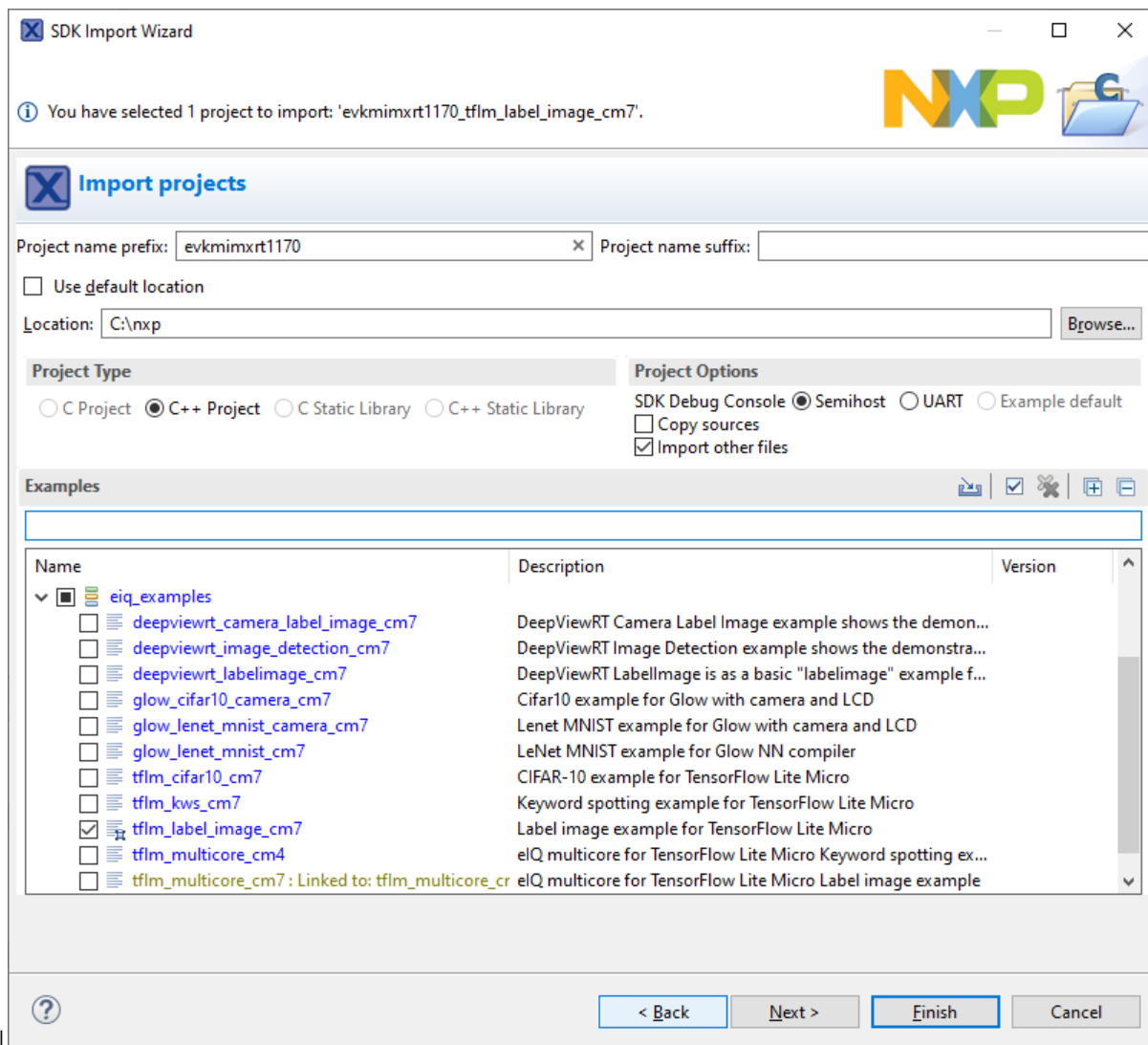
- └─ MIMXRT700-EVK
 - └─ arch
 - └─ boards
 - └─ mimxrt700evk
 - └─ **eiq_examples**
 - └─ mpp_static_image_mobilenet_view
 - └─ mpp_static_image_ultraface_view_tflm
 - └─ tflm_cifar10
 - └─ tflm_cifar10_hifi4
 - └─ tflm_kws
 - └─ tflm_label_image
 - └─ tflm_label_image_ext_mem
 - └─ tflm_label_image_hifi4
 - └─ tflm_lib
 - └─ tflm_modelrunner
 - └─ flash_config
 - └─ project_template
- └─ CMSIS
- └─ components
- └─ devices
- └─ docs
- └─ merged_data
- └─ middleware
 - └─ aws_iot
 - └─ bm
 - └─ dsp
 - └─ eiq
 - └─ doc
 - └─ mpp
 - └─ tensorflow-lite
 - └─ lib
 - └─ signal
 - └─ tensorflow
 - └─ third_party
 - └─ cmsis_nn
 - └─ fft2d
 - └─ flatbuffers
 - └─ gemmlowp
 - └─ kissfft
 - └─ neutron
 - └─ common
 - └─ driver
 - └─ rt700
 - └─ ruy
 - └─ xa_nnlib_hifi4

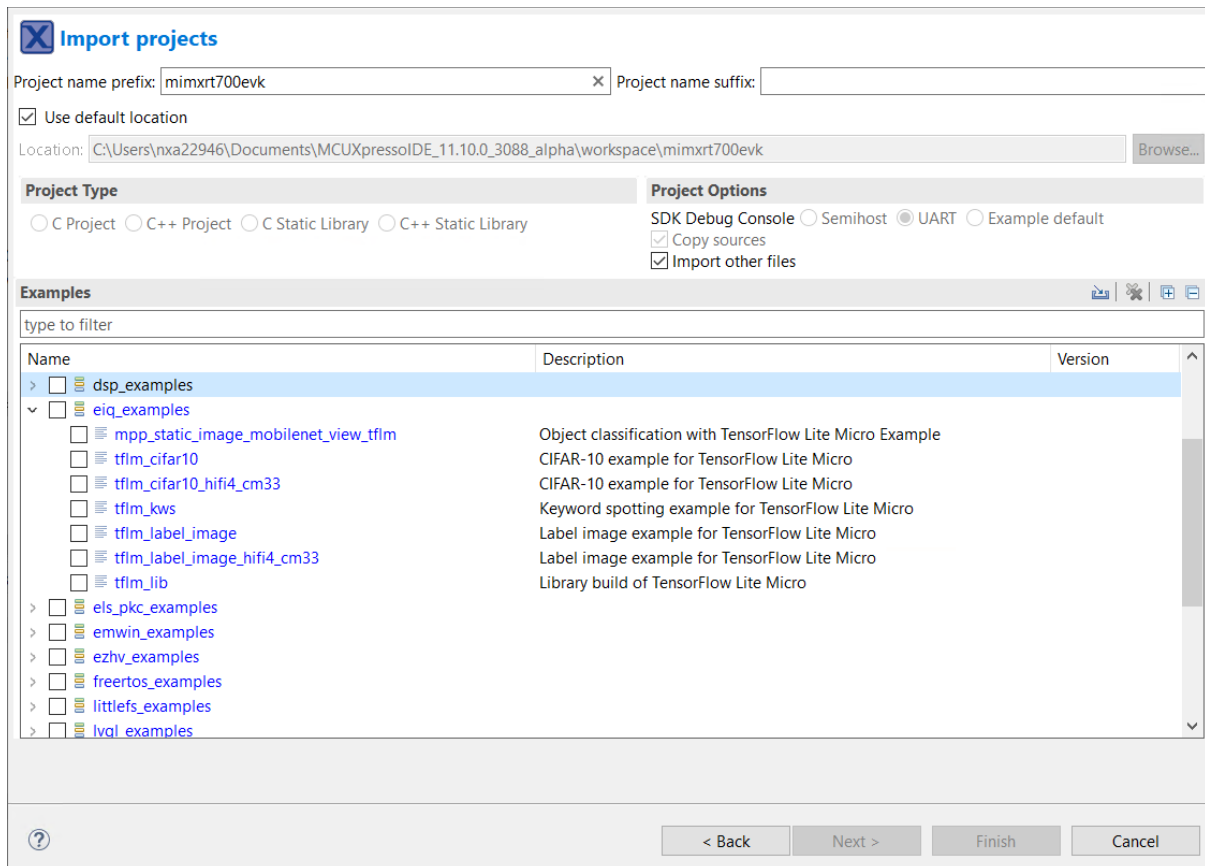
The *boards* directory contains example application projects for supported toolchains. For the list of supported toolchains, see the *MCUXpresso SDK Release Notes*. The *middleware* directory contains the eIQ library source code and example application source code and data.

Example applications The eIQ TensorFlow Lite library is provided with a set of example applications. For details, see *Table 1*. The applications demonstrate the usage of the library in several use cases.

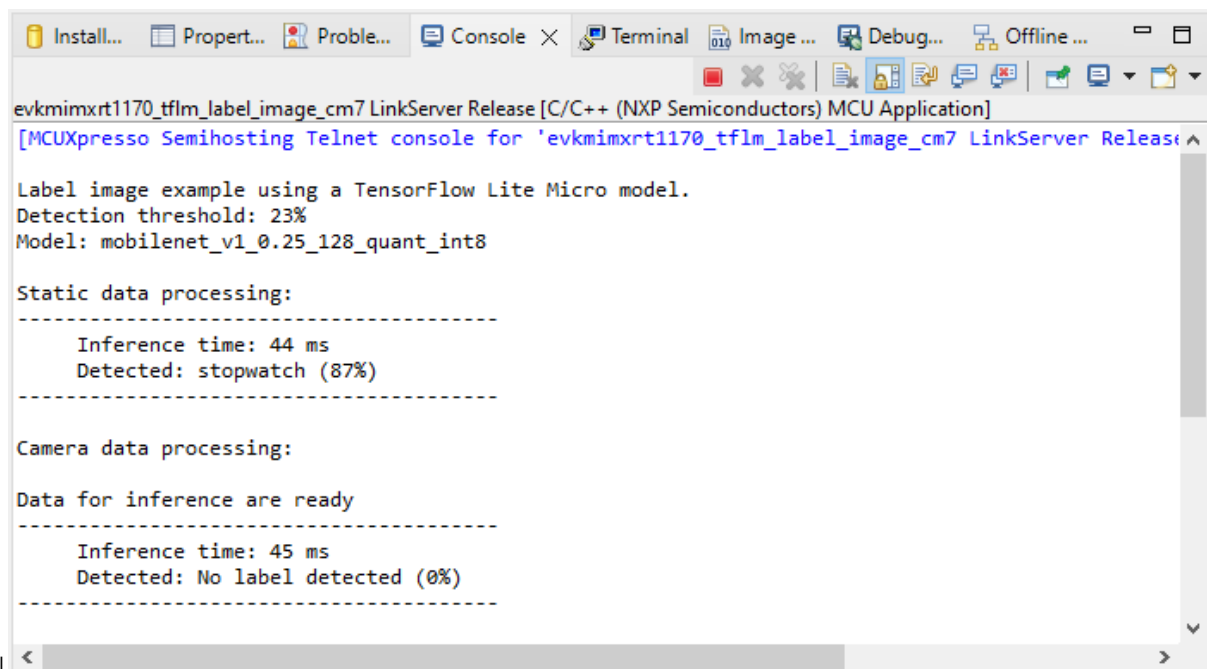
Name	Description	Availability
tflm_c	CIFAR-10 classification of 32×32 RGB pixel images into 10 categories using a small Convolutional Neural Network (CNN).	MCX-N947-EVK (no camera and display support) MCX-N947-FRDM (no camera and display support) MCX-N547-EVK (no camera and display support) MIMXRT700-EVK (no camera and display support)
tflm_l	Keyword spotting application using a neural network for word detection in pre-processed audio input.	MCX-N947-EVK (no audio support) MCX-N947-FRDM (no audio support) MCX-N547-EVK (no audio support) MIMXRT700-EVK (no audio support)
tflm_l	Image recognition application using a MobileNet model architecture to classify 128×128 RGB pixel images into 1000 categories with eIQ Neutron NPU.	MCX-N947-EVK (no camera and display support) MCX-N947-FRDM (no camera and display support) MCX-N547-EVK (no camera and display support) MIMXRT700-EVK (no camera and display support)
tflm_l	Image recognition application using a MobileNet model architecture to classify 224×224 RGB pixel images into 1000 categories with eIQ Neutron NPU. In this example, it demonstrates how to fetch model's weight from external memory (xSPI flash) to internal SRAM for Neutron NPU execution.	MIMXRT700-EVK (no camera and display support)
tflm_c	CIFAR-10 classification of 32×32 RGB pixel images into 10 categories using a small Convolutional Neural Network. In this example, M33 core0 starts HiFi4 DSP core with HiFi4 DSP image. HiFi4 DSP does the inference for CIFAR-10 classification.	MIMXRT700-EVK (no camera and display support)
tflm_l	Image recognition application using a MobileNet model architecture to classify 128×128 RGB pixel images into 1000 categories. In this example, M33 core0 starts HiFi4 DSP core with HiFi4 DSP image. HiFi4 DSP does the inference for image recognition application.	MIMXRT700-EVK (no camera and display support)

For details on how to build and run the example applications with supported toolchains, see *Getting Started with MCUXpresso SDK User's Guide* (document: MCUXSDKGSUG). When using MCUXpresso IDE, the example applications can be imported through the SDK Import Wizard as shown in *Figure 1*.





After building the example application and downloading it to the target, the execution stops in the *main* function. When the execution resumes, an output message displays on the connected terminal. For example, *Figure 2* shows the output of the `tflm_label_image_cm7` `tflm_label_image` example application printed to the MCUXpresso IDE Console window when semihosting debug console is selected in the SDK Import Wizard.



```
Label image example using a TensorFlow Lite Micro model.
Detection threshold: 23%
Model: mobilenet_v1_0.25_128_quant_int8_npu

Static data processing:
-----
      Inference time: 3987 us
      Detected: stopwatch (87%)
-----
```

Model Conversion to TensorFlow Lite Format The eIQ® Toolkit provides a comprehensive end-to-end environment for machine learning (ML) model development and deployment. Designed for NXP EdgeVerse processors, the toolkit includes both an intuitive GUI-based tool (eIQ Portal) and command-line utilities for advanced workflows.

One key component, the eIQ ModelTool, enables seamless conversion of ML models from popular formats such as TensorFlow, PyTorch, and ONNX into the TensorFlow Lite (TFLite) format. These converted models can be further optimized and deployed on NXP platforms for inference acceleration.

Model Conversion for NXP eIQ Neutron NPU To leverage the NXP eIQ Neutron NPU for hardware acceleration, models must undergo additional processing using the Neutron Converter Tool. This tool transforms standard quantized TensorFlow Lite models into a format optimized for execution on the Neutron NPU.

The key steps involved in this process are as follows:

1. Convert to Quantized TensorFlow Lite Model: Ensure the model is in a quantized TFLite format before running the Neutron Converter.
2. Run the Neutron Converter Tool: The Neutron Converter analyzes the TFLite model, identifies supported operators, and replaces them with specialized NPU-compatible nodes. Unsupported operations are executed using fallback mechanisms, such as:
 - CMSIS-NN for optimized CPU execution
 - Reference Operators for unsupported cases
3. Execute on Target Platform: The converted model runs efficiently on the Neutron NPU using a custom TFLite Micro-operator implementation.

Example: Converting a Quantized TensorFlow Lite Model for Neutron NPU The following is a sample command-line invocation for the Neutron Converter tool:

```
neutron-converter --input mobilenet_v1_0.25_128_quant.tflite \  
                  --output mobilenet_v1_0.25_128_quant_npu.tflite \  
                  --target imxrt700 \  
                  --dump-header-file-output
```

Note: This will convert the source tflite model to neutron compatible model, meanwhile, it will dump the model as one headfile name as “mobilenet_v1_0.25_128_quant_npu.h”.

Run and debug eIQ HiFi4 and HiFi1 DSP examples using Xplorer IDE This section lists the steps to Prepare CM33 Core for the examples and Prepare DSP core for the examples.

Prepare CM33 Core for the examples

1. The `tflm_cifar10_hifi4` and `tflm_label_image_hifi4` examples consist of two separate applications that run on the CM33 core0 and DSP core. The CM33 core0 application initializes the DSP core and starts it.

To debug the application:

1. Set up and execute the CM33 application using an environment of your choice.
2. Build and execute the examples located in:

```
<SDK_ROOT>/boards/mimxrt700evk/eiq_examples/tflm_cifar10_hifi4/cm33/
```

```
<SDK_ROOT>/boards/mimxrt700evk/eiq_examples/tflm_label_image_hifi4/cm33/
```

2. The `tflm_cifar10_hifi1` example consists of three separate applications that run on the CM33 core0, CM33 core1, and DSP core. The CM33 core0 application initializes the CM33 core1 core and starts it. The CM33 core1 application initializes the DSP core and starts it.

To debug the application:

1. Set up and build the CM33 core1 application using an environment of your choice.
2. Set up and execute the CM33 core0 application using an environment of your choice.
3. Build and execute the example located in:

```
<SDK_ROOT>/boards/mimxrt700evk/eiq_examples/tflm_cifar10_hifi1/cm33_core1/
```

```
<SDK_ROOT>/boards/mimxrt700evk/eiq_examples/tflm_cifar10_hifi1/cm33_core0/
```

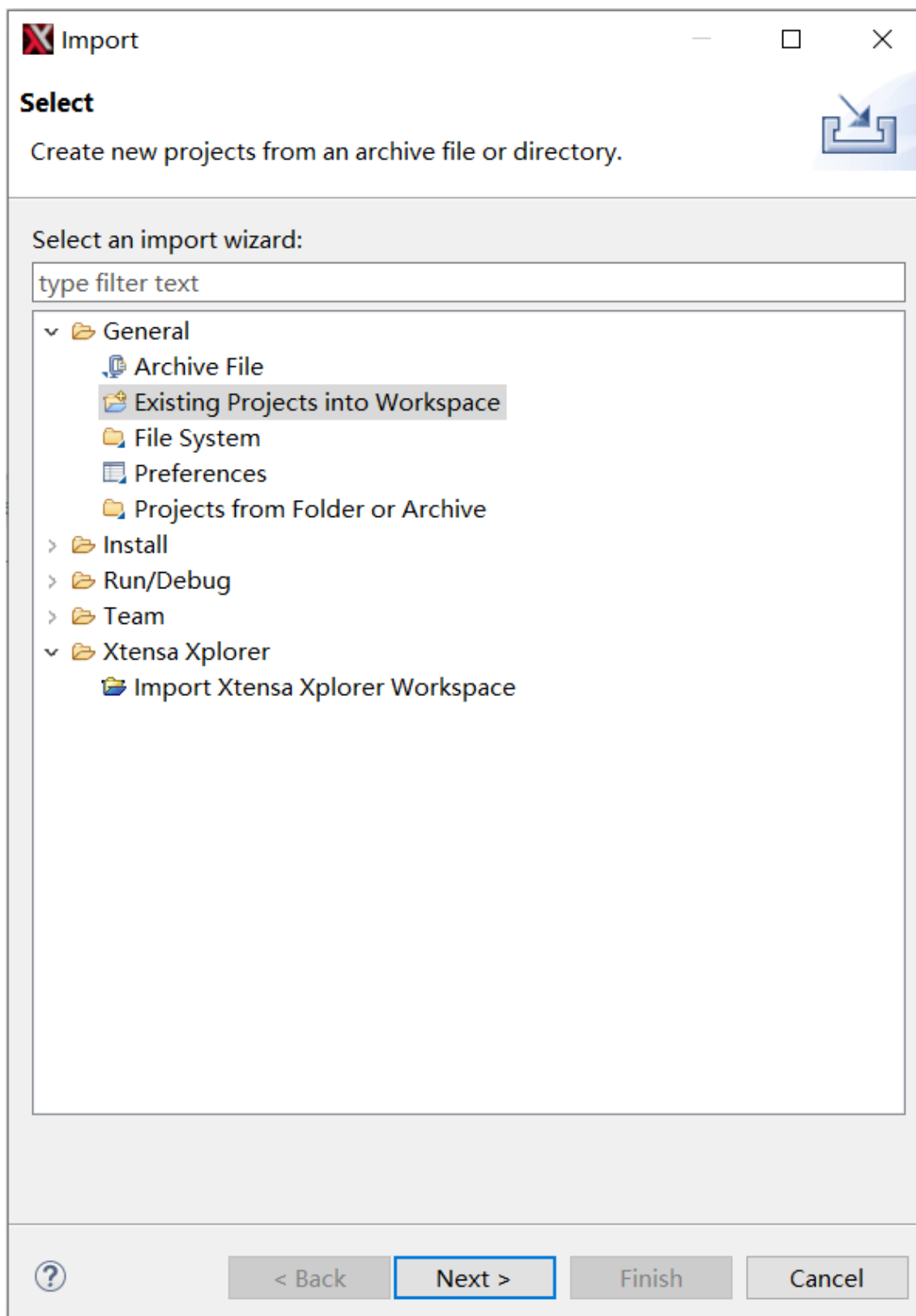
Note: ARMGCC toolchain and IAR Embedded Workbench are both supported. To enable compatibility with RT700, IAR Embedded Workbench may require a patch. There are default DSP core images in the SDK. For details on how to build the examples, refer to Prepare DSP core for the examples.

Parent topic: [Run and debug eIQ HiFi4 and HiFi1 DSP examples using Xplorer IDE](#)

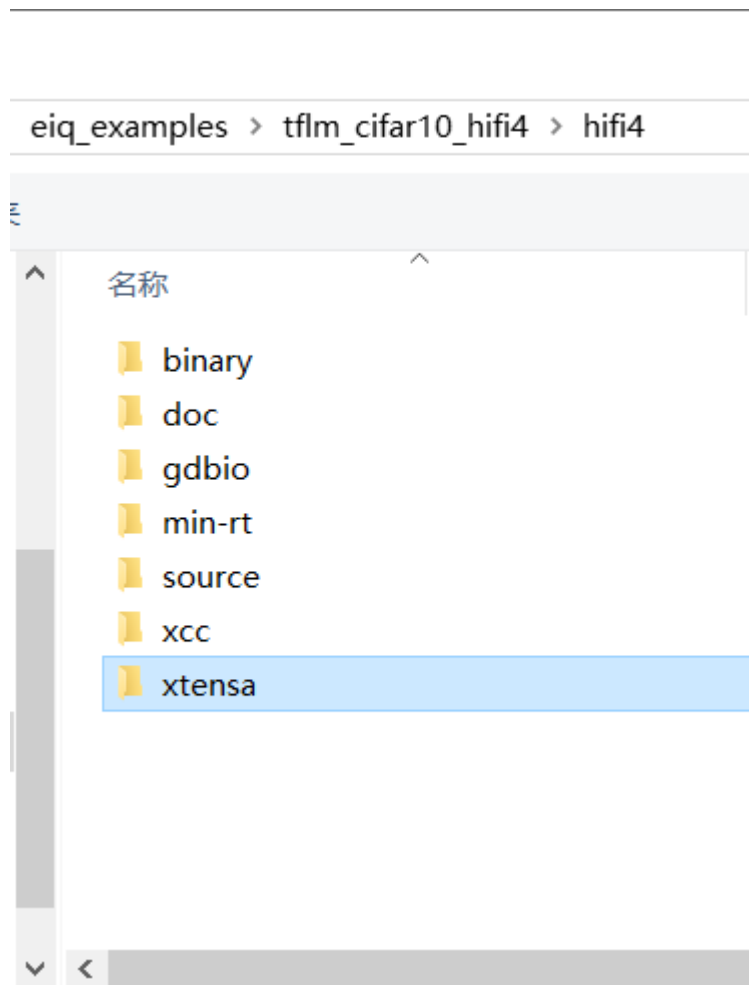
Prepare DSP core for the examples The projects for different supported toolchains are built. The “xcc” project builds on the command line and the “xtensa” directory is an Xplorer IDE project.

To run the `tflm_cifar10_hifi4` example, import the SDK sources into the Xplorer IDE.

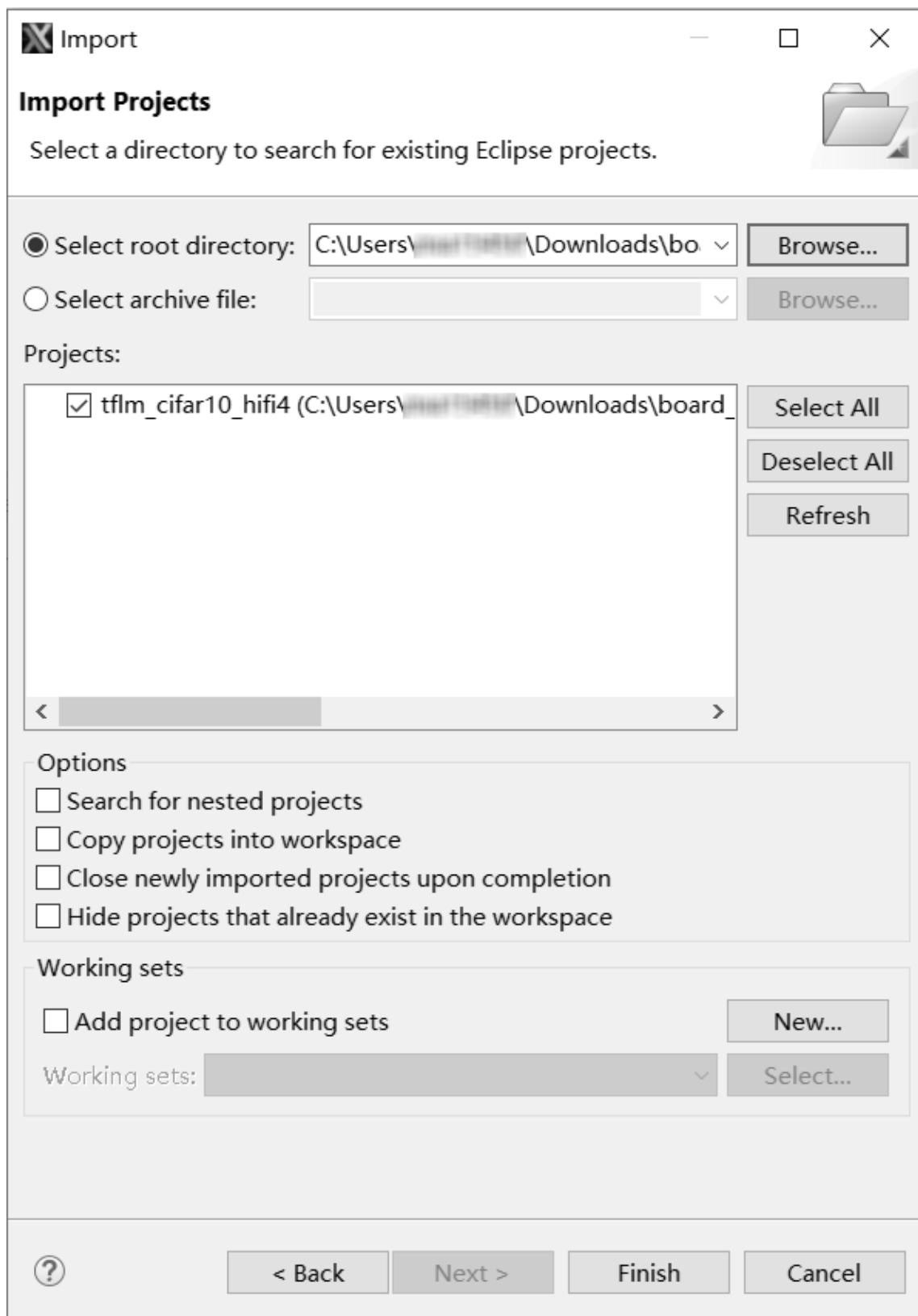
1. Select **File > Import > General > Existing Projects into Workspace**.



2. Click **Next**.
3. Select the SDK directory/boards/mimxrt700evk/eiq_examples/tfm_cifar10_hifi4/hifi4/xtensa as the root directory.

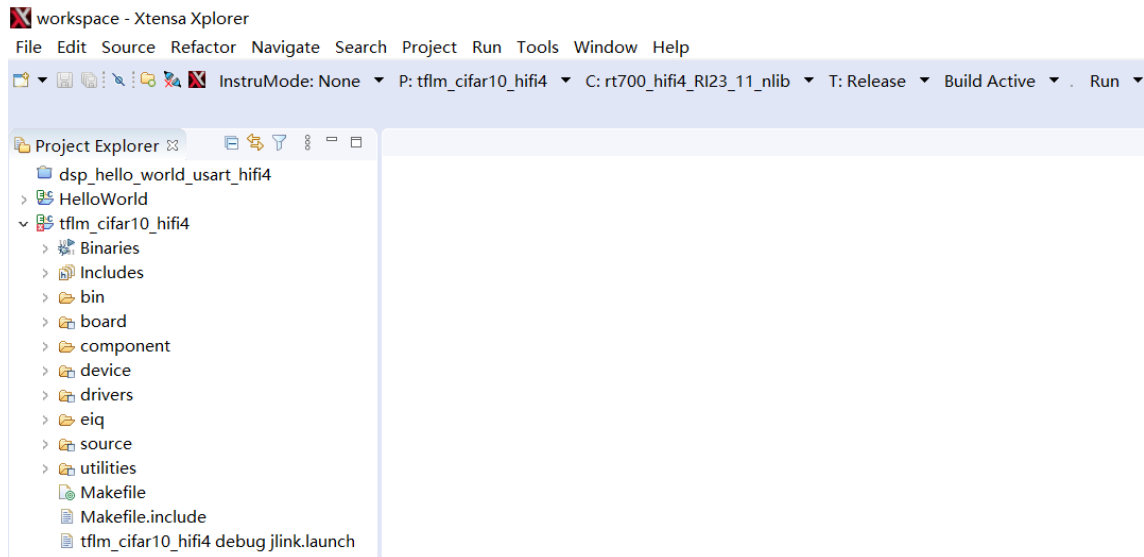


4. Click **Select Folder**.
5. Leave all the other options check boxes blank.

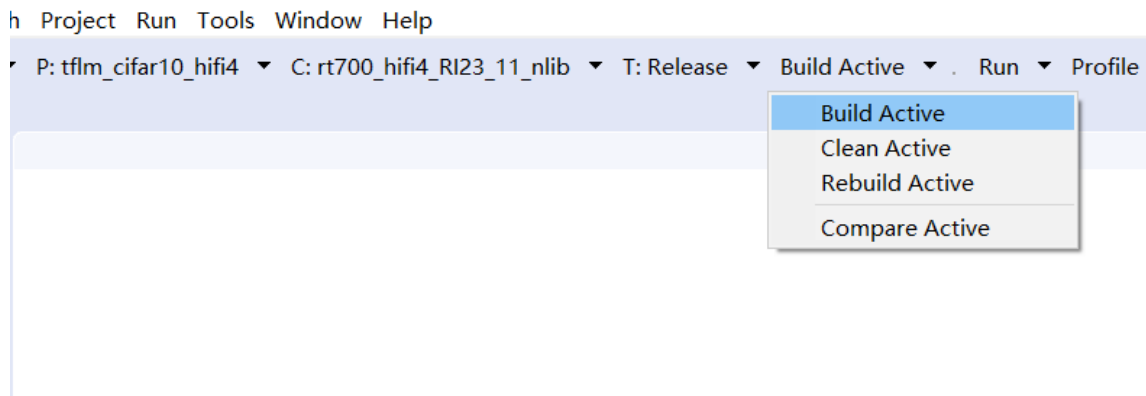


Once imported, the `tflm_cifar10_hifi4` example appears in the **Project Explorer**.

6. To make a build selection for the project and hardware target configuration, use the drop-down buttons on the menu bar.



7. To build the DSP application image for the CM33 application, select the **Release target** option in the Xplorer IDE as below.



8. Three DSP binaries are generated and are loaded into different TCM or SRAM address segments:
- `<SDK_ROOT>/boards/mimxrt700evk/eiq_examples/tflm_cifar10_hifi4/hifi4/binary/dsp_data_release.bin`
 - `<SDK_ROOT>/boards/mimxrt700evk/eiq_examples/tflm_cifar10_hifi4/hifi4/binary/dsp_literal_release.bin`
 - `<SDK_ROOT>/boards/mimxrt700evk/eiq_examples/tflm_cifar10_hifi4/hifi4/binary/dsp_text_release.bin`

Parent topic: [Run and debug eIQ HiFi4 and HiFi1 DSP examples using Xplorer IDE](#)

Running an inference After converting the model to the TensorFlow Lite format, it is converted into a C language array to include it in the application source code. The `xxd` utility can be used for this purpose (distributed with the `Vim` editor for many platforms on <https://www.vim.org/>) as shown in [Converting a model to a C language header file](#). The utility converts a TensorFlow Lite model into a C header file with an array definition containing the binary image of the model and a variable containing the data size.

Converting a model to a C language header file {#EXAMPLE_4.section}

```
xxd -i mobilenet_v1_0.25_128_quant.tflite > mobilenet_v1_0.25_128_quant_model.h
```

After the header file is generated, the type of the array is changed from `unsigned char` to `const char` to match the library API input parameters and the default array name can be changed to a more convenient one. The user must align the buffer to at least 64-bit boundary (the size of a double-precision floating-point number) to avoid misaligned memory access. The alignment can be achieved by using the `__ALIGNED(16)` macro from the `cmsis_compiler.h` header file (available in the MCUXpresso SDK) in the array declaration before the data assignment.

The easiest way to create an application with the proper configuration is to copy and modify an existing example application. To learn where to find the example applications and how to build them, see the [Example applications](#).

Running an inference using TensorFlow Lite for Microcontrollers involves several steps (shown for quantized model with signed 8-bit values as input and 32-floating point values as output):

1. Include the necessary eIQ TensorFlow Lite Micro library header files and the converted model.

Including header files

```
#include "tensorflow/lite/micro/micro_error_reporter.h"
#include "tensorflow/lite/micro/micro_interpreter.h"
#include "tensorflow/lite/micro/all_ops_resolver.h"
#include "mobilenet_v1_0.25_128_quant_model.h"
```

2. Allocate a static memory buffer for input and output tensors and intermediate arrays. Load the FlatBuffer model image (assuming the `mobilenet_v1_0.25_128_quant_model.h` file generated in *Converting a model to a C language header file* defines an array named `mobilenet_model` and a size variable named `mobilenet_model_len`), build the interpreter object and allocate memory for tensors.

Loading the FlatBuffer model

```
constexpr int kTensorArenaSize = 1024 * 1024;
static uint8_t tensorArena[kTensorArenaSize];
const tflite::Model* model = tflite::GetModel(mobilenet_model);
// TODO: Report an error if model->version() != TFLITE_SCHEMA_VERSION
static tflite::AllOpsResolver microOpResolver;
static tflite::MicroErrorReporter microErrorReporter;
static tflite::MicroInterpreter interpreter(model,
    microOpResolver, tensorArena, kTensorArenaSize,
    microErrorReporter);
interpreter->AllocateTensors();
// TODO: Check return value for kTfLiteOk
```

3. Fill the input data into the input tensor. For example, if a speech recognition model, image data from a camera or audio data from a microphone. The dimensions of the input data must be the same as the dimensions of the input tensor. These dimensions were specified when the model was created.

Fill-in input data

```
// Get access to the input tensor data
TfLiteTensor* inputTensor = interpreter->input(0);
// Copy the input tensor data from an application buffer
for (int i = 0; i < inputTensor->bytes; i++)
    inputTensor->data.int8[i] = input_data[i];
```

4. Run the inference and read the output data from the output tensor. The dimensions of the output data must be the same as the dimensions of the output tensor. These dimensions were specified when the model was created.

Running inference and reading output data

```
// Run the inference
interpreter->Invoke();
// TODO: Check the return value for TfLiteOk
// Get access to the output tensor data
TfLiteTensor* outputTensor = interpreter->output(0);
// Copy the output tensor data to an application buffer
for (int i = 0; i < outputTensor->bytes / sizeof(float32); i++)
    output_data[i] = outputTensor->data.f[i];
```

NPU inference {#npu_infer .section} Running an inference using a model converted for the NPU requires registration of a custom operator implementation. First the header file with the custom operator implementation interface must be included.

```
#include "tensorflow/lite/micro/kernels/micro_ops.h"
#include "tensorflow/lite/micro/all_ops_resolver.h"
#include "tensorflow/lite/micro/kernels/neutron/neutron.h"
```

Next, the specialized implementation has to be registered in the operator resolver object.

```
static tfLite::AllOpsResolver microOpResolver;
microOpResolver.AddCustom(tfLite::GetString_NEUTRON_GRAPH(),
    tfLite::Register_NEUTRON_GRAPH());
```

The specialized NPU nodes from the converted model are the executed using this newly registered implementation.

Adjusting the tensor arena size {#adjust_arena .section} The tensor arena is a static memory buffer used for intermediate tensor and scratch buffer allocation. The size of the tensor arena buffer is set by the `kTensorArenaSize` constant in the example above. The value depends on the tensor sizes used in the model and on the hardware-specific implementations of kernels, which may require various sizes of scratch buffers for intermediate computations. The value can be determined experimentally by running an inference with a small value, so the library fails with an insufficient tensor memory error and prints the missing amount. Continue adjusting the size until the error stops being reported. If the target hardware changes, readjust the value.

Code size optimization Typically, models do not use all the operators that are available in TensorFlow Lite. However, because of the default operator registration mechanism used in the library, the toolchain linker is not able to remove the code of unused operators. In order to reduce code size, it is possible to only register the specific operators used by a model. To determine which operators are used by a particular model, a model visualizer tool like Netron can be used. Then a mutable operator resolver object can be created that only registers the operators that are used by the model being inferred.

Use the `tfLite::MicroMutableOpResolver` object template, which is later passed to the `tfLite::MicroInterpreter` object. Depending on the list of used operators, the result should be similar to the following code snippet. Make sure to update the `MicroMutableOpResolver` template parameter to reflect the number of operators that need to be registered.

Register only used operators in TensorFlow Lite Micro {#SECTION_SS1_DJQ_QPB .section}

```
#include "tensorflow/lite/micro/kernels/micro_ops.h"
#include "tensorflow/lite/micro/micro_mutable_op_resolver.h"
tfLite::MicroMutableOpResolver<6> microOpResolver;
microOpResolver.AddAveragePool2D();
microOpResolver.AddConv2D();
microOpResolver.AddDepthwiseConv2D();
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
microOpResolver.AddDequantize();
microOpResolver.AddReshape();
microOpResolver.AddSoftmax();
static tfLite::MicroInterpreter interpreter(
    model, microOpResolver, tensorArena, kTensorArenaSize, microErrorReporter);
```

Note about the source code in the document Example code shown in this document has the following copyright and BSD-3-Clause license:

Copyright 2024 NXP Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
3. Neither the name of the copyright holder nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS “AS IS” AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT HOLDER OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

eIQ ExecuTorch Library User Guide

Overview ExecuTorch is an end-to-end solution for enabling on-device inference capabilities across mobile and edge devices including wearables, embedded devices and microcontrollers. It is part of the PyTorch Edge ecosystem and enables efficient deployment of PyTorch models to edge devices. For more information, see <https://pytorch.org/executorch-overview>.

The MCUXpresso Software Development Kit (MCUXpresso SDK) provides a comprehensive software package with a pre-integrated ExecuTorch based on version v1.0.0 which includes the Neutron Backend. Neutron Backend enables acceleration of ML models on the eIQ® Neutron Neural Processing Unit (NPU).

This document describes the steps required to download and start using the ExecuTorch. Additionally, the document describes the steps required to create an application for running pre-trained models.

Note: The document also assumes knowledge of machine learning frameworks for model training.

Supported platforms:

- i.MX RT700

Installation The ExecuTorch, with the Neutron Backend consists of:

- ExecuTorch with Neutron Backend for Ahead of Time ML Model Compilation
- Neutron Converter
- MCUXpresso SDK

Here we briefly describe each components purpose and steps to install them.

The **ExecuTorch AoT** and **Neutron Converter** are needed to convert a PyTorch model to ExecuTorch and Delegate it to eIQ Neutron NPU using the Neutron Backend. The **MCUXpresso SDK** provides project to build the ExecuTorch Runtime Library, the example application with simple CNN, toolchains and other middleware libraries to build and deploy the application on the target platform.

If you want run to prepared example application on the i.MX RT700 platform, and skip the model preparation phase continue with the *MCUXpresso SDK Part*.

ExecuTorch for Ahead of Time model preparation The ExecuTorch enables to deploy PyTorch models on edge devices. For this purpose the PyTorch model must be processed and converter by the ExecuTorch Ahead of Time (AoT) part. You can obtain the full ExecuTorch including the AoT part aligned with this version of MCUX SDK from the [mcuxsdk-middleware-executorch](#) release/mcux-full branch.

Installation Prerequisites:

- x86 Linux Machine with GLIBC-2.29 or higher (e.g. Ubuntu 20.04 or higher)
- Python 3.10, 3.11 or 3.12

To build and install the ExecuTorch follow these steps:

1. (Optional) Setup python virtual environment on desired location and activate it.

```
$ python3 -m venv venv
$ source venv/bin/activate
```

2. Clone the ExecuTorch from [mcuxsdk-middleware-executorch](#)

```
$ git clone --branch release/mcux-full https://github.com/nxp-mcuxpresso/mcuxsdk-middleware-executorch.git
$ cd mcuxsdk-middleware-executorch
$ git submodule update --init --recursive
```

3. Build and install the ExecuTorch and its dependencies:

```
$ ./install_executorch.sh
```

[!WARNING] The `install_requirements.sh` installs the CPU version of torch from <https://download.pytorch.org/whl/cpu>. If you are behind corporate proxy, it might have issues accessing it and you will see warnings like:

```
WARNING: Retrying (Retry(total=4, connect=None, read=None, redirect=None,
↪status=None)) after connection broken by 'SSLError(SSLCertVerificationError(1, '[SSL:
↪CERTIFICATE_VERIFY_FAILED] certificate verify failed: unable to get local issuer
↪certificate (_ssl.c:1006'))): /whl/test/cpu/torch/
```

In this case the CUDA version of torch is installed and the `install_requirements.sh` script fails with:

```
PyTorch: CUDA cannot be found. Depending on whether you are building
```

Make sure the pip can access the <https://download.pytorch.org/whl/cpu> PyPI.

Next continue with installation of the [Neutron Converter](#)

Neutron Converter The eIQ Neutron Backend uses the Neutron Converter to convert the ExecuTorch program to the eIQ Neutron NPU microcode.

Installation The Neutron Converter is available as a Python package and can be installed by the pip command from eiq.nxp.com/repository:

```
pip install --index-url https://eiq.nxp.com/repository neutron_converter_SDK_25_12==1.0.0
```

Or you can use the prepared setup script:

```
./examples/nxp/setup.sh
```

The Neutron Converter is used internally by the ExecuTorch, and it is tied to the particular BSP you are using - the suffix of the python package name. In the code snippet above the flavor is the SDK_25_12. In the `aot_neutron_convert.py` example script by the `--neutron_converter_flavor` parameter.

MCUXpresso SDK The MCUXpresso SDK is used to build, debug and deploy the application using the ExecuTorch on the target platform.

You can obtain the MCUXpresso SDK from [MCUXpresso SDK Builder](#) including the IDE. See the [getting_mcuxpress](#) for details.

In the MCUXpresso SDK, there are 2 projects available related to ExecuTorch:

- `executorch_lib`
- `executorch_cifarnet`

For more details see [example_applications](#). Here you will find the details to run build and run the demo applications.

Getting the MCUXpresso SDK with eIQ ExecuTorch The eIQ ExecuTorch library is part of the eIQ machine learning software package, which is an optional middleware component of MCUXpresso SDK. The eIQ component is integrated into the MCUXpresso SDK Builder delivery system available on mcuxpresso.nxp.com. To include eIQ machine learning into the MCUXpresso SDK package, the eIQ middleware component is selected in the software component selector on the SDK Builder page when building a new package:

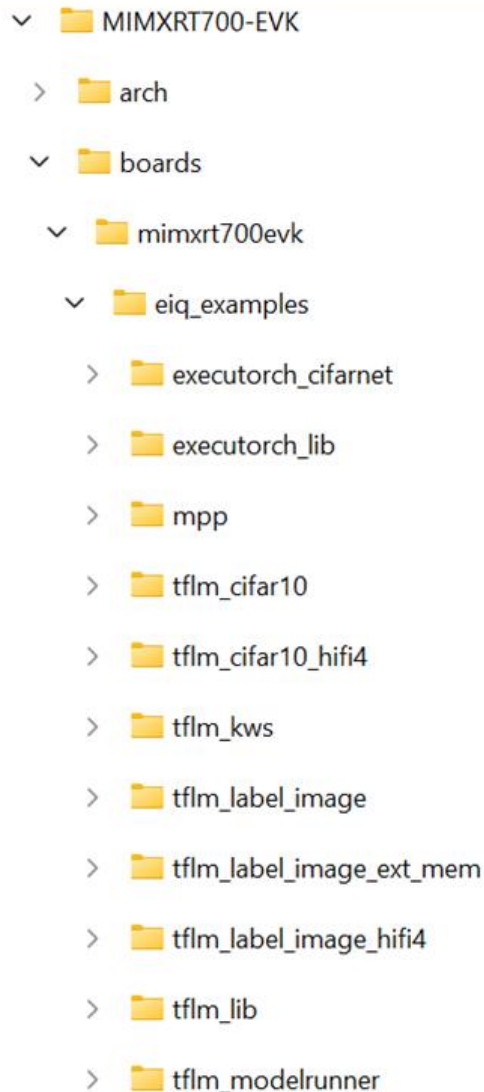
The screenshot displays the MCUXpresso SDK Builder interface. On the left is a navigation sidebar with categories: GENERAL (SDK Dashboard, Select Board, Explore), ADMINISTRATION (Notifications, Preferences), DOWNLOADS (MCUXpresso IDE, MCUXpresso Config Tools, Offline data, MCUXpresso Secure Provisioning Tool), and INTERNAL (Deployed Releases, Hardware in Releases, Analytics). The main content area is titled 'SDK Builder' and includes a sub-header 'Developer Environment Settings' with a note: 'Selections here will impact files and examples projects included in the SDK and Generated Projects'. The settings include:

- Toolchain / IDE: All toolchains
- Host OS: Windows
- Embedded real-time operating system: Bare-Metal

 Below the settings are search filters and 'Select All' and 'Unselect All' buttons. A table lists the following components:

<input type="checkbox"/>	Name	Category	Description	Dependencies
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	CMSIS DSP Library	CMSIS DSP Lib	CMSIS DSP Software Library	
<input type="checkbox"/>	canopen	Middleware	canopen library	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	eIQ	Middleware	eIQ machine learning SDK containing: - ARM CMSIS-NN library (neural network kern... (more)	
<input type="checkbox"/>	Embedded Wizard GUI	Middleware	Embedded Wizard GUI	
<input type="checkbox"/>	emWin	Middleware	emWin graphics library	
<input type="checkbox"/>	FatFS	Middleware	FAT File System	

Once the MCUXpresso SDK package is downloaded, it can be extracted on a local machine or imported into the MCUXpresso IDE. For more information on the MCUXpresso SDK folder structure, see the Getting Started with MCUXpresso SDK User’s Guide (document: MCUXSDKGSUG). The package directory structure is similar to figure bellow:



The *boards* directory contains example application projects for supported toolchains. For the list of supported toolchains, see the *MCUXpresso SDK Release Notes*. The *middleware* directory contains the eIQ library source code and example application source code and data.

PyTorch Model Conversion to ExecuTorch Format In this guideline we will show how to use the ExecuTorch AoT part to convert a PyTorch model to ExecuTorch format and delegate the model computation to eIQ Neutron NPU using the eIQ Neutron Backend.

First we will start with an example script converting the model. This example shows the CifarNet model preparation. It is the same model which is part of the `example_cifarnet`.

1. Run the `aot_neutron_compile.py` example with the `cifar10` model. As the `aot_neutron_compile.py` is already installed as part of the ExecuTorch installation we will run it from there

```
$ python -m examples.nxp.aot_neutron_compile --quantize \
--delegate --neutron_converter_flavor SDK_25_12 -m cifar10
```

2. It will generate you `cifar10_nxp_delegate.pte` file which can be used with the MXUXpresso SDK `cifarnet_example` project.

The generated PTE file is used in the `executorch_cifarnet` example application, see [example_application](#).

MCUXpresso SDK Example applications The MCUXpresso SDK provides a set of projects and example application with the eIQ ExecuTorch. These demonstrate the functionality of the ExecuTorch with the Neutron Backend, or enable to build the executorch library itself, if code changes or customization is needed. See table below:

Name	Description	Availability
ex-ecu-torch_	This project contains the ExecuTorch Runtime Library source code and is used to build the ExecuTorch Runtime Library. The library is further used to build a full application using the leveraging ExecuTorch.	MIMXRT700-EVK (no camera and display support)
ex-ecu-torch_	Example application demonstrating the use of the ExecuTorch running a CifarNet classification model accelerated on the eIQ Neutron NPU. The CifarNet is a small Convolutional Neural Network (CNN), trained on CIFAR-10 [1] dataset. The model clasifies the input images into 10 caterories.	MIMXRT700-EVK (no camera and display support)

For details on how to build and run the example applications with supported toolchains, see *Getting Started with MCUXpresso SDK User's Guide* (document: MCUXSDKGSUG).

How to build and run `executorch_cifarNet` example The example needs ExecuTorch Runtime Library and Neutron Libraries.

ExecuTorch Runtime Library:

- `middleware/eiq/executorch/lib/cm33/armgcc/libexecutorch.a` for Cortex-M33 Core
- `middleware/eiq/executorch/lib/hifi4/xcc/imxrt700/libexecutorch.a` for HiFi4 Core

Neutron Libraries:

- Cortex-M33
 - `/middleware/eiq/neutron/rt700/cm33/libNeutronDriver.a` and
 - `/middleware/eiq/neutron/rt700/cm33/libNeutronFirmware.a`
- HiFi4 DSP
 - `/middleware/eiq/neutron/rt700/hifi4/libNeutronDriver.a` and
 - `/middleware/eiq/neutron/rt700/hifi4/libNeutronFirmware.a`

In the example the model and the input image is already embedded into the program and ready to build and deploy to i.MX RT700, so you can continue right to the [building and deployment](#) section.

Convert the model and example input to C array In this section we describe where the model and example input is located in the example application sources, and how it was generated.

The **cifar10 model** ExecuTorch model is stored in `boards/mimxrt700evk/eiq_examples/executorch_cifarNet/cm33_core0/model_pte.h`. and was generated from the `cifar10_nxp_delegate.pte` (see [convert_model](#)).

We use the `xxd` command to get the C array containing the model data and array size:

```
$ xxd -i cifar10_nxp_delegate.pte > model_pte_data.h
```

then use the array data and size in the `model_pte.h`.

As **input image** we use the image from **CIFAR-10** dataset [1]. After preprocessing and normalization it is converted to bytes and located here `boards/mimxrt700evk/eiq_examples/executorch_cifar10/cm33_core0/image_data.h`. The preprocessing is performed as follows:

```
import torch
import torchvision
import numpy as np

batch_size = 1

transform = torchvision.transforms.Compose([
    torchvision.transforms.ToTensor(),
    torchvision.transforms.Normalize((0.5, 0.5, 0.5), (0.5, 0.5, 0.5))
])

test_set = torchvision.datasets.CIFAR10(root='./data', train=False, download=True, transform=transform)
test_loader = torch.utils.data.DataLoader(test_set, batch_size=batch_size, shuffle=False, num_workers=0)

index = 0
num_images = 10
for data in test_loader:
    images, labels = data
    for image, label in zip(images, labels):
        arr = image.numpy().astype(np.float32)
        arr.tofile("img" + str(index) + "_" + str(int(label)) + ".bin")
        index = index + 1
    if index >= num_images:
        break
if index >= num_images:
    break
```

This generates the `num_images` count of images from Cifar10 dataset, as input tensors for the `cifar10` model and store them in corresponding `.bin` files. Then we use the `xxd` command to get the C array data and size:

```
$ xxd -i img0_3.bin > image_data_base.h
```

and again copy the array data and size in the `image_data.h`

Note, the `img0` is the image picturing a cat, what is a class number 3.

Build, Deploy and Run

1. When using ARMGCC toolchain, the example application can be built as below:

```
$ boards/mimxrt700evk/eiq_examples/executorch_cifar10/cm33_core0/armgcc$ ./build_flash_release.sh
```

After building the example application, download it to the target with JLink as shown in figure

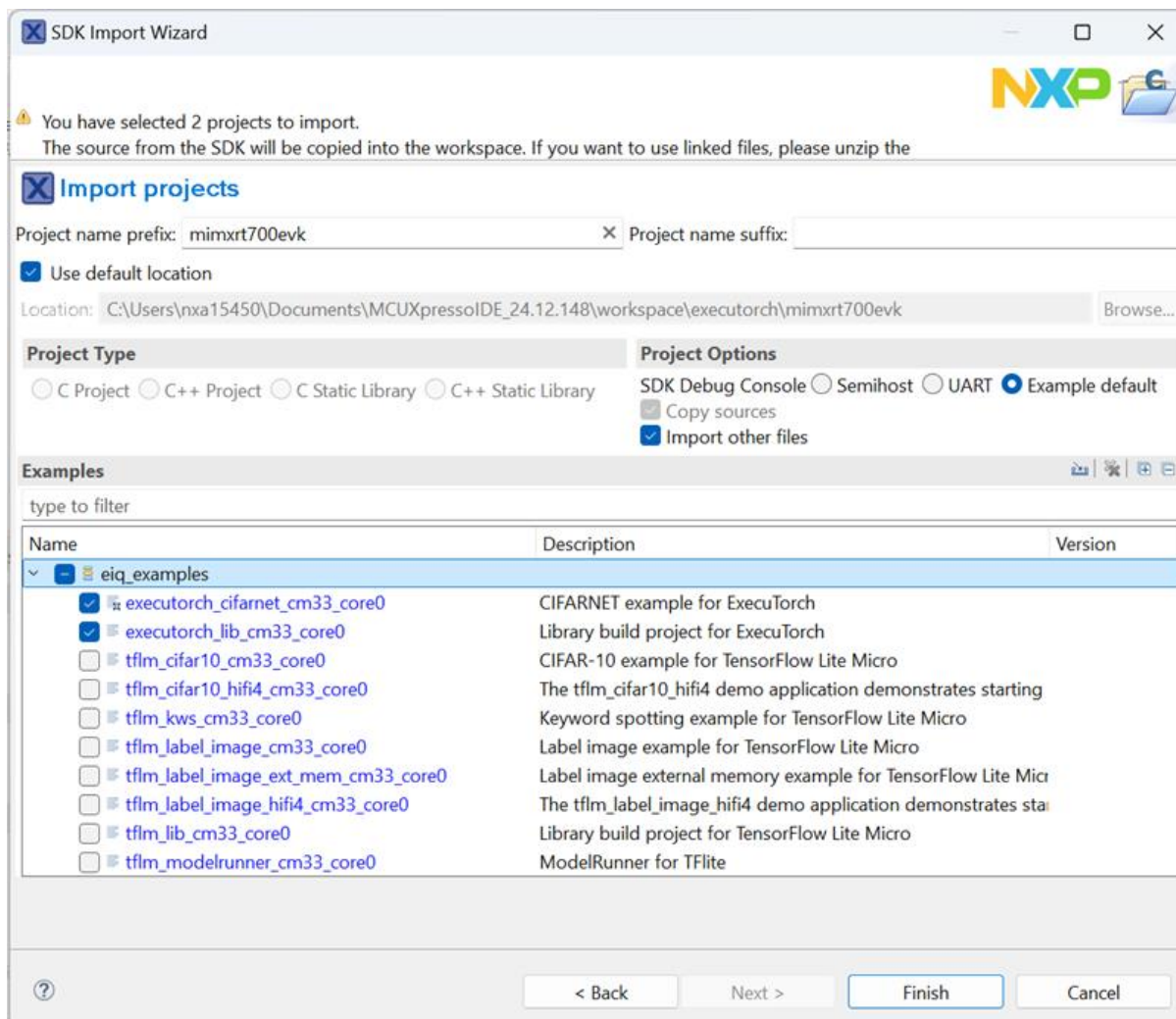
```
J-Link>loadfile C:\rt700\executorch_cifar10_cm33_core0.elf
'loadfile': Performing implicit reset & halt of MCU.
ResetTarget() start
-- JLINK ResetTarget --
Set CM33_SYSRESETREQ_EN
CPU0 CSW: 0x03000002
ResetTarget() end - Took 88.9ms
Downloading file [C:\rt700\executorch_cifar10_cm33_core0.elf]...
J-Link: Flash download: Bank 0 @ 0x28000000: 1 range affected (315392 bytes)
J-Link: Flash download: Total: 20.220s (Prepare: 0.145s, Compare: 2.874s, Erase: 2.558s, Program: 13.212s, Verify: 1.392s, Restore: 0.036s)
J-Link: Flash download: Program speed: 22 KB/s
O.K.
J-Link>reset
Reset delay: 0 ms
Reset type NORMAL: Resets core & peripherals via SYSRESETREQ & VECTRESET bit.
ResetTarget() start
-- JLINK ResetTarget --
Set CM33_SYSRESETREQ_EN
CPU0 CSW: 0x03000002
ResetTarget() end - Took 71.5ms
J-Link>go
Memory map 'after startup completion point' is active
```

bellow.

```
Model PTE file loaded. Size:
Model buffer loaded, has 1 me
Running method forward
Setting up planned buffer 0,
Method loaded.
Preparing inputs...
Input prepared.
Starting the model execution.
Model executed successfully.
-----
Inference time: 11950 us
-----
1 outputs:
Output[0][0]: 0
Output[0][1]: 0
Output[0][2]: 0
Output[0][3]: 0.996094
Output[0][4]: 0
Output[0][5]: 0
Output[0][6]: 0
Output[0][7]: 0
Output[0][8]: 0
Output[0][9]: 0
Program complete, exiting.
```

The output message displays on the connected terminal:

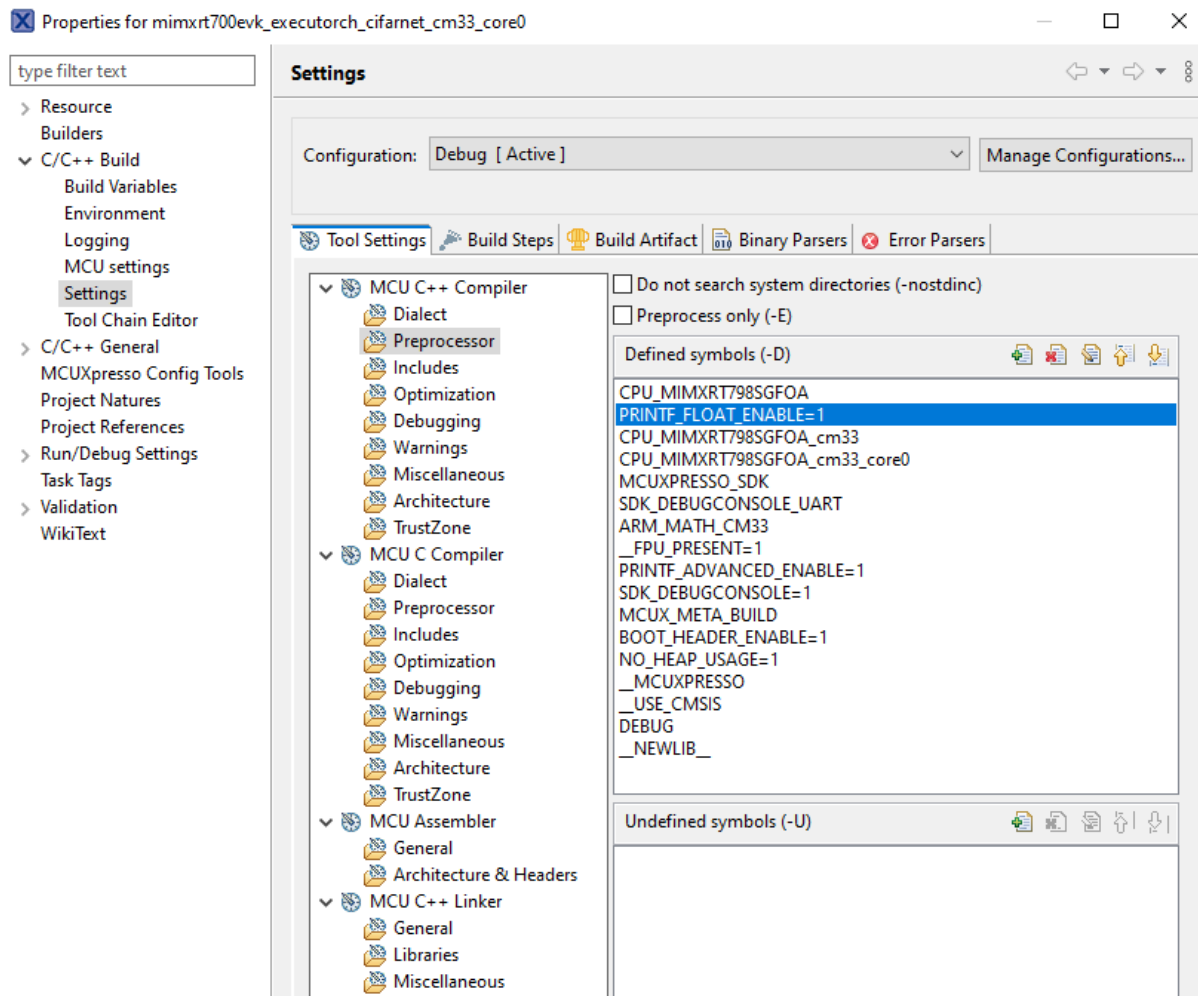
2. When using MCUXpresso IDE, the example applications can be imported through the SDK Import Wizard:



After building the example application and downloading it to the target, the execution stops in the *main* function. When the execution resumes, an output message displays on the connected terminal. For example, bellow figure shows the output of the `executorch_cifarnet` example application:

```
Model PTE file loaded. Size: 99376 bytes.
Model buffer loaded, has 1 methods
Running method forward
Setting up planned buffer 0, size 53760.
Method loaded.
Preparing inputs...
Input prepared.
Starting the model execution...
Model executed successfully.
-----
          Inference time: 14855 us
-----
1 outputs:
Output[0][0]: 0
Output[0][1]: 0
Output[0][2]: 0
Output[0][3]: 0.996094
Output[0][4]: 0
Output[0][5]: 0
Output[0][6]: 0
Output[0][7]: 0
Output[0][8]: 0
Output[0][9]: 0
Program complete, exiting.
```

In case of missing probabilities in the printed output, add `PRINTF_FLOAT_ENABLE=1` to the Pre-processor settings for C++ and C compiler:

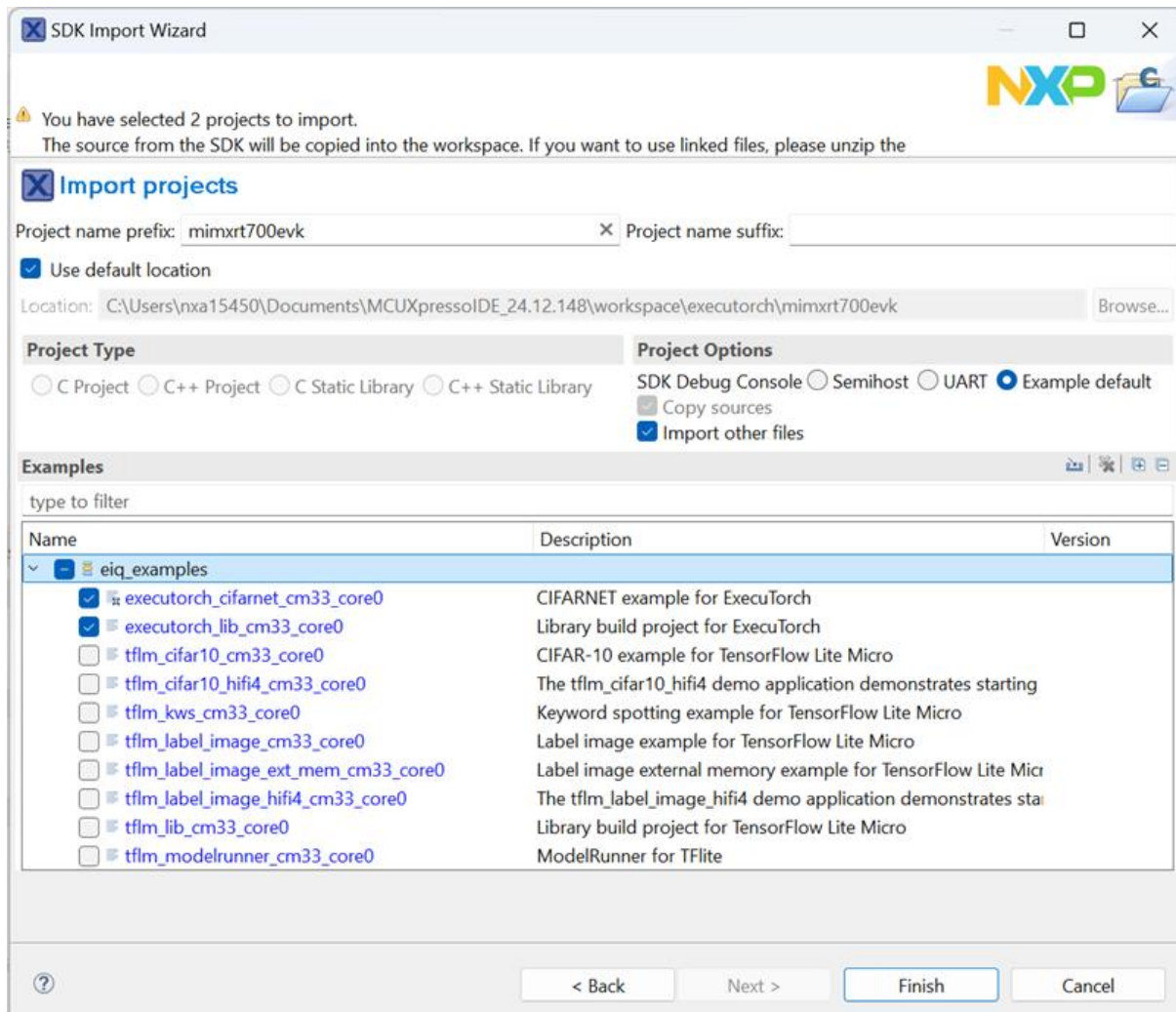


How to build `executorch_lib` example If you want to build a new ExecuTorch Runtime Library, follow the commands as below and use the new library to replace the default Runtime library `middleware/eq/executorch/lib/cm33/armgcc/libexecutorch.a`.

1. When using ARMGCC toolchain, the example application can be built as below.

```
$ boards/mimxrt700evk/eq_examples/executorch_lib/cm33_core0/armgcc$ ./build_release.sh
$ boards/mimxrt700evk/eq_examples/executorch_lib/cm33_core0/armgcc$ cp release/libexecutorch_lib_cm33_core0.a ../../../../../../middleware/eq/executorch/lib/cm33/armgcc/libexecutorch.a
```

2. When using MCUXpresso IDE, you can import the project directly to the IDE through the SDK Import Wizard. The project can be found under `eq_examples`:



After building the example application, copy the new library `mimxrt700evk_executorch_lib_cm33_core0\Debug\libmimxrt700evk_executorch_lib_cm33_core0.a` to replace the default Runtime library `mimxrt700evk_executorch_cifarnet_cm33_core0\eiq\executorch\lib\cm33\armgcc\libexecutorch.a`.

[1] [Learning Multiple Layers of Features from Tiny Images](#), Alex Krizhevsky, 2009

1.4 File System

1.4.1 FatFs

MCUXpresso SDK : `mcuxsdk-middleware-fatfs`

Overview This repository is for FatFs middleware delivery and it contains the components officially provided in NXP MCUXpresso SDK. This repository is part of the MCUXpresso SDK overall delivery which is composed of several sub-repositories/projects. Navigate to the top/parent repository (`mcuxsdk-manifests`) for the complete delivery of MCUXpresso SDK.

Documentation Overall details can be reviewed here: [MCUXpresso SDK Online Documentation](#)

Visit [FatFs - Documentation](#) to review details on the contents in this sub-repo.

Setup Instructions on how to install the MCUXpresso SDK provided from GitHub via west manifest [Getting Started with SDK - Detailed Installation Instructions](#)

Contribution Contributions are not currently accepted. Guidelines to contribute will be posted in the future.

Repo Specific Content This is MCUXpresso SDK fork of FatFs (FAT file system created by ChaN). Official documentation is available at <http://elm-chan.org/fsw/ff/>

MCUXpresso version is extending original content by following hardware specific porting layers:

- mmc_disk
- nand_disk
- ram_disk
- sd_disk
- sdspi_disk
- usb_disk

Changelog FatFs

All notable changes to this project will be documented in this file.

The format is based on [Keep a Changelog](#)

[R0.16_rev0]

- Upgraded to version 0.16
- Applied patch <https://elm-chan.org/fsw/ff/patch/ff16p1.diff>
- Applied patch <https://elm-chan.org/fsw/ff/patch/ffunicode.zip>
- Make lb and hb variables conditional. Fix ‘unused variable’ issue:
 - ffunicode.c:10622:28: error: unused variable ‘lb’
 - ffunicode.c:10622:7: error: unused variable ‘hb’

[R0.15_rev0]

- Upgraded to version 0.15
- Applied patches from <http://elm-chan.org/fsw/ff/patches.html>

[R0.14b_rev1]

- Applied patches from <http://elm-chan.org/fsw/ff/patches.html>

[R0.14b_rev0]

- Upgraded to version 0.14b

[R0.14a_rev0]

- Upgraded to version 0.14a
- Applied patch ff14a_p1.diff and ff14a_p2.diff

[R0.14_rev0]

- Upgraded to version 0.14
- Applied patch ff14_p1.diff and ff14_p2.diff

[R0.13c_rev0]

- Upgraded to version 0.13c
- Applied patches ff_13c_p1.diff,ff_13c_p2.diff, ff_13c_p3.diff and ff_13c_p4.diff.

[R0.13b_rev0]

- Upgraded to version 0.13b

[R0.13a_rev0]

- Upgraded to version 0.13a. Added patch ff_13a_p1.diff.

[R0.12c_rev1]

- Add NAND disk support.

[R0.12c_rev0]

- Upgraded to version 0.12c and applied patches ff_12c_p1.diff and ff_12c_p2.diff.

[R0.12b_rev0]

- Upgraded to version 0.12b.

[R0.11a]

- Added glue functions for low-level drivers (SDHC, SDSPI, RAM, MMC). Modified diskio.c.
- Added RTOS wrappers to make FatFs thread safe. Modified syscall.c.
- Renamed ffconf.h to ffconf_template.h. Each application should contain its own ffconf.h.
- Included ffconf.h into diskio.c to enable the selection of physical disk from ffconf.h by macro definition.
- Conditional compilation of physical disk interfaces in diskio.c.

1.5 Motor Control

1.5.1 FreeMASTER

Communication Driver User Guide

Introduction

What is FreeMASTER? FreeMASTER is a PC-based application developed by NXP for NXP customers. It is a versatile tool usable as a real-time monitor, visualization tool, and a graphical control panel of embedded applications based on the NXP processing units.

This document describes the embedded-side software driver which implements an interface between the application and the host PC. The interface covers the following communication:

- **Serial** UART communication either over plain RS232 interface or more typically over a USB-to-Serial either external or built in a debugger probe.
- **USB** direct connection to target microcontroller
- **CAN bus**
- **TCP/IP network** wired or WiFi
- **Segger J-Link RTT**
- **JTAG** debug port communication
- ...and all of the above also using a **Zephyr** generic drivers.

The driver also supports so-called “packet-driven BDM” interface which enables a protocol-based communication over a debugging port. The BDM stands for Background Debugging Module and its physical implementation is different on each platform. Some platforms leverage a semi-standard JTAG interface, other platforms provide a custom implementation called BDM. Regardless of the name, this debugging interface enables non-intrusive access to the memory space while the target CPU is running. For basic memory read and write operations, there is no communication driver required on the target when communicating with the host PC. Use this driver to get more advanced FreeMASTER protocol features over the BDM interface. The driver must be configured for the packet-driven BDM mode, in which the host PC uses the debugging interface to write serial command frames directly to the target memory buffer. The same method is then used to read response frames from that memory buffer.

Similar to “packet-driven BDM”, the FreeMASTER also supports a communication over [J-Link RTT](<https://www.segger.com/products/debug-probes/j-link/technology/about-real-time-transfer/>) interface defined by SEGGER Microcontroller GmbH for ARM CortexM-based microcontrollers. This method also uses JTAG physical interface and enables high-speed real time communication to run over the same channel as used for application debugging.

Driver version 3 This document describes version 3 of the FreeMASTER Communication Driver. This version features the implementation of the new Serial Protocol, which significantly extends the features and security of its predecessor. The new protocol internal number is v4 and its specification is available in the documentation accompanying the driver code.

Driver V3 is deployed to modern 32-bit MCU platforms first, so the portfolio of supported platforms is smaller than for the previous V2 versions. It is recommended to keep using the V2 driver for legacy platforms, such as S08, S12, ColdFire, or Power Architecture. Reach out to [FreeMASTER community](#) or to the local NXP representative with requests for more information or to port the V3 driver to legacy MCU devices.

Thanks to a layered approach, the new driver simplifies the porting of the driver to new UART, CAN or networking communication interfaces significantly. Users are encouraged to port the driver to more NXP MCU platforms and contribute the code back to NXP for integration into future releases. Existing code and low-level driver layers may be used as an example when porting to new targets.

Note: Using the FreeMASTER tool and FreeMASTER Communication Driver is only allowed in systems based on NXP microcontroller or microprocessor unit. Use with non-NXP MCU platforms is **not permitted** by the license terms.

Target platforms The driver implementation uses the following abstraction mechanisms which simplify driver porting and supporting new communication modules:

- **General CPU Platform** (see source code in the `src/platforms` directory). The code in this layer is only specific to native data type sizes and CPU architectures (for example; alignment-aware memory copy routines). This driver version brings two generic implementations of 32-bit platforms supporting both little-endian and big-endian architectures. There are also implementations customized for the 56F800E family of digital signal controllers and S12Z MCUs. **Zephyr** is treated as a specific CPU platform as it brings unified user configuration (Kconfig) and generic hardware device drivers. With Zephyr, the transport layer and low-level communication layers described below are configured automatically using Kconfig and Device Tree technologies.
- **Transport Communication Layer** - The Serial, CAN, Networking, PD-BDM, and other methods of transport logic are implemented as a driver layer called `FMSTR_TRANSPORT` with a uniform API. A support of the Network transport also extends single-client modes of operation which are native for Serial, USB and CAN by a concept of multiple client sessions.
- **Low-level Communication Driver** - Each type of transport further defines a low-level API used to access the physical communication module. For example, the Serial transport defines a character-oriented API implemented by different serial communication modules like UART, LPUART, USART, and also USB-CDC. Similarly, the CAN transport defines a message-oriented API implemented by the FlexCAN or MCAN modules. Moreover, there are multiple different implementations for the same kind of communication peripherals. The difference between the implementation is in the way the low-level hardware registers are accessed. The `mcuxsdk` folder contains implementations which use MCUXpresso SDK drivers. These drivers should be used in applications based on the NXP MCUXpresso SDK. The “ampsdk” drivers target automotive-specific MCUs and their respective SDKs. The “dreg” implementations use a plain C-language access to hardware register addresses which makes it a universal and the most portable solution. In this case, users are encouraged to add more drivers for other communication modules or other respective SDKs and contribute the code back to NXP for integration.

The low-level drivers defined for the Networking transport enable datagram-oriented UDP and stream TCP communication. This implementation is demonstrated using the lwIP software stack but shall be portable to other TCP/IP stacks. It may sound surprisingly, but also the Segger J-Link RTT communication driver is linked to the Networking transport (RTT is stream oriented communication handled similarly to TCP).

Replacing existing drivers For all supported platforms, the driver described in this document replaces the V2 implementation and also older driver implementations that were available separately for individual platforms (PC Master SCI drivers).

Clocks, pins, and peripheral initialization The FreeMASTER communication driver is only responsible for runtime processing of the communication and must be integrated with an user application code to function properly. The user application code is responsible for general initialization of clock sources, pin multiplexers, and peripheral registers related to the communication speed. Such initialization should be done before calling the `FMSTR_Init` function.

It is recommended to develop the user application using one of the Software Development Kits (SDKs) available from third parties or directly from NXP, such as MCUXpresso SDK, MCUXpresso IDE, and related tools. This approach simplifies the general configuration process significantly.

MCUXpresso SDK The MCUXpresso SDK is a software package provided by NXP which contains the device initialization code, linker files, and software drivers with example applications for the NXP family of MCUs. The MCUXpresso Config Tools may be used to generate the clock-setup and pin-multiplexer setup code suitable for the selected processor.

The MCUXpresso SDK also contains this FreeMASTER communication driver as a “middleware” component which may be downloaded along with the example applications from <https://mcuxpresso.nxp.com/en/welcome>.

MCUXpresso SDK on GitHub The FreeMASTER communication driver is also released as one of the middleware components of the MCUXpresso SDK on the GitHub. This release enables direct integration of the FreeMASTER source code Git repository into a target applications including Zephyr applications.

Related links:

- [The official FreeMASTER middleware repository.](#)
- [Online version of this document](#)

FreeMASTER in Zephyr The FreeMASTER middleware repository can be used with MCUXpresso SDK as well as a Zephyr module. Zephyr-specific samples which include examples of Kconfig and Device Tree configurations for Serial, USB and Network communications are available in separate repository. West manifest in this sample repository fetches the full Zephyr package including the FreeMASTER middleware repository used as a Zephyr module.

Example applications

MCUX SDK Example applications There are several example applications available for each supported MCU platform.

- **fmstr_uart** demonstrates a plain serial transmission, typically connecting to a computer’s physical or virtual COM port. The typical transmission speed is 115200 bps.
- **fmstr_can** demonstrates CAN bus communication. This requires a suitable CAN interface connected to the computer and interconnected with the target MCU using a properly terminated CAN bus. The typical transmission speed is 500 kbps. A FreeMASTER-over-CAN communication plug-in must be used.
- **fmstr_usb_cdc** uses an on-chip USB controller to implement a CDC communication class. It is connected directly to a computer’s USB port and creates a virtual COM port device. The typical transmission speed is above 1 Mbps.
- **fmstr_net** demonstrates the Network communication over UDP or TCP protocol. Existing examples use lwIP stack to implement the communication, but in general, it shall be possible to use any other TCP/IP stack to achieve the same functionality.
- **fmstr_wifi** is the fmstr_net application modified to use a WiFi network interface instead of a wired Ethernet connection.
- **fmstr_rtt** demonstrates the communication over SEGGER J-Link RTT interface. Both fmstr_net and fmstr_rtt examples require the FreeMASTER TCP/UDP communication plug-in to be used on the PC host side.
- **fmstr_eonce** uses the real-time data unit on the JTAG EOnCE module of the 56F800E family to implement pseudo-serial communication over the JTAG port. The typical transmission speed is around 10 kbps. This communication requires FreeMASTER JTAG/EOnCE communication plug-in.
- **fmstr_pdbdm** uses JTAG or BDM debugging interface to access the target RAM directly while the CPU is running. Note that such approach can be used with any MCU application, even without any special driver code. The computer reads from and writes into the RAM directly without CPU intervention. The Packet-Driven BDM (PD-BDM) communication uses the same memory access to exchange command and response frames. With PD-BDM,

the FreeMASTER tool is able to go beyond basic memory read/write operations and accesses also advanced features like Recorder, TSA, or Pipes. The typical transmission speed is around 10 kbps. A PD-BDM communication plug-in must be used in FreeMASTER and configured properly for the selected debugging interface. Note that this communication cannot be used while a debugging interface is used by a debugger session.

- **fmstr_any** is a special example application which demonstrates how the NXP MCUXpresso Config Tools can be used to configure pins, clocks, peripherals, interrupts, and even the FreeMASTER “middleware” driver features in a graphical and user friendly way. The user can switch between the Serial, CAN, and other ways of communication and generate the required initialization code automatically.

Zephyr sample applications Zephyr sample applications demonstrate Kconfig and Device Tree configuration which configure the FreeMASTER middleware module for a selected communication option (Serial, CAN, Network or RTT).

Refer to *readme.md* files in each sample directory for description of configuration options required to implement FreeMASTER connectivity.

Description

This section shows how to add the FreeMASTER Communication Driver into application and how to configure the connection to the FreeMASTER visualization tool.

Features The FreeMASTER driver implements the FreeMASTER protocol V4 and provides the following features which may be accessed using the FreeMASTER visualization tool:

- Read/write access to any memory location on the target.
- Optional password protection of the read, read/write, and read/write/flash access levels.
- Atomic bit manipulation on the target memory (bit-wise write access).
- Optimal size-aligned access to memory which is also suitable to access the peripheral register space.
- Oscilloscope access—real-time access to target variables. The sample rate may be limited by the communication speed.
- Recorder— access to the fast transient recorder running on the board as a part of the FreeMASTER driver. The sample rate is only limited by the MCU CPU speed. The length of the data recorded depends on the amount of available memory.
- Multiple instances of Oscilloscopes and Recorders without the limitation of maximum number of variables.
- Application commands—high-level message delivery from the PC to the application.
- TSA tables—describing the data types, variables, files, or hyperlinks exported by the target application. The TSA newly supports also non-memory mapped resources like external EEPROM or SD Card files.
- Pipes—enabling the buffered stream-oriented data exchange for a general-purpose terminal-like communication, diagnostic data streaming, or other data exchange.

The FreeMASTER driver features:

- Full FreeMASTER protocol V4 implementation with a new V4 style of CRC used.
- Layered approach supporting Serial, CAN, Network, PD-BDM, and other transports.
- Layered low-level Serial transport driver architecture enabling to select UART, LPUART, USART, and other physical implementations of serial interfaces, including USB-CDC.

- Layered low-level CAN transport driver architecture enabling to select FlexCAN, msCAN, MCAN, and other physical implementations of the CAN interface.
- Layered low-level Networking transport enabling to select TCP, UDP or J-Link RTT communication.
- TSA support to write-protect memory regions or individual variables and to deny the access to the unsafe memory.
- The pipe callback handlers are invoked whenever new data is available for reading from the pipe.
- Two Serial Single-Wire modes of operation are enabled. The “external” mode has the RX and TX shorted on-board. The “true” single-wire mode interconnects internally when the MCU or UART modules support it.

The following sections briefly describe all FreeMASTER features implemented by the driver. See the PC-based FreeMASTER User Manual for more details on how to use the features to monitor, tune, or control an embedded application.

Board Detection The FreeMASTER protocol V4 defines the standard set of configuration values which the host PC tool reads to identify the target and to access other target resources properly. The configuration includes the following parameters:

- Version of the driver and the version of the protocol implemented.
- MTU as the Maximum size of the Transmission Unit (for example; communication buffer size).
- Application name, description, and version strings.
- Application build date and time as a string.
- Target processor byte ordering (little/big endian).
- Protection level that requires password authentication.
- Number of the Recorder and Oscilloscope instances.
- RAM Base Address for optimized memory access commands.

Memory Read This basic feature enables the host PC to read any data memory location by specifying the address and size of the required memory area. The device response frame must be shorter than the MTU to fit into the outgoing communication buffer. To read a device memory of any size, the host uses the information retrieved during the Board Detection and splits the large-block request to multiple partial requests.

The driver uses size-aligned operations to read the target memory (for example; uses proper read-word instruction when an address is aligned to 4 bytes).

Memory Write Similarly to the Memory Read operation, the Memory Write feature enables to write to any RAM memory location on the target device. A single write command frame must be shorter than the MTU to fit into the target communication buffer. Larger requests must be split into smaller ones.

The driver uses size-aligned operations to write to the target memory (for example; uses proper write-word instruction when an address is aligned to 4 bytes).

Masked Memory Write To implement the write access to a single bit or a group of bits of target variables, the Masked Memory Write feature is available in the FreeMASTER protocol and it is supported by the driver using the Read-Modify-Write approach.

Be careful when writing to bit fields of volatile variables that are also modified in an application interrupt. The interrupt may be serviced in the middle of a read-modify-write operation and it may cause data corruption.

Oscilloscope The protocol and driver enables any number of variables to be read at once with a single request from the host. This feature is called Oscilloscope and the FreeMASTER tool uses it to display a real-time graph of variable values.

The driver can be configured to support any number of Oscilloscope instances and enable simultaneously running graphs to be displayed on the host computer screen.

Recorder The protocol enables the host to select target variables whose values are then periodically recorded into a dedicated on-board memory buffer. After such data sampling stops (either on a host request or by evaluating a threshold-crossing condition), the data buffer is downloaded to the host and displayed as a graph. The data sampling rate is not limited by the speed of the communication line, so it enables displaying the variable transitions in a very high resolution.

The driver can be configured to support multiple Recorder instances and enable multiple recorder graphs to be displayed on the host screen. Having multiple recorders also enables setting the recording point differently for each instance. For example; one instance may be recording data in a general timer interrupt while another instance may record at a specific control algorithm time in the PWM interrupt.

TSA With the TSA feature, data types and variables can be described directly in the application source code. Such information is later provided to the FreeMASTER tool which may use it instead of reading symbol data from the application ELF executable file.

The information is encoded as so-called TSA tables which become direct part of the application code. The TSA tables contain descriptors of variables that shall be visible to the host tool. The descriptors can describe the memory areas by specifying the address and size of the memory block or more conveniently using the C variable names directly. Different set of TSA descriptors can be used to encode information about the structure types, unions, enumerations, or arrays.

The driver also supports special types of TSA table entries to describe user resources like external EEPROM and SD Card files, memory-mapped files, virtual directories, web URL hyperlinks, and constant enumerations.

TSA Safety When the TSA is enabled in the application, the TSA Safety can be enabled and validate the memory accesses directly by the embedded-side driver. When the TSA Safety is turned on, any memory request received from the host is validated and accepted only if it belongs to a TSA-described object. The TSA entries can be declared as Read-Write or Read-Only so that the driver can actively deny the write access to the Read-Only objects.

Application commands The Application Commands are high-level messages that can be delivered from the PC Host to the embedded application for further processing. The embedded application can either poll the status, or be called back when a new Application Command arrives to be processed. After the embedded application acknowledges that the command is handled, the host receives the Result Code and reads the other return data from memory. Both the Application Commands and the Result Codes are specific to a given application and it is user's responsibility to define them. The FreeMASTER protocol and the FreeMASTER driver only implement the delivery channel and a set of API calls to enable the Application Command processing in general.

Pipes The Pipes enable buffered and stream-oriented data exchange between the PC Host and the target application. Any pipe can be written to and read from at both ends (either on the PC or the MCU). The data transmission is acknowledged using the special FreeMASTER protocol commands. It is guaranteed that the data bytes are delivered from the writer to the reader in a proper order and without losses.

Serial single-wire operation The MCU Serial Communication Driver natively supports normal dual-wire operation. Because the protocol is half-duplex only, the driver can also operate in two single-wire modes:

- “External” single-wire operation where the Receiver and Transmitter pins are shorted on the board. This mode is supported by default in the MCU driver because the Receiver and Transmitter units are enabled or disabled whenever needed. It is also easy to extend this operation for the RS485 communication.
- “True” single-wire mode which uses only a single pin and the direction switching is made by the UART module. This mode of operation must be enabled by defining the FMSTR_SERIAL_SINGLEWIRE configuration option.

Multi-session support With networking interface it is possible for multiple clients to access the target MCU simultaneously. Reading and writing of target memory is processed atomically so there is no risk of data corruption. The state-full resources such as Recorders or Oscilloscopes are locked to a client session upon first use and access is denied to other clients until lock is released..

Zephyr-specific

Dedicated communication task FreeMASTER communication may run isolated in a dedicated task. The task automates the FMSTR_Init and FMSTR_Poll calls together with periodic activities enabling the FreeMASTER UI to fetch information about tasks and CPU utilization. The task can be started automatically or manually, and it must be assigned a priority to be able to react on interrupts and other communication events. Refer to Zephyr FreeMASTER sample applications which all use this communication task.

Zephyr shell and logging over FreeMASTER pipe FreeMASTER implements a shell backend which may use FreeMASTER pipe as a I/O terminal and logging output. Refer to Zephyr FreeMASTER sample applications which all use this feature.

Automatic TSA tables TSA tables can be declared as “automatic” in Zephyr which make them automatically registered in the table list. This may be very useful when there are many TSA tables or when the tables are defined in different (often unrelated) libraries linked together. In this case user does not need to build a list of all tables manually.

Driver files The driver source files can be found in a top-level src folder, further divided into the sub-folders:

- **src/platforms** platform-specific folder—one folder exists for each supported processor platform (for example; 32-bit Little Endian platform). Each such folder contains a platform header file with data types and a code which implements the potentially platform-specific operations, such as aligned memory access.
- **src/common** folder—contains the common driver source files shared by the driver for all supported platforms. All the .c files must be added to the project, compiled, and linked together with the application.

- *freemaster.h* - master driver header file, which declares the common data types, macros, and prototypes of the FreeMASTER driver API functions.
- *freemaster_cfg.h.example* - this file can serve as an example of the FreeMASTER driver configuration file. Save this file into a project source code folder and rename it to *freemaster_cfg.h*. The FreeMASTER driver code includes this file to get the project-specific configuration options and to optimize the compilation of the driver.
- *freemaster_defcfg.h* - defines the default values for each FreeMASTER configuration option if the option is not set in the *freemaster_cfg.h* file.
- *freemaster_protocol.h* - defines the FreeMASTER protocol constants used internally by the driver.
- *freemaster_protocol.c* - implements the FreeMASTER protocol decoder and handles the basic Get Configuration Value, Memory Read, and Memory Write commands.
- *freemaster_rec.c* - handles the Recorder-specific commands and implements the Recorder sampling and triggering routines. When the Recorder is disabled by the FreeMASTER driver configuration file, this file only compiles to empty API functions.
- *freemaster_scope.c* - handles the Oscilloscope-specific commands. If the Oscilloscope is disabled by the FreeMASTER driver configuration file, this file compiles as void.
- *freemaster_pipes.c* - implements the Pipes functionality when the Pipes feature is enabled.
- *freemaster_appcmd.c* - handles the communication commands used to deliver and execute the Application Commands within the context of the embedded application. When the Application Commands are disabled by the FreeMASTER driver configuration file, this file only compiles to empty API functions.
- *freemaster_tsa.c* - handles the commands specific to the TSA feature. This feature enables the FreeMASTER host tool to obtain the TSA memory descriptors declared in the embedded application. If the TSA is disabled by the FreeMASTER driver configuration file, this file compiles as void.
- *freemaster_tsa.h* - contains the declaration of the macros used to define the TSA memory descriptors. This file is indirectly included into the user application code (via *freemaster.h*).
- *freemaster_sha.c* - implements the SHA-1 hash code used in the password authentication algorithm.
- *freemaster_private.h* - contains the declarations of functions and data types used internally in the driver. It also contains the C pre-processor statements to perform the compile-time verification of the user configuration provided in the *freemaster_cfg.h* file.
- *freemaster_serial.c* - implements the serial protocol logic including the CRC, FIFO queuing, and other communication-related operations. This code calls the functions of the low-level communication driver indirectly via a character-oriented API exported by the specific low-level driver.
- *freemaster_serial.h* - defines the low-level character-oriented Serial API.
- *freemaster_can.c* - implements the CAN protocol logic including the CAN message preparation, signalling using the first data byte in the CAN frame, and other communication-related operations. This code calls the functions of the low-level communication driver indirectly via a message-oriented API exported by the specific low-level driver.
- *freemaster_can.h* - defines the low-level message-oriented CAN API.
- *freemaster_net.c* - implements the Network protocol transport logic including multiple session management code.

- *freemaster_net.h* - definitions related to the Network transport.
- *freemaster_pdbdm.c* - implements the packet-driven BDM communication buffer and other communication-related operations.
- *freemaster_utils.c* - aligned memory copy routines, circular buffer management and other utility functions
- *freemaster_utils.h* - definitions related to utility code.
- **src/drivers/[sdk]/serial** - contains the code related to the serial communication implemented using one of the supported SDK frameworks.
 - *freemaster_serial_XXX.c* and *.h* - implement low-level access to the communication peripheral registers. Different files exist for the UART, LPUART, USART, and other kinds of Serial communication modules.
- **src/drivers/[sdk]/can** - contains the code related to the serial communication implemented using one of the supported SDK frameworks.
 - *freemaster_XXX.c* and *.h* - implement low-level access to the communication peripheral registers. Different files exist for the FlexCAN, msCAN, MCAN, and other kinds of CAN communication modules.
- **src/drivers/[sdk]/network** - contains low-level code adapting the FreeMASTER Network transport to an underlying TCP/IP or RTT stack.
 - *freemaster_net_lwip_tcp.c* and *_udp.c* - default networking implementation of TCP and UDP transports using lwIP stack.
 - *freemaster_net_segger_rtt.c* - implementation of network transport using Segger J-Link RTT interface

Driver configuration The driver is configured using a single header file (*freemaster_cfg.h*). Create this file and save it together with other project source files before compiling the driver code. All FreeMASTER driver source files include the *freemaster_cfg.h* file and use the macros defined here for the conditional and parameterized compilation. The C compiler must locate the configuration file when compiling the driver files. Typically, it can be achieved by putting this file into a folder where the other project-specific included files are stored.

As a starting point to create the configuration file, get the *freemaster_cfg.h.example* file, rename it to *freemaster_cfg.h*, and save it into the project area.

Note: It is NOT recommended to leave the *freemaster_cfg.h* file in the FreeMASTER driver source code folder. The configuration file must be placed at a project-specific location, so that it does not affect the other applications that use the same driver.

Configurable items This section describes the configuration options which can be defined in *freemaster_cfg.h*.

Interrupt modes

```
#define FMSTR_LONG_INTR [0|1]
#define FMSTR_SHORT_INTR [0|1]
#define FMSTR_POLL_DRIVEN [0|1]
```

Value Type boolean (0 or 1)

Description Exactly one of the three macros must be defined to non-zero. The others must be defined to zero or left undefined. The non-zero-defined constant selects the interrupt mode of the driver. See *Driver interrupt modes*.

- FMSTR_LONG_INTR — long interrupt mode
- FMSTR_SHORT_INTR — short interrupt mode
- FMSTR_POLL_DRIVEN — poll-driven mode

Note: Some options may not be supported by all communication interfaces. For example, the FMSTR_SHORT_INTR option is not supported by the USB_CDC interface.

Protocol transport

```
#define FMSTR_TRANSPORT [identifier]
```

Value Type Driver identifiers are structure instance names defined in FreeMASTER source code. Specify one of existing instances to make use of the protocol transport.

Description Use one of the pre-defined constants, as implemented by the FreeMASTER code. The current driver supports the following transports:

- FMSTR_SERIAL - serial communication protocol
- FMSTR_CAN - using CAN communication
- FMSTR_PDBDM - using packet-driven BDM communication
- FMSTR_NET - network communication using TCP or UDP protocol

Serial transport This section describes configuration parameters used when serial transport is used:

```
#define FMSTR_TRANSPORT FMSTR_SERIAL
```

FMSTR_SERIAL_DRV Select what low-level driver interface will be used when implementing the Serial communication.

```
#define FMSTR_SERIAL_DRV [identifier]
```

Value Type Driver identifiers are structure instance names defined in FreeMASTER drivers code. Specify one of existing serial driver instances.

Description When using MCUXpresso SDK, use one of the following constants (see */drivers/mcuxsdk/serial* implementation):

- FMSTR_SERIAL_MCUX_UART - UART driver
- FMSTR_SERIAL_MCUX_LPUART - LPUART driver
- FMSTR_SERIAL_MCUX_USART - USART driver
- FMSTR_SERIAL_MCUX_MINIUSART - miniUSART driver
- FMSTR_SERIAL_MCUX_QSCI - DSC QSCI driver
- FMSTR_SERIAL_MCUX_USB - USB/CDC class driver (also see code in the */support/mcuxsdk_usb* folder)

- **FMSTR_SERIAL_56F800E_EONCE** - DSC JTAG EOnCE driver

Other SDKs or BSPs may define custom low-level driver interface structure which may be used as `FMSTR_SERIAL_DRV`. For example:

- **FMSTR_SERIAL_DREG_UART** - demonstrates the low-level interface implemented without the MCUXpresso SDK and using direct access to peripheral registers.

FMSTR_SERIAL_BASE

```
#define FMSTR_SERIAL_BASE [address|symbol]
```

Value Type Optional address value (numeric or symbolic)

Description Specify the base address of the UART, LPUART, USART, or other serial peripheral module to be used for the communication. This value is not defined by default. User application should call `FMSTR_SetSerialBaseAddress()` to select the peripheral module.

FMSTR_COMM_BUFFER_SIZE

```
#define FMSTR_COMM_BUFFER_SIZE [number]
```

Value Type 0 or a value in range 32...255

Description Specify the size of the communication buffer to be allocated by the driver. Default value, which suits all driver features, is used when this option is defined as 0.

FMSTR_COMM_QUEUE_SIZE

```
#define FMSTR_COMM_QUEUE_SIZE [number]
```

Value Type Value in range 0...255

Description Specify the size of the FIFO receiver queue used to quickly receive and store characters in the `FMSTR_SHORT_INTR` interrupt mode. The default value is 32 B.

FMSTR_SERIAL_SINGLEWIRE

```
#define FMSTR_SERIAL_SINGLEWIRE [0|1]
```

Value Type Boolean 0 or 1.

Description Set to non-zero to enable the “True” single-wire mode which uses a single MCU pin to communicate. The low-level driver enables the pin direction switching when the MCU peripheral supports it.

CAN Bus transport This section describes configuration parameters used when CAN transport is used:

```
#define FMSTR_TRANSPORT FMSTR_CAN
```

FMSTR_CAN_DRV Select what low-level driver interface will be used when implementing the CAN communication.

```
#define FMSTR_CAN_DRV [identifier]
```

Value Type Driver identifiers are structure instance names defined in FreeMASTER drivers code. Specify one of existing CAN driver instances.

Description When using MCUXpresso SDK, use one of the following constants (see */drivers/mcuxsdk/can implementation*):

- **FMSTR_CAN_MCUX_FLEXCAN** - FlexCAN driver
- **FMSTR_CAN_MCUX_MCAN** - MCAN driver
- **FMSTR_CAN_MCUX_MSCAN** - msCAN driver
- **FMSTR_CAN_MCUX_DSCFLEXCAN** - DSC FlexCAN driver
- **FMSTR_CAN_MCUX_DSCMSCAN** - DSC msCAN driver

Other SDKs or BSPs may define the custom low-level driver interface structure which may be used as **FMSTR_CAN_DRV**.

FMSTR_CAN_BASE

```
#define FMSTR_CAN_BASE [address|symbol]
```

Value Type Optional address value (numeric or symbolic)

Description Specify the base address of the FlexCAN, msCAN, or other CAN peripheral module to be used for the communication. This value is not defined by default. User application should call `FMSTR_SetCanBaseAddress()` to select the peripheral module.

FMSTR_CAN_CMDID

```
#define FMSTR_CAN_CMDID [number]
```

Value Type CAN identifier (11-bit or 29-bit number)

Description CAN message identifier used for FreeMASTER commands (direction from PC Host tool to target application). When declaring 29-bit identifier, combine the numeric value with **FMSTR_CAN_EXTID** bit. Default value is 0x7AA.

FMSTR_CAN_RSPID

```
#define FMSTR_CAN_RSPID [number]
```

Value Type CAN identifier (11-bit or 29-bit number)

Description CAN message identifier used for responding messages (direction from target application to PC Host tool). When declaring 29-bit identifier, combine the numeric value with FMSTR_CAN_EXTID bit. Note that both *CMDID* and *RSPID* values may be the same. Default value is 0x7AA.

FMSTR_FLEXCAN_TXMB

```
#define FMSTR_FLEXCAN_TXMB [number]
```

Value Type Number in range of 0..N where N is number of CAN message-buffers supported by HW module.

Description Only used when the FlexCAN low-level driver is used. Define the FlexCAN message buffer for CAN frame transmission. Default value is 0.

FMSTR_FLEXCAN_RXMB

```
#define FMSTR_FLEXCAN_RXMB [number]
```

Value Type Number in range of 0..N where N is number of CAN message-buffers supported by HW module.

Description Only used when the FlexCAN low-level driver is used. Define the FlexCAN message buffer for CAN frame reception. Note that the FreeMASTER driver may also operate with a common message buffer used by both TX and RX directions. Default value is 1.

Network transport This section describes configuration parameters used when Network transport is used:

```
#define FMSTR_TRANSPORT FMSTR_NET
```

FMSTR_NET_DRV Select network interface implementation.

```
#define FMSTR_NET_DRV [identifier]
```

Value Type Identifiers are structure instance names defined in FreeMASTER drivers code. Specify one of existing NET driver instances.

Description When using MCUXpresso SDK, use one of the following constants (see */drivers/mcuxsdk/network implementation*):

- **FMSTR_NET_LWIP_TCP** - TCP communication using lwIP stack
- **FMSTR_NET_LWIP_UDP** - UDP communication using lwIP stack
- **FMSTR_NET_SEGGER_RTT** - Communication using SEGGER J-Link RTT interface

Other SDKs or BSPs may define the custom networking interface which may be used as FMSTR_CAN_DRV.

Add another row below:

FMSTR_NET_PORT

```
#define FMSTR_NET_PORT [number]
```

Value Type TCP or UDP port number (short integer)

Description Specifies the server port number used by TCP or UDP protocols.

FMSTR_NET_BLOCKING_TIMEOUT

```
#define FMSTR_NET_BLOCKING_TIMEOUT [number]
```

Value Type Timeout as number of milliseconds

Description This value specifies a timeout in milliseconds for which the network socket operations may block the execution inside *FMSTR_Poll*. This may be set high (e.g. 250) when a dedicated RTOS task is used to handle FreeMASTER protocol polling. Set to a lower value when the polling task is also responsible for other operations. Set to 0 to attempt to use non-blocking socket operations.

FMSTR_NET_AUTODISCOVERY

```
#define FMSTR_NET_AUTODISCOVERY [0|1]
```

Value Type Boolean 0 or 1.

Description This option enables the FreeMASTER driver to use a separate UDP socket to broadcast auto-discovery messages to network. This helps the FreeMASTER tool to discover the target device address, port and protocol options.

Debugging options

FMSTR_DISABLE

```
#define FMSTR_DISABLE [0|1]
```

Value Type boolean (0 or 1)

Description Define as non-zero to disable all FreeMASTER features, exclude the driver code from build, and compile all its API functions empty. This may be useful to remove FreeMASTER without modifying any application source code. Default value is 0 (false).

FMSTR_DEBUG_TX

```
#define FMSTR_DEBUG_TX [0|1]
```

Value Type Boolean 0 or 1.

Description Define as non-zero to enable the driver to periodically transmit test frames out on the selected communication interface (SCI or CAN). With the debug transmission enabled, it is simpler to detect problems in the baudrate or other communication configuration settings.

The test frames are transmitted until the first valid command frame is received from the PC Host tool. The test frame is a valid error status frame, as defined by the protocol format. On the serial line, the test frame consists of three printable characters (+©W) which are easy to capture using the serial terminal tools.

This feature requires the FMSTR_Poll() function to be called periodically. Default value is 0 (false).

FMSTR_APPLICATION_STR

```
#define FMSTR_APPLICATION_STR
```

Value Type String.

Description Name of the application visible in FreeMASTER host application.

Memory access

FMSTR_USE_READMEM

```
#define FMSTR_USE_READMEM [0|1]
```

Value Type Boolean 0 or 1.

Description Define as non-zero to implement the Memory Read command and enable FreeMASTER to have read access to memory and variables. The access can be further restricted by using a TSA feature.

Default value is 1 (true).

FMSTR_USE_WRITEMEM

```
#define FMSTR_USE_WRITEMEM [0|1]
```

Value Type Boolean 0 or 1.

Description Define as non-zero to implement the Memory Write command.

The default value is 1 (true).

Oscilloscope options

FMSTR_USE_SCOPE

```
#define FMSTR_USE_SCOPE [number]
```

Value Type Integer number.

Description Number of Oscilloscope instances to be supported. Set to 0 to disable the Oscilloscope feature.
Default value is 0.

FMSTR_MAX_SCOPE_VARS

```
#define FMSTR_MAX_SCOPE_VARS [number]
```

Value Type Integer number larger than 2.

Description Number of variables to be supported by each Oscilloscope instance.
Default value is 8.

Recorder options

FMSTR_USE_RECORDER

```
#define FMSTR_USE_RECORDER [number]
```

Value Type Integer number.

Description Number of Recorder instances to be supported. Set to 0 to disable the Recorder feature.
Default value is 0.

FMSTR_REC_BUFF_SIZE

```
#define FMSTR_REC_BUFF_SIZE [number]
```

Value Type Integer number larger than 2.

Description Defines the size of the memory buffer used by the Recorder instance #0.
Default: not defined, user shall call 'FMSTR_RecorderCreate()' API function to specify this parameter in run time.

FMSTR_REC_TIMEBASE

```
#define FMSTR_REC_TIMEBASE [time specification]
```

Value Type Number (nanoseconds time).

Description Defines the base sampling rate in nanoseconds (sampling speed) Recorder instance #0.

Use one of the following macros:

- FMSTR_REC_BASE_SECONDS(x)
- FMSTR_REC_BASE_MILLISEC(x)
- FMSTR_REC_BASE_MICROSEC(x)
- FMSTR_REC_BASE_NANOSEC(x)

Default: not defined, user shall call ‘FMSTR_RecorderCreate()’ API function to specify this parameter in run time.

FMSTR_REC_FLOAT_TRIG

```
#define FMSTR_REC_FLOAT_TRIG [0|1]
```

Value Type Boolean 0 or 1.

Description Define as non-zero to implement the floating-point triggering. Be aware that floating-point triggering may grow the code size by linking the floating-point standard library.

Default value is 0 (false).

Application Commands options

FMSTR_USE_APPCMD

```
#define FMSTR_USE_APPCMD [0|1]
```

Value Type Boolean 0 or 1.

Description Define as non-zero to implement the Application Commands feature. Default value is 0 (false).

FMSTR_APPCMD_BUFF_SIZE

```
#define FMSTR_APPCMD_BUFF_SIZE [size]
```

Value Type Numeric buffer size in range 1..255

Description The size of the Application Command data buffer allocated by the driver. The buffer stores the (optional) parameters of the Application Command which waits to be processed.

FMSTR_MAX_APPCMD_CALLS

```
#define FMSTR_MAX_APPCMD_CALLS [number]
```

Value Type Number in range 0..255

Description The number of different Application Commands that can be assigned a callback handler function using `FMSTR_RegisterAppCmdCall()`. Default value is 0.

TSA options

FMSTR_USE_TSA

```
#define FMSTR_USE_TSA [0|1]
```

Value Type Boolean 0 or 1.

Description Enable the FreeMASTER TSA feature to be used. With this option enabled, the TSA tables defined in the applications are made available to the FreeMASTER host tool. Default value is 0 (false).

FMSTR_USE_TSA_SAFETY

```
#define FMSTR_USE_TSA_SAFETY [0|1]
```

Value Type Boolean 0 or 1.

Description Enable the memory access validation in the FreeMASTER driver. With this option, the host tool is not able to access the memory which is not described by at least one TSA descriptor. Also a write access is denied for objects defined as read-only in TSA tables. Default value is 0 (false).

FMSTR_USE_TSA_INROM

```
#define FMSTR_USE_TSA_INROM [0|1]
```

Value Type Boolean 0 or 1.

Description Declare all TSA descriptors as *const*, which enables the linker to put the data into the flash memory. The actual result depends on linker settings or the linker commands used in the project. Default value is 0 (false).

FMSTR_USE_TSA_DYNAMIC

```
#define FMSTR_USE_TSA_DYNAMIC [0|1]
```

Value Type Boolean 0 or 1.

Description Enable runtime-defined TSA entries to be added to the TSA table by the `FMSTR_SetUpTsaBuff()` and `FMSTR_TsaAddVar()` functions. Default value is 0 (false).

Pipes options

FMSTR_USE_PIPES

```
#define FMSTR_USE_PIPES [0|1]
```

Value Type Boolean 0 or 1.

Description Enable the FreeMASTER Pipes feature to be used. Default value is 0 (false).

FMSTR_MAX_PIPES_COUNT

```
#define FMSTR_MAX_PIPES_COUNT [number]
```

Value Type Number in range 1..63.

Description The number of simultaneous pipe connections to support. The default value is 1.

Driver interrupt modes To implement the communication, the FreeMASTER driver handles the Serial or CAN module's receive and transmit requests. Use the *freemaster_cfg.h* configuration file to select whether the driver processes the communication automatically in the interrupt service routine handler or if it only polls the status of the module (typically during the application idle time).

This section describes each of the interrupt mode in more details.

Completely Interrupt-Driven operation Activated using:

```
#define FMSTR_LONG_INTR 1
```

In this mode, both the communication and the FreeMASTER protocol decoding is done in the *FMSTR_SerialIsr*, *FMSTR_CanIsr*, or other interrupt service routine. Because the protocol execution may be a lengthy task (especially with the TSA-Safety enabled) it is recommended to use this mode only if the interrupt prioritization scheme is possible in the application and the FreeMASTER interrupt is assigned to a lower (the lowest) priority.

In this mode, the application code must register its own interrupt handler for all interrupt vectors related to the selected communication interface and call the *FMSTR_SerialIsr* or *FMSTR_CanIsr* functions from that handler.

Mixed Interrupt and Polling Modes Activated using:

```
#define FMSTR_SHORT_INTR 1
```

In this mode, the communication processing time is split between the interrupt routine and the main application loop or task. The raw communication is handled by the *FMSTR_SerialIsr*, *FMSTR_CanIsr*, or other interrupt service routine, while the protocol decoding and execution is handled by the *FMSTR_Poll* routine. Call *FMSTR_Poll* during the idle time in the application main loop.

The interrupt processing in this mode is relatively fast and deterministic. Upon a serial-receive event, the received character is only placed into a FIFO-like queue and it is not further processed. Upon a CAN receive event, the received frame is stored into a receive buffer. When transmitting, the characters are fetched from the prepared transmit buffer.

In this mode, the application code must register its own interrupt handler for all interrupt vectors related to the selected communication interface and call the *FMSTR_SerialIsr* or *FMSTR_CanIsr* functions from that handler.

When the serial interface is used as the serial communication interface, ensure that the *FMSTR_Poll* function is called at least once per *N* character time periods. *N* is the length of the FreeMASTER FIFO queue (*FMSTR_COMM_QUEUE_SIZE*) and the character time is the time needed to transmit or receive a single byte over the SCI line.

Completely Poll-driven

```
#define FMSTR_POLL_DRIVEN 1
```

In this mode, both the communication and the FreeMASTER protocol decoding are done in the *FMSTR_Poll* routine. No interrupts are needed and the *FMSTR_SerialIsr*, *FMSTR_CanIsr*, and similar handlers compile to an empty code.

When using this mode, ensure that the *FMSTR_Poll* function is called by the application at least once per the serial “character time” which is the time needed to transmit or receive a single character.

In the latter two modes (*FMSTR_SHORT_INTR* and *FMSTR_POLL_DRIVEN*), the protocol handling takes place in the *FMSTR_Poll* routine. An application interrupt can occur in the middle of the Read Memory or Write Memory commands’ execution and corrupt the variable being accessed by the FreeMASTER driver. In these two modes, some issues or glitches may occur when using FreeMASTER to visualize or monitor volatile variables modified in interrupt servicing code.

The same issue may appear even in the full interrupt mode (*FMSTR_LONG_INTR*), if volatile variables are modified in the interrupt code with a priority higher than the priority of the communication interrupt.

Data types Simple portability was one of the main requirements when writing the FreeMASTER driver. This is why the driver code uses the privately-declared data types and the vast majority of the platform-dependent code is separated in the platform-dependent source files. The data types used in the driver API are all defined in the platform-specific header file.

To prevent name conflicts with the symbols used in the application, all data types, macros, and functions have the *FMSTR_* prefix. The only global variables used in the driver are the transport and low-level API structures exported from the driver-implementation layer to upper layers. Other than that, all private variables are declared as static and named using the *fmstr_* prefix.

Communication interface initialization The FreeMASTER driver does not perform neither the initialization nor the configuration of the peripheral module that it uses to communicate. It is the application startup code responsibility to configure the communication module before the FreeMASTER driver is initialized by the *FMSTR_Init* call.

When the Serial communication module is used as the FreeMASTER communication interface, configure the UART receive and transmit pins, the serial communication baud rate, parity (no-parity), the character length (eight bits), and the number of stop bits (one) before initializing the FreeMASTER driver. For either the long or the short interrupt modes of the driver (see *Driver interrupt modes*), configure the interrupt controller and register an application-specific interrupt handler for all interrupt sources related to the selected serial peripheral module. Call the *FMSTR_SerialIsr* function from the application handler.

When a CAN module is used as the FreeMASTER communication interface, configure the CAN receive and transmit pins and the CAN module bit rate before initializing the FreeMASTER driver. For either the long or the short interrupt modes of the driver (see [Driver interrupt modes](#)), configure the interrupt controller and register an application-specific interrupt handler for all interrupt sources related to the selected CAN peripheral module. Call the FMSTR_CanIsr function from the application handler.

Note: It is not necessary to enable or unmask the serial nor the CAN interrupts before initializing the FreeMASTER driver. The driver enables or disables the interrupts and communication lines, as required during runtime.

FreeMASTER Recorder calls When using the FreeMASTER Recorder in the application (FMSTR_USE_RECORDER > 0), call the FMSTR_RecorderCreate function early after FMSTR_Init to set up each recorder instance to be used in the application. Then call the FMSTR_Recorder function periodically in the code where the data recording should occur. A typical place to call the Recorder routine is at the timer or PWM interrupts, but it can be anywhere else. The example applications provided together with the driver code call the FMSTR_Recorder in the main application loop.

In applications where FMSTR_Recorder is called periodically with a constant period, specify the period in the Recorder configuration structure before calling FMSTR_RecorderCreate. This setting enables the PC Host FreeMASTER tool to display the X-axis of the Recorder graph properly scaled for the time domain.

Driver usage Start using or evaluating FreeMASTER by opening some of the example applications available in the driver setup package.

Follow these steps to enable the basic FreeMASTER connectivity in the application:

- Make sure that all `*c` files of the FreeMASTER driver from the `src/common/platforms/[your_platform]` folder are a part of the project. See [Driver files](#) for more details.
- Configure the FreeMASTER driver by creating or editing the `freemaster_cfg.h` file and by saving it into the application project directory. See [Driver configuration](#) for more details.
- Include the `freemaster.h` file into any application source file that makes the FreeMASTER API calls.
- Initialize the Serial or CAN modules. Set the baud rate, parity, and other parameters of the communication. Do not enable the communication interrupts in the interrupt mask registers.
- For the FMSTR_LONG_INTR and FMSTR_SHORT_INTR modes, install the application-specific interrupt routine and call the FMSTR_SerialIsr or FMSTR_CanIsr functions from this handler.
- Call the FMSTR_Init function early on in the application initialization code.
- Call the FMSTR_RecorderCreate functions for each Recorder instance to enable the Recorder feature.
- In the main application loop, call the FMSTR_Poll API function periodically when the application is idle.
- For the FMSTR_SHORT_INTR and FMSTR_LONG_INTR modes, enable the interrupts globally so that the interrupts can be handled by the CPU.

Communication troubleshooting The most common problem that causes communication issues is a wrong baud rate setting or a wrong pin multiplexer setting of the target MCU. When

a communication between the PC Host running FreeMASTER and the target MCU cannot be established, try enabling the `FMSTR_DEBUG_TX` option in the `freemaster_cfg.h` file and call the `FMSTR_Poll` function periodically in the main application task loop.

With this feature enabled, the FreeMASTER driver periodically transmits a test frame through the Serial or CAN lines. Use a logic analyzer or an oscilloscope to monitor the signals at the communication pins of the CPU device to examine whether the bit rate and signal polarity are configured properly.

Driver API

This section describes the driver Application Programmers' Interface (API) needed to initialize and use the FreeMASTER serial communication driver.

Control API There are three key functions to initialize and use the driver.

FMSTR_Init

Prototype

```
FMSTR_BOOL FMSTR_Init(void);
```

- Declaration: `freemaster.h`
- Implementation: `freemaster_protocol.c`

Description This function initializes the internal variables of the FreeMASTER driver and enables the communication interface. This function does not change the configuration of the selected communication module. The hardware module must be initialized before the `FMSTR_Init` function is called.

A call to this function must occur before calling any other FreeMASTER driver API functions.

FMSTR_Poll

Prototype

```
void FMSTR_Poll(void);
```

- Declaration: `freemaster.h`
- Implementation: `freemaster_protocol.c`

Description In the poll-driven or short interrupt modes, this function handles the protocol decoding and execution (see *Driver interrupt modes*). In the poll-driven mode, this function also handles the communication interface with the PC. Typically, the `FMSTR_Poll` function is called during the "idle" time in the main application task loop.

To prevent the receive data overflow (loss) on a serial interface, make sure that the `FMSTR_Poll` function is called at least once per the time calculated as:

$$N * Tchar$$

where:

- N is equal to the length of the receive FIFO queue (configured by the `FMSTR_COMM_QUEUE_SIZE` macro). N is 1 for the poll-driven mode.
- $Tchar$ is the character time, which is the time needed to transmit or receive a single byte over the SCI line.

Note: In the long interrupt mode, this function typically compiles as an empty function and can still be called. It is worthwhile to call this function regardless of the interrupt mode used in the application. This approach enables a convenient switching between the different interrupt modes only by changing the configuration macros in the `freemaster_cfg.h` file.

FMSTR_SerialIsr / FMSTR_CanIsr

Prototype

```
void FMSTR_SerialIsr(void);  
void FMSTR_CanIsr(void);
```

- Declaration: `freemaster.h`
- Implementation: *hw-specific low-level driver C file*

Description This function contains the interrupt-processing code of the FreeMASTER driver. In long or short interrupt modes (see [Driver interrupt modes](#)), this function must be called from the application interrupt service routine registered for the communication interrupt vector. On platforms where the communication module uses multiple interrupt vectors, the application should register a handler for all vectors and call this function at each interrupt.

Note: In a poll-driven mode, this function is compiled as an empty function and does not have to be used.

Recorder API

FMSTR_RecorderCreate

Prototype

```
FMSTR_BOOL FMSTR_RecorderCreate(FMSTR_INDEX recIndex, FMSTR_REC_BUFF* buffCfg);
```

- Declaration: `freemaster.h`
- Implementation: `freemaster_rec.c`

Description This function registers a recorder instance and enables it to be used by the PC Host tool. Call this function for all recorder instances from 0 to the maximum number defined by the `FMSTR_USE_RECORDER` configuration option (minus one). An exception to this requirement is the recorder of instance 0 which may be automatically configured by `FMSTR_Init` when the `freemaster_cfg.h` configuration file defines the `FMSTR_REC_BUFF_SIZE` and `FMSTR_REC_TIMEBASE` options.

For more information, see [Configurable items](#).

FMSTR_Recorder

Prototype

```
void FMSTR_Recorder(FMSTR_INDEX recIndex);
```

- Declaration: *freemaster.h*
- Implementation: *freemaster_rec.c*

Description This function takes a sample of the variables being recorded using the FreeMASTER Recorder instance *recIndex*. If the selected Recorder is not active when the *FMSTR_Recorder* function is being called, the function returns immediately. When the Recorder is active, the values of the variables being recorded are copied into the recorder buffer and the trigger conditions are evaluated.

If a trigger condition is satisfied, the Recorder enters the post-trigger mode, where it counts down the follow-up samples (number of *FMSTR_Recorder* function calls) and de-activates the Recorder when the required post-trigger samples are finished.

The *FMSTR_Recorder* function is typically called in the timer or PWM interrupt service routines. This function can also be called in the application main loop (for testing purposes).

FMSTR_RecorderTrigger

Prototype

```
void FMSTR_RecorderTrigger(FMSTR_INDEX recIndex);
```

- Declaration: *freemaster.h*
- Implementation: *freemaster_rec.c*

Description This function forces the Recorder trigger condition to happen, which causes the Recorder to be automatically deactivated after the post-trigger samples are sampled. Use this function in the application code for programmatic control over the Recorder triggering. This can be useful when a more complex triggering conditions need to be used.

Fast Recorder API The Fast Recorder feature is not available in the FreeMASTER driver version 3. This feature was heavily dependent on the target platform and it was only available for the 56F8xxxx DSCs.

TSA Tables When the TSA is enabled in the FreeMASTER driver configuration file (by setting the *FMSTR_USE_TSA* macro to a non-zero value), it defines the so-called TSA tables in the application. This section describes the macros that must to be used to define the TSA tables.

There can be any number of TSA tables spread across the application source files. There must be always exactly one TSA Table List defined, which informs the FreeMASTER driver about the active TSA tables.

When there is at least one TSA table and one TSA Table List defined in the application, the TSA information automatically appears in the FreeMASTER symbols list. The symbols can then be used to create FreeMASTER variables for visualization or control.

TSA table definition The TSA table describes the static or global variables together with their address, size, type, and access-protection information. If the TSA-described variables are of a structure type, the TSA table may also describe this type and provide an access to the individual structure members of the variable.

The TSA table definition begins with the `FMSTR_TSA_TABLE_BEGIN` macro with a *table_id* identifying the table. The *table_id* shall be a valid C-language symbol.

```
FMSTR_TSA_TABLE_BEGIN(table_id)
```

After this opening macro, the TSA descriptors are placed using these macros:

```
/* Adding variable descriptors */
FMSTR_TSA_RW_VAR(name, type) /* read/write variable entry */
FMSTR_TSA_RO_VAR(name, type) /* read-only variable entry */

/* Description of complex data types */
FMSTR_TSA_STRUCT(struct_name) /* structure or union type entry */
FMSTR_TSA_MEMBER(struct_name, member_name, type) /* structure member entry */

/* Memory blocks */
FMSTR_TSA_RW_MEM(name, type, address, size) /* read/write memory block */
FMSTR_TSA_RO_MEM(name, type, address, size) /* read-only memory block */
```

The table is closed using the `FMSTR_TSA_TABLE_END` macro:

```
FMSTR_TSA_TABLE_END()
```

TSA descriptor parameters The TSA descriptor macros accept these parameters:

- *name* — variable name. The variable must be defined before the TSA descriptor references it.
- *type* — variable or member type. Only one of the pre-defined type constants may be used (see below).
- *struct_name* — structure type name. The type must be defined (typedef) before the TSA descriptor references it.
- *member_name* — structure member name.

Note: The structure member descriptors (`FMSTR_TSA_MEMBER`) must immediately follow the parent structure descriptor (`FMSTR_TSA_STRUCT`) in the table.

Note: To write-protect the variables in the FreeMASTER driver (`FMSTR_TSA_RO_VAR`), enable the TSA-Safety feature in the configuration file.

TSA variable types The table lists *type* identifiers which can be used in TSA descriptors:

Constant	Description
FMSTR_TSA_UINTn	Unsigned integer type of size n bits ($n=8,16,32,64$)
FMSTR_TSA_SINTn	Signed integer type of size n bits ($n=8,16,32,64$)
FMSTR_TSA_FRACn	Fractional number of size n bits ($n=16,32,64$).
FMSTR_TSA_FRAC_Q(m,n)	Signed fractional number in general Q form ($m+n+1$ total bits)
FMSTR_TSA_FRAC_UQ(m,n)	Unsigned fractional number in general UQ form ($m+n$ total bits)
FMSTR_TSA_FLOAT	4-byte standard IEEE floating-point type
FMSTR_TSA_DOUBLE	8-byte standard IEEE floating-point type
FMSTR_TSA_POINTER	Generic pointer type defined (platform-specific 16 or 32 bit)
FM-STR_TSA_USERTYPE($name$)	Structure or union type declared with FMSTR_TSA_STRUCT record

TSA table list There shall be exactly one TSA Table List in the application. The list contains one entry for each TSA table defined anywhere in the application.

The TSA Table List begins with the FMSTR_TSA_TABLE_LIST_BEGIN macro and continues with the TSA table entries for each table.

```
FMSTR_TSA_TABLE_LIST_BEGIN()

FMSTR_TSA_TABLE(table_id)
FMSTR_TSA_TABLE(table_id2)
FMSTR_TSA_TABLE(table_id3)
...
```

The list is closed with the FMSTR_TSA_TABLE_LIST_END macro:

```
FMSTR_TSA_TABLE_LIST_END()
```

TSA Active Content entries FreeMASTER v2.0 and higher supports TSA Active Content, enabling the TSA tables to describe the memory-mapped files, virtual directories, and URL hyperlinks. FreeMASTER can access such objects similarly to accessing the files and folders on the local hard drive.

With this set of TSA entries, the FreeMASTER pages can be embedded directly into the target MCU flash and accessed by FreeMASTER directly over the communication line. The HTML-coded pages rendered inside the FreeMASTER window can access the TSA Active Content resources using a special URL referencing the *fmstr:* protocol.

This example provides an overview of the supported TSA Active Content entries:

```
FMSTR_TSA_TABLE_BEGIN(files_and_links)

/* Directory entry applies to all subsequent MEMFILE entries */
FMSTR_TSA_DIRECTORY("/text_files") /* entering a new virtual directory */

/* The readme.txt file will be accessible at the fmstr://text_files/readme.txt URL */
FMSTR_TSA_MEMFILE("readme.txt", readme_txt, sizeof(readme_txt)) /* memory-mapped file */

/* Files can also be specified with a full path so the DIRECTORY entry does not apply */
FMSTR_TSA_MEMFILE("/index.htm", index, sizeof(index)) /* memory-mapped file */
FMSTR_TSA_MEMFILE("/prj/demo.pmp", demo_pmp, sizeof(demo_pmp)) /* memory-mapped file */

/* Hyperlinks can point to a local MEMFILE object or to the Internet */
FMSTR_TSA_HREF("Board's Built-in Welcome Page", "/index.htm")
FMSTR_TSA_HREF("FreeMASTER Home Page", "http://www.nxp.com/freemaster")
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```

/* Project file links simplify opening the projects from any URLs */
FMSTR_TSA_PROJECT("Demonstration Project (embedded)", "/prj/demo.pmp")
FMSTR_TSA_PROJECT("Full Project (online)", "http://mycompany.com/prj/demo.pmp")

FMSTR_TSA_TABLE_END()

```

TSA API

FMSTR_SetUpTsaBuff

Prototype

```
FMSTR_BOOL FMSTR_SetUpTsaBuff(FMSTR_ADDR buffAddr, FMSTR_SIZE buffSize);
```

- Declaration: *freemaster.h*
- Implementation: *freemaster_tsa.c*

Arguments

- *buffAddr* [in] - address of the memory buffer for the dynamic TSA table
- *buffSize* [in] - size of the memory buffer which determines the maximum number of TSA entries to be added in the runtime

Description This function must be used to assign the RAM memory buffer to the TSA subsystem when FMSTR_USE_TSA_DYNAMIC is enabled. The memory buffer is then used to store the TSA entries added dynamically to the runtime TSA table using the FMSTR_TsaAddVar function call. The runtime TSA table is processed by the FreeMASTER PC Host tool along with all static tables as soon as the communication port is open.

The size of the memory buffer determines the number of TSA entries that can be added dynamically. Depending on the MCU platform, one TSA entry takes either 8 or 16 bytes.

FMSTR_TsaAddVar

Prototype

```
FMSTR_BOOL FMSTR_TsaAddVar(FMSTR_TSATBL_STRPTR tsaName, FMSTR_TSATBL_STRPTR
↪ tsaType,
    FMSTR_TSATBL_VOIDPTR varAddr, FMSTR_SIZE32 varSize,
    FMSTR_SIZE flags);
```

- Declaration: *freemaster.h*
- Implementation: *freemaster_tsa.c*

Arguments

- *tsaName* [in] - name of the object
- *tsaType* [in] - name of the object type
- *varAddr* [in] - address of the object

- *varSize* [in] - size of the object
- *flags* [in] - access flags; a combination of these values:
 - *FMSTR_TSA_INFO_RO_VAR* — read-only memory-mapped object (typically a variable)
 - *FMSTR_TSA_INFO_RW_VAR* — read/write memory-mapped object
 - *FMSTR_TSA_INFO_NON_VAR* — other entry, describing structure types, structure members, enumerations, and other types

Description This function can be called only when the dynamic TSA table is enabled by the *FMSTR_USE_TSA_DYNAMIC* configuration option and when the *FMSTR_SetUpTsaBuff* function call is made to assign the dynamic TSA table memory. This function adds an entry into the dynamic TSA table. It can be used to register a read-only or read/write memory object or describe an item of the user-defined type.

See [TSA table definition](#) for more details about the TSA table entries.

Application Commands API

FMSTR_GetAppCmd

Prototype

```
FMSTR_APPCMD_CODE FMSTR_GetAppCmd(void);
```

- Declaration: *freemaster.h*
- Implementation: *freemaster_appcmd.c*

Description This function can be used to detect if there is an Application Command waiting to be processed by the application. If no command is pending, this function returns the *FMSTR_APPCMDRESULT_NOCMD* constant. Otherwise, this function returns the code of the Application Command that must be processed. Use the *FMSTR_AppCmdAck* call to acknowledge the Application Command after it is processed and to return the appropriate result code to the host.

The *FMSTR_GetAppCmd* function does not report the commands for which a callback handler function exists. If the *FMSTR_GetAppCmd* function is called when a callback-registered command is pending (and before it is actually processed by the callback function), this function returns *FMSTR_APPCMDRESULT_NOCMD*.

FMSTR_GetAppCmdData

Prototype

```
FMSTR_APPCMD_PDATA FMSTR_GetAppCmdData(FMSTR_SIZE* dataLen);
```

- Declaration: *freemaster.h*
- Implementation: *freemaster_appcmd.c*

Arguments

- *dataLen* [out] - pointer to the variable that receives the length of the data available in the buffer. It can be NULL when this information is not needed.

Description This function can be used to retrieve the Application Command data when the application determines that an Application Command is pending (see [FMSTR_GetAppCmd](#)).

There is just a single buffer to hold the Application Command data (the buffer length is FMSTR_APPCMD_BUFF_SIZE bytes). If the data are to be used in the application after the command is processed by the FMSTR_AppCmdAck call, copy the data out to a private buffer.

FMSTR_AppCmdAck

Prototype

```
void FMSTR_AppCmdAck(FMSTR_APPCMD_RESULT resultCode);
```

- Declaration: *freemaster.h*
- Implementation: *freemaster_appcmd.c*

Arguments

- *resultCode* [in] - the result code which is to be returned to FreeMASTER

Description This function is used when the Application Command processing finishes in the application. The resultCode passed to this function is returned back to the host and the driver is re-initialized to expect the next Application Command.

After this function is called and before the next Application Command arrives, the return value of the FMSTR_GetAppCmd function is FMSTR_APPCMDRESULT_NOCMD.

FMSTR_AppCmdSetResponseData

Prototype

```
void FMSTR_AppCmdSetResponseData(FMSTR_ADDR resultDataAddr, FMSTR_SIZE resultDataLen);
```

- Declaration: *freemaster.h*
- Implementation: *freemaster_appcmd.c*

Arguments

- *resultDataAddr* [in] - pointer to the data buffer that is to be copied to the Application Command data buffer
- *resultDataLen* [in] - length of the data to be copied. It must not exceed the FMSTR_APPCMD_BUFF_SIZE value.

Description This function can be used before the Application Command processing finishes, when there are data to be returned back to the PC.

The response data buffer is copied into the Application Command data buffer, from where it is accessed when the host requires it. Do not use FMSTR_GetAppCmdData and the data buffer after FMSTR_AppCmdSetResponseData is called.

Note: The current version of FreeMASTER does not support the Application Command response data.

FMSTR_RegisterAppCmdCall

Prototype

```
FMSTR_BOOL FMSTR_RegisterAppCmdCall(FMSTR_APPCMD_CODE appCmdCode, FMSTR_
↔PAPPCMDFUNC callbackFunc);
```

- Declaration: *freemaster.h*
- Implementation: *freemaster_appcmd.c*

Arguments

- *appCmdCode* [in] - the Application Command code for which the callback is to be registered
- *callbackFunc* [in] - pointer to the callback function that is to be registered. Use NULL to unregister a callback registered previously with this Application Command.

Return value This function returns a non-zero value when the callback function was successfully registered or unregistered. It can return zero when trying to register a callback function for more than FMSTR_MAX_APPCMD_CALLS different Application Commands.

Description This function can be used to register the given function as a callback handler for the Application Command. The Application Command is identified using single-byte code. The callback function is invoked automatically by the FreeMASTER driver when the protocol decoder obtains a request to get the application command result code.

The prototype of the callback function is

```
FMSTR_APPCMD_RESULT HandlerFunction(FMSTR_APPCMD_CODE nAppcmd,
FMSTR_APPCMD_PDATA pData, FMSTR_SIZE nDataLen);
```

Where:

- *nAppcmd* -Application Command code
- *pData* —points to the Application Command data received (if any)
- *nDataLen* —information about the Application Command data length

The return value of the callback function is used as the Application Command Result Code and returned to FreeMASTER.

Note: The FMSTR_MAX_APPCMD_CALLS configuration macro defines how many different Application Commands may be handled by a callback function. When FMSTR_MAX_APPCMD_CALLS is undefined or defined as zero, the FMSTR_RegisterAppCmdCall function always fails.

Pipes API

FMSTR_PipeOpen

Prototype

```
FMSTR_HPIPE FMSTR_PipeOpen(FMSTR_PIPE_PORT pipePort, FMSTR_PPIPEFUNC pipeCallback,
↔
FMSTR_ADDR pipeRxBuff, FMSTR_PIPE_SIZE pipeRxSize,
FMSTR_ADDR pipeTxBuff, FMSTR_PIPE_SIZE pipeTxSize,
FMSTR_U8 type, const FMSTR_CHAR *name);
```

- Declaration: *freemaster.h*
- Implementation: *freemaster_pipes.c*

Arguments

- *pipePort* [in] - port number that identifies the pipe for the client
- *pipeCallback* [in] - pointer to the callback function that is called whenever a pipe data status changes
- *pipeRxBuff* [in] - address of the receive memory buffer
- *pipeRxSize* [in] - size of the receive memory buffer
- *pipeTxBuff* [in] - address of the transmit memory buffer
- *pipeTxSize* [in] - size of the transmit memory buffer
- *type* [in] - a combination of FMSTR_PIPE_MODE_XXX and FMSTR_PIPE_SIZE_XXX constants describing primary pipe data format and usage. This type helps FreeMASTER decide how to access the pipe by default. Optional, use 0 when undetermined.
- *name* [in] - user name of the pipe port. This name is visible to the FreeMASTER user when creating the graphical pipe interface.

Description This function initializes a new pipe and makes it ready to accept or send the data to the PC Host client. The receive memory buffer is used to store the received data before they are read out by the FMSTR_PipeRead call. When this buffer gets full, the PC Host client denies the data transmission into this pipe until there is enough free space again. The transmit memory buffer is used to store the data transmitted by the application to the PC Host client using the FMSTR_PipeWrite call. The transmit buffer can get full when the PC Host is disconnected or when it is slow in receiving and reading out the pipe data.

The function returns the pipe handle which must be stored and used in the subsequent calls to manage the pipe object.

The callback function (if specified) is called whenever new data are received through the pipe and available for reading. This callback is also called when the data waiting in the transmit buffer are successfully pushed to the PC Host and the transmit buffer free space increases. The prototype of the callback function provided by the user application must be as follows. The *PipeHandler* name is only a placeholder and must be defined by the application.

```
void PipeHandler(FMSTR_HPIPE pipeHandle);
```

FMSTR_PipeClose

Prototype

```
void FMSTR_PipeClose(FMSTR_HPIPE pipeHandle);
```

- Declaration: *freemaster.h*
- Implementation: *freemaster_pipes.c*

Arguments

- *pipeHandle* [in] - pipe handle returned from the FMSTR_PipeOpen function call

Description This function de-initializes the pipe object. No data can be received or sent on the pipe after this call.

FMSTR_PipeWrite

Prototype

```
FMSTR_PIPE_SIZE FMSTR_PipeWrite(FMSTR_HPIPE pipeHandle, FMSTR_ADDR pipeData,
    FMSTR_PIPE_SIZE pipeDataLen, FMSTR_PIPE_SIZE writeGranularity);
```

- Declaration: *freemaster.h*
- Implementation: *freemaster_pipes.c*

Arguments

- *pipeHandle* [in] - pipe handle returned from the FMSTR_PipeOpen function call
- *pipeData* [in] - address of the data to be written
- *pipeDataLen* [in] - length of the data to be written
- *writeGranularity* [in] - size of the minimum unit of data which is to be written

Description This function puts the user-specified data into the pipe's transmit memory buffer and schedules it for transmission. This function returns the number of bytes that were successfully written into the buffer. This number may be smaller than the number of the requested bytes if there is not enough free space in the transmit buffer.

The *writeGranularity* argument can be used to split the data into smaller chunks, each of the size given by the *writeGranularity* value. The FMSTR_PipeWrite function writes as many data chunks as possible into the transmit buffer and does not attempt to write an incomplete chunk. This feature can prove to be useful to avoid the intermediate caching when writing an array of integer values or other multi-byte data items. When making the *nGranularity* value equal to the *nLength* value, all data are considered as one chunk which is either written successfully as a whole or not at all. The *nGranularity* value of 0 or 1 disables the data-chunk approach.

FMSTR_PipeRead

Prototype

```
FMSTR_PIPE_SIZE FMSTR_PipeRead(FMSTR_HPIPE pipeHandle, FMSTR_ADDR pipeData,
    FMSTR_PIPE_SIZE pipeDataLen, FMSTR_PIPE_SIZE readGranularity);
```

- Declaration: *freemaster.h*
- Implementation: *freemaster_pipes.c*

Arguments

- *pipeHandle* [in] - pipe handle returned from the FMSTR_PipeOpen function call
- *pipeData* [in] - address of the data buffer to be filled with the received data
- *pipeDataLen* [in] - length of the data to be read
- *readGranularity* [in] - size of the minimum unit of data which is to be read

Description This function copies the data received from the pipe from its receive buffer to the user buffer for further processing. The function returns the number of bytes that were successfully copied to the buffer. This number may be smaller than the number of the requested bytes if there is not enough data bytes available in the receive buffer.

The `readGranularity` argument can be used to copy the data in larger chunks in the same way as described in the `FMSTR_PipeWrite` function.

API data types This section describes the data types used in the FreeMASTER driver. The information provided here can be useful when modifying or porting the FreeMASTER Communication Driver to new NXP platforms.

Note: The licensing conditions prohibit use of FreeMASTER and the FreeMASTER Communication Driver with non-NXP MPU or MCU products.

Public common types The table below describes the public data types used in the FreeMASTER driver API calls. The data types are declared in the `freemaster.h` header file.

Type name	Description
<i>FM-STR_ADDR</i> For example, this type is defined as long integer on the 56F8xxx platform where the 24-bit addresses must be supported, but the C-pointer may be only 16 bits wide in some compiler configurations.	Data type used to hold the memory address. On most platforms, this is normally a C-pointer, but it may also be a pure integer type.
<i>FM-STR_SIZE</i> It is required that this type is unsigned and at least 16 bits wide integer.	Data type used to hold the memory block size.
<i>FM-STR_BOOL</i> This type is used only in zero/non-zero conditions in the driver code.	Data type used as a general boolean type.
<i>FM-STR_APPCM</i> Generally, this is an unsigned 8-bit value.	Data type used to hold the Application Command code.
<i>FM-STR_APPCM</i> Generally, this is an unsigned 8-bit value.	Data type used to create the Application Command data buffer.
<i>FM-STR_APPCM</i> Generally, this is an unsigned 8-bit value.	Data type used to hold the Application Command result code.

Public TSA types The table describes the TSA-specific public data types. These types are declared in the *freemaster_tsa.h* header file, which is included in the user application indirectly by the *freemaster.h* file.

<i>FM-STR_TSA_TII</i>	Data type used to hold a descriptor index in the TSA table or a table index in the list of TSA tables. By default, this is defined as <i>FM-STR_SIZE</i> .
<i>FM-STR_TSA_TS</i>	Data type used to hold a memory block size, as used in the TSA descriptors. By default, this is defined as <i>FM-STR_SIZE</i> .

Public Pipes types The table describes the data types used by the FreeMASTER Pipes API:

<i>FM-STR_HPIPE</i>	Pipe handle that identifies the open-pipe object. Generally, this is a pointer to a void type.
<i>FM-STR_PIPE_PC</i>	Integer type required to hold at least 7 bits of data. Generally, this is an unsigned 8-bit or 16-bit type.
<i>FM-STR_PIPE_SI</i>	Integer type required to hold at least 16 bits of data. This is used to store the data buffer sizes.
<i>FM-STR_PPIPEF</i>	Pointer to the pipe handler function. See FM-STR_PipeOpen for more details.

Internal types The table describes the data types used internally by the FreeMASTER driver. The data types are declared in the platform-specific header file and they are not available in the application code.

<i>FMSTR_U8</i>	The smallest memory entity.
On the vast majority of platforms, this is an unsigned 8-bit integer.	
On the 56F8xx DSP platform, this is defined as an unsigned 16-bit integer.	
<i>FM-STR_U16</i>	Unsigned 16-bit integer.
<i>FM-STR_U32</i>	Unsigned 32-bit integer.
<i>FMSTR_S8</i>	Signed 8-bit integer.
<i>FM-STR_S16</i>	Signed 16-bit integer.
<i>FM-STR_S32</i>	Signed 32-bit integer.
<i>FM-STR_FLOAT</i>	4-byte standard IEEE floating-point type.
<i>FM-STR_FLAGS</i>	Data type forming a union with a structure of flag bit-fields.
<i>FM-STR_SIZES</i>	Data type holding a general size value, at least 8 bits wide.
<i>FM-STR_INDEX</i>	General for-loop index. Must be signed, at least 16 bits wide.
<i>FM-STR_BCHR</i>	A single character in the communication buffer.
Typically, this is an 8-bit unsigned integer, except for the DSP platforms where it is a 16-bit integer.	
<i>FM-STR_BPTR</i>	A pointer to the communication buffer (an array of <i>FMSTR_BCHR</i>).

Document references

Links

- This document online: <https://mcuxpresso.nxp.com/mcuxsdk/latest/html/middleware/freemaster/doc/index.html>

- FreeMASTER tool home: www.nxp.com/freemaster
- FreeMASTER community area: community.nxp.com/community/freemaster
- FreeMASTER GitHub code repo: <https://github.com/nxp-mcuxpresso/mcux-freemaster>
- MCUXpresso SDK home: www.nxp.com/mcuxpresso
- MCUXpresso SDK builder: mcuxpresso.nxp.com/en

Documents

- *FreeMASTER Usage Serial Driver Implementation* (document [AN4752](#))
- *Integrating FreeMASTER Time Debugging Tool With CodeWarrior For Microcontrollers v10.X Project* (document [AN4771](#))
- *Flash Driver Library For MC56F847xx And MC56F827xx DSC Family* (document [AN4860](#))

Revision history This Table summarizes the changes done to this document since the initial release.

Revision	Date	Description
1.0	03/2006	Limited initial release
2.0	09/2007	Updated for FreeMASTER version. New Freescale document template used.
2.1	12/2007	Added description of the new Fast Recorder feature and its API.
2.2	04/2010	Added support for MPC56xx platform, Added new API for use CAN interface.
2.3	04/2011	Added support for Kxx Kinetis platform and MQX operating system.
2.4	06/2011	Serial driver update, adds support for USB CDC interface.
2.5	08/2011	Added Packet Driven BDM interface.
2.7	12/2013	Added FLEXCAN32 interface, byte access and isr callback configuration option.
2.8	06/2014	Removed obsolete license text, see the software package content for up-to-date license.
2.9	03/2015	Update for driver version 1.8.2 and 1.9: FreeMASTER Pipes, TSA Active Content, LIN Transport Layer support, DEBUG-TX communication troubleshooting, Kinetis SDK support.
3.0	08/2016	Update for driver version 2.0: Added support for MPC56xx, MPC57xx, KEAxx and S32Kxx platforms. New NXP document template as well as new license agreement used. added MCAN interface. Folders structure at the installation destination was rearranged.
4.0	04/2019	Update for driver released as part of FreeMASTER v3.0 and MCUXpresso SDK 2.6. Updated to match new V4 serial communication protocol and new configuration options. This version of the document removes substantial portion of outdated information related to S08, S12, ColdFire, Power and other legacy platforms.
4.1	04/2020	Minor update for FreeMASTER driver included in MCUXpresso SDK 2.8.
4.2	09/2020	Added example applications description and information about the MCUXpresso Config Tools. Fixed the pipe-related API description.
4.3	10/2024	Added description of Network and Segger J-Link RTT interface configuration. Accompanying the MCUXpresso SDK version 24.12.00.
4.4	04/2025	Added Zephyr-specific information. Accompanying the MCUXpresso SDK version 25.06.00.

1.6 MultiCore

1.6.1 Multicore SDK

Multicore Software Development Kit (MCSDK) is a Software Development Kit that provides comprehensive software support for NXP dual/multicore devices. The MCSDK is combined with the MCUXpresso SDK to make the software framework for easy development of multicore applications.

Multicore SDK (MCSDK) Release Notes

Overview These are the release notes for the NXP Multicore Software Development Kit (MCSDK) version 25.12.00.

This software package contains components for efficient work with multicore devices as well as for the multiprocessor communication.

What is new

- eRPC [CHANGELOG](#)
- RPMsg-Lite [CHANGELOG](#)
- MCMgr [CHANGELOG](#)
- Supported evaluation boards (multicore examples):
 - LPCXpresso55S69
 - FRDM-K32L3A6
 - MIMXRT1170-EVKB
 - MIMXRT1160-EVK
 - MIMXRT1180-EVK
 - MCX-N5XX-EVK
 - MCX-N9XX-EVK
 - FRDM-MCXN947
 - MIMXRT700-EVK
 - KW47-EVK
 - KW47-LOC
 - FRDM-MCXW72
 - MCX-W72-EVK
 - FRDM-IMXRT1186
- Supported evaluation boards (multiprocessor examples):
 - LPCXpresso55S36
 - FRDM-K22F
 - FRDM-K32L2B
 - MIMXRT685-EVK
 - MIMXRT1170-EVKB
 - MIMXRT1180
 - FRDM-MCXN236
 - FRDM-MCXC242
 - FRDM-MCXC444
 - MCX-N9XX-EVK
 - FRDM-MCXN947
 - MIMXRT700-EVK
 - FRDM-IMXRT1186

Development tools The Multicore SDK (MCSDK) was compiled and tested with development tools referred in: [Development tools](#)

Release contents This table describes the release contents. Not all MCUXpresso SDK packages contain the whole set of these components.

Deliverable	Location
Multicore SDK location <MCSDK_dir>	<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/middleware/multicore/
Documentation	<MCSDK_dir>/mcuxsdk-doc/
Embedded Remote Procedure Call component	<MCSDK_dir>/erpc/
Multicore Manager component	<MCSDK_dir>/mcmgr/
RPMsg-Lite	<MCSDK_dir>/rpmsg_lite/
Multicore demo applications	<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/examples/multicore_examples/
Multiprocessor demo applications	<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/examples/multiprocessor_examples/

Multicore SDK release overview Together, the Multicore SDK (MCSDK) and the MCUXpresso SDK (SDK) form a framework for the development of software for NXP multicore devices. The MCSDK release consists of the following elementary software components for multicore:

- Embedded Remote Procedure Call (eRPC)
- Multicore Manager (MCMGR) - included just in SDK for multicore devices
- Remote Processor Messaging - Lite (RPMsg-Lite) - included just in SDK for multicore devices

The MCSDK is also accompanied with documentation and several multicore and multiprocessor demo applications.

Demo applications The multicore demo applications demonstrate the usage of the MCSDK software components on supported multicore development boards.

The following multicore demo applications are located together with other MCUXpresso SDK examples in

the <MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/examples/multicore_examples subdirectories.

- erpc_matrix_multiply_mu
- erpc_matrix_multiply_mu_rtos
- erpc_matrix_multiply_rpmsg
- erpc_matrix_multiply_rpmsg_rtos
- erpc_two_way_rpc_rpmsg_rtos
- freertos_message_buffers
- hello_world
- multicore_manager
- rpmsg_lite_pingpong
- rpmsg_lite_pingpong_rtos
- rpmsg_lite_pingpong_dsp
- rpmsg_lite_pingpong_tzm

The eRPC multicore component can be leveraged for inter-processor communication and remote procedure calls between SoCs / development boards.

The following multiprocessor demo applications are located together with other MCUXpresso SDK examples in

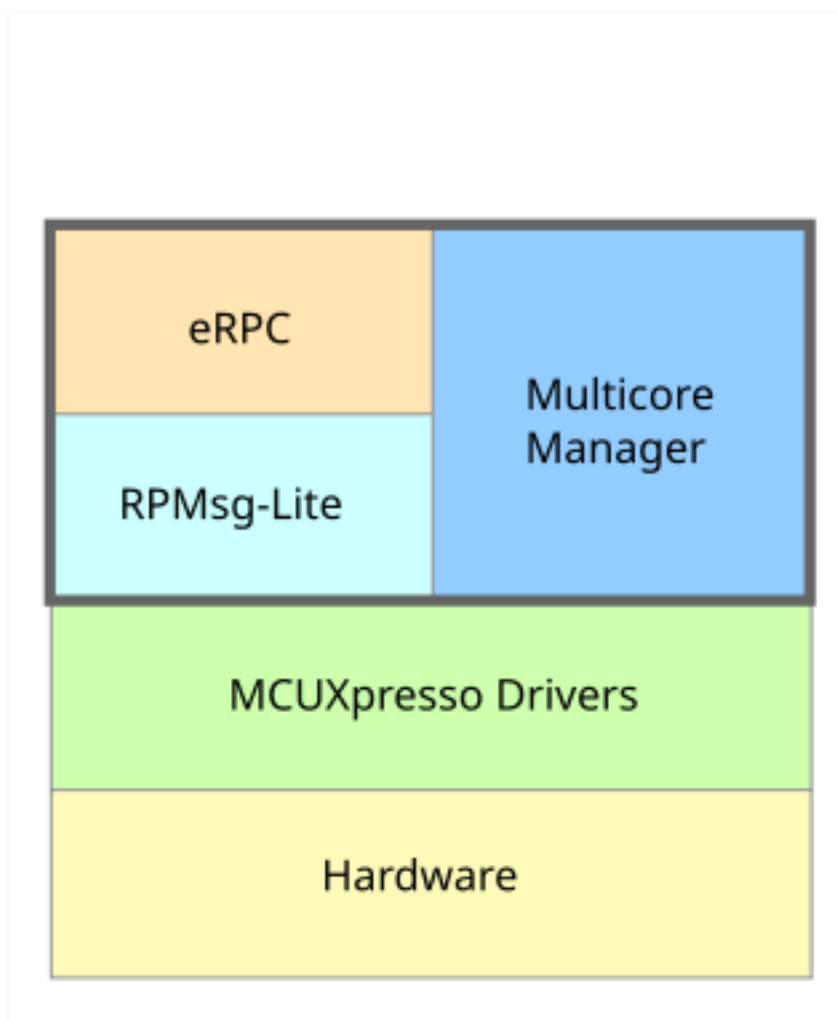
the <MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/examples/multiprocessor_examples subdirectories.

- erpc_client_matrix_multiply_spi
- erpc_server_matrix_multiply_spi
- erpc_client_matrix_multiply_uart
- erpc_server_matrix_multiply_uart
- erpc_server_dac_adc
- erpc_remote_control

Getting Started with Multicore SDK (MCSDK)

Overview Multicore Software Development Kit (MCSDK) is a Software Development Kit that provides comprehensive software support for NXP dual/multicore devices. The MCSDK is combined with the MCUXpresso SDK to make the software framework for easy development of multicore applications.

The following figure highlights the layers and main software components of the MCSDK.

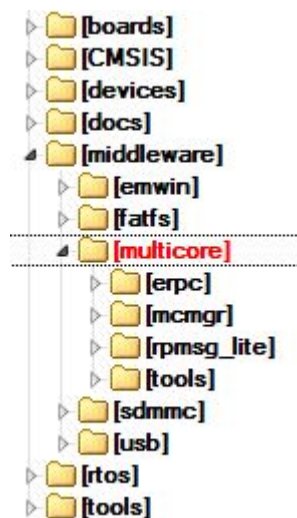


All the MCSDK-related files are located in `<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/middleware/multicore` folder.

For supported toolchain versions, see the *Multicore SDK v25.12.00 Release Notes* (document MCSDKRN). For the latest version of this and other MCSDK documents, visit www.nxp.com.

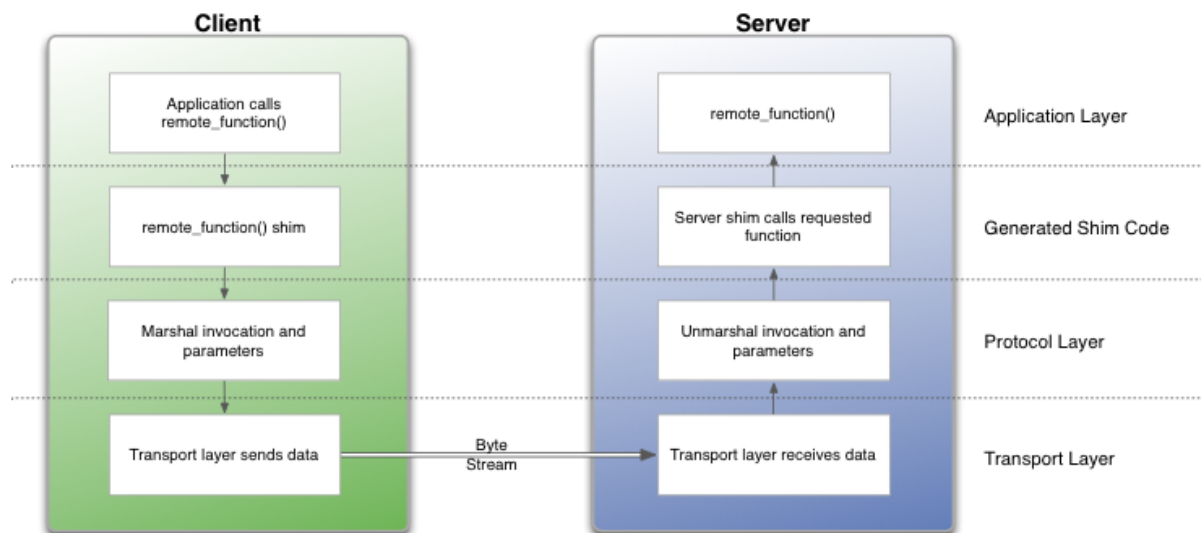
Multicore SDK (MCSDK) components The MCSDK consists of the following software components:

- **Embedded Remote Procedure Call (eRPC):** This component is a combination of a library and code generator tool that implements a transparent function call interface to remote services (running on a different core).
- **Multicore Manager (MCMGR):** This library maintains information about all cores and starts up secondary/auxiliary cores.
- **Remote Processor Messaging - Lite (RPMsg-Lite):** Inter-Processor Communication library.



Embedded Remote Procedure Call (eRPC) The Embedded Remote Procedure Call (eRPC) is the RPC system created by NXP. The RPC is a mechanism used to invoke a software routine on a remote system via a simple local function call.

When a remote function is called by the client, the function's parameters and an identifier for the called routine are marshaled (or serialized) into a stream of bytes. This byte stream is transported to the server through a communications channel (IPC, TPC/IP, UART, and so on). The server unmarshals the parameters, determines which function was invoked, and calls it. If the function returns a value, it is marshaled and sent back to the client.



RPC implementations typically use a combination of a tool (erpcgen) and IDL (interface definition language) file to generate source code to handle the details of marshaling a function's parameters and building the data stream.

Main eRPC features:

- Scalable from BareMetal to Linux OS - configurable memory and threading policies.
- Focus on embedded systems - intrinsic support for C, modular, and lightweight implementation.
- Abstracted transport interface - RPMsg is the primary transport for multicore, UART, or SPI-based solutions can be used for multichip.

The eRPC library is located in the `<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/middleware/multicore/erpc` folder. For detailed information about the eRPC, see the documentation available in the `<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/middleware/multicore/erpc/doc` folder.

Multicore Manager (MCMGR) The Multicore Manager (MCMGR) software library provides a number of services for multicore systems.

The main MCMGR features:

- Maintains information about all cores in system.
- Secondary/auxiliary cores startup and shutdown.
- Remote core monitoring and event handling.

The MCMGR library is located in the `<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/middleware/multicore/mcmgr` folder. For detailed information about the MCMGR library, see the documentation available in the `<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/middleware/multicore/mcmgr/doc` folder.

Remote Processor Messaging Lite (RPMsg-Lite) RPMsg-Lite is a lightweight implementation of the RPMsg protocol. The RPMsg protocol defines a standardized binary interface used to communicate between multiple cores in a heterogeneous multicore system. Compared to the legacy OpenAMP implementation, RPMsg-Lite offers a code size reduction, API simplification, and improved modularity.

The main RPMsg protocol features:

- Shared memory interprocessor communication.
- Virtio-based messaging bus.
- Application-defined messages sent between endpoints.

- Portable to different environments/platforms.
- Available in upstream Linux OS.

The RPSMsg-Lite library is located in the `<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/middleware/multicore/rpsmsg-lite` folder. For detailed information about the RPSMsg-Lite, see the RPSMsg-Lite User's Guide located in the `<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/middleware/multicore/rpsmsg_lite/doc` folder.

MCSDK demo applications Multicore and multiprocessor example applications are stored together with other MCUXpresso SDK examples, in the dedicated multicore subfolder.

Location	Folder
Multicore example projects	<code><MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/examples/multicore_examples/<application_name>/</code>
Multiprocessor example projects	<code><MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/examples/multiprocessor_examples/<application_name>/</code>

See the *Getting Started with MCUXpresso SDK* (document MCUXSDKGSUG) and *Getting Started with MCUXpresso SDK for XXX Derivatives* documents for more information about the MCUXpresso SDK example folder structure and the location of individual files that form the example application projects. These documents also contain information about building, running, and debugging multicore demo applications in individual supported IDEs. Each example application also contains a readme file that describes the operation of the example and required setup steps.

Inter-Processor Communication (IPC) levels The MCSDK provides several mechanisms for Inter-Processor Communication (IPC). Particular ways and levels of IPC are described in this chapter.

IPC using low-level drivers

The NXP multicore SoCs are equipped with peripheral modules dedicated for data exchange between individual cores. They deal with the Mailbox peripheral for LPC parts and the Messaging Unit (MU) peripheral for Kinetis and i.MX parts. The common attribute of both modules is the ability to provide a means of IPC, allowing multiple CPUs to share resources and communicate with each other in a simple manner.

The most lightweight method of IPC uses the MCUXpresso SDK low-level drivers for these peripherals. Using the Mailbox/MU driver API functions, it is possible to pass a value from core to core via the dedicated registers (could be a scalar or a pointer to shared memory) and also to trigger inter-core interrupts for notifications.

For details about individual driver API functions, see the MCUXpresso SDK API Reference Manual of the specific multicore device. The MCUXpresso SDK is accompanied with the RPSMsg-Lite documentation that shows how to use this API in multicore applications.

Messaging mechanism

On top of Mailbox/MU drivers, a messaging system can be implemented, allowing messages to send between multiple endpoints created on each of the CPUs. The RPSMsg-Lite library of the MCSDK provides this ability and serves as the preferred MCUXpresso SDK messaging library. It implements ring buffers in shared memory for messages exchange without the need of a locking mechanism.

The RPSMsg-Lite provides the abstraction layer and can be easily ported to different multicore platforms and environments (Operating Systems). The advantages of such a messaging system are ease of use (there is no need to study behavior of the used underlying hardware) and smooth application code portability between platforms due to unified messaging API.

However, this costs several kB of code and data memory. The MCUXpresso SDK is accompanied by the RPMsg-Lite documentation and several multicore examples. You can also obtain the latest RPMsg-Lite code from the GitHub account github.com/nxp-mcuxpresso/rpmsg-lite.

Remote procedure calls

To facilitate the IPC even more and to allow the remote functions invocation, the remote procedure call mechanism can be implemented. The eRPC of the MCSDK serves for these purposes and allows the ability to invoke a software routine on a remote system via a simple local function call. Utilizing different transport layers, it is possible to communicate between individual cores of multicore SoCs (via RPMsg-Lite) or between separate processors (via SPI, UART, or TCP/IP). The eRPC is mostly applicable to the MPU parts with enough of memory resources like i.MX parts.

The eRPC library allows you to export existing C functions without having to change their prototypes (in most cases). It is accompanied by the code generator tool that generates the shim code for serialization and invocation based on the IDL file with definitions of data types and remote interfaces (API).

If the communicating peer is running as a Linux OS user-space application, the generated code can be either in C/C++ or Python.

Using the eRPC simplifies the access to services implemented on individual cores. This way, the following types of applications running on dedicated cores can be easily interfaced:

- Communication stacks (USB, Thread, Bluetooth Low Energy, Zigbee)
- Sensor aggregation/fusion applications
- Encryption algorithms
- Virtual peripherals

The eRPC is publicly available from the following GitHub account: github.com/EmbeddedRPC/erpc. Also, the MCUXpresso SDK is accompanied by the eRPC code and several multicore and multiprocessor eRPC examples.

The mentioned IPC levels demonstrate the scalability of the Multicore SDK library. Based on application needs, different IPC techniques can be used. It depends on the complexity, required speed, memory resources, system design, and so on. The MCSDK brings users the possibility for quick and easy development of multicore and multiprocessor applications.

Changelog Multicore SDK

All notable changes to this project will be documented in this file.

The format is based on [Keep a Changelog](#), and this project adheres to [Semantic Versioning](#).

[25.12.00]

- Multicore SDK component versions:
 - embedded Remote Procedure Call (eRPC) v1.14.0
 - eRPC generator (erpcgen) v1.14.0
 - Multicore Manager (MCMgr) v5.0.2
 - RPMsg-Lite v5.3.0

[25.09.00]

- Multicore SDK component versions:
 - embedded Remote Procedure Call (eRPC) v1.14.0

- eRPC generator (erpcgen) v1.14.0
- Multicore Manager (MCMgr) v5.0.1
- RPSmsg-Lite v5.2.1

[25.06.00]

- Multicore SDK component versions:
 - embedded Remote Procedure Call (eRPC) v1.14.0
 - eRPC generator (erpcgen) v1.14.0
 - Multicore Manager (MCMgr) v5.0.0
 - RPSmsg-Lite v5.2.0

[25.03.00]

- Multicore SDK component versions:
 - embedded Remote Procedure Call (eRPC) v1.13.0
 - eRPC generator (erpcgen) v1.13.0
 - Multicore Manager (MCMgr) v4.1.7
 - RPSmsg-Lite v5.1.4

[24.12.00]

- Multicore SDK component versions:
 - embedded Remote Procedure Call (eRPC) v1.13.0
 - eRPC generator (erpcgen) v1.13.0
 - Multicore Manager (MCMgr) v4.1.6
 - RPSmsg-Lite v5.1.3

[2.16.0]

- Multicore SDK component versions:
 - embedded Remote Procedure Call (eRPC) v1.13.0
 - eRPC generator (erpcgen) v1.13.0
 - Multicore Manager (MCMgr) v4.1.5
 - RPSmsg-Lite v5.1.2

[2.15.0]

- Multicore SDK component versions:
 - embedded Remote Procedure Call (eRPC) v1.12.0
 - eRPC generator (erpcgen) v1.12.0
 - Multicore Manager (MCMgr) v4.1.5
 - RPSmsg-Lite v5.1.1

[2.14.0]

- Multicore SDK component versions:
 - embedded Remote Procedure Call (eRPC) v1.11.0
 - eRPC generator (erpcgen) v1.11.0
 - Multicore Manager (MCMgr) v4.1.4
 - RMsg-Lite v5.1.0

[2.13.0_imxrt1180a0]

- Multicore SDK component versions:
 - embedded Remote Procedure Call (eRPC) v1.10.0
 - eRPC generator (erpcgen) v1.10.0
 - Multicore Manager (MCMgr) v4.1.3
 - RMsg-Lite v5.0.0

[2.13.0]

- Multicore SDK component versions:
 - embedded Remote Procedure Call (eRPC) v1.10.0
 - eRPC generator (erpcgen) v1.10.0
 - Multicore Manager (MCMgr) v4.1.3
 - RMsg-Lite v5.0.0

[2.12.0_imx93]

- Multicore SDK component versions:
 - embedded Remote Procedure Call (eRPC) v1.9.1
 - eRPC generator (erpcgen) v1.9.1
 - Multicore Manager (MCMgr) v4.1.2
 - RMsg-Lite v4.0.1

[2.12.0]

- Multicore SDK component versions:
 - embedded Remote Procedure Call (eRPC) v1.9.1
 - eRPC generator (erpcgen) v1.9.1
 - Multicore Manager (MCMgr) v4.1.2
 - RMsg-Lite v4.0.0

[2.11.1]

- Multicore SDK component versions:
 - embedded Remote Procedure Call (eRPC) v1.9.0
 - eRPC generator (erpcgen) v1.9.0
 - Multicore Manager (MCMgr) v4.1.1
 - RMsg-Lite v3.2.1

[2.11.0]

- Multicore SDK component versions:
 - embedded Remote Procedure Call (eRPC) v1.9.0
 - eRPC generator (erpcgen) v1.9.0
 - Multicore Manager (MCMgr) v4.1.1
 - RMsg-Lite v3.2.0

[2.10.0]

- Multicore SDK component versions:
 - embedded Remote Procedure Call (eRPC) v1.8.1
 - eRPC generator (erpcgen) v1.8.1
 - Multicore Manager (MCMgr) v4.1.1
 - RMsg-Lite v3.1.2

[2.9.0]

- Multicore SDK component versions:
 - embedded Remote Procedure Call (eRPC) v1.8.0
 - eRPC generator (erpcgen) v1.8.0
 - Multicore Manager (MCMgr) v4.1.1
 - RMsg-Lite v3.1.1

[2.8.0]

- Multicore SDK component versions:
 - embedded Remote Procedure Call (eRPC) v1.7.4
 - eRPC generator (erpcgen) v1.7.4
 - Multicore Manager (MCMgr) v4.1.0
 - RMsg-Lite v3.1.0

[2.7.0]

- Multicore SDK component versions:
 - embedded Remote Procedure Call (eRPC) v1.7.3
 - eRPC generator (erpcgen) v1.7.3
 - Multicore Manager (MCMgr) v4.1.0
 - RMsg-Lite v3.0.0

[2.6.0]

- Multicore SDK component versions:
 - embedded Remote Procedure Call (eRPC) v1.7.2
 - eRPC generator (erpcgen) v1.7.2
 - Multicore Manager (MCMgr) v4.0.3
 - RMsg-Lite v2.2.0

[2.5.0]

- Multicore SDK component versions:
 - embedded Remote Procedure Call (eRPC) v1.7.1
 - eRPC generator (erpcgen) v1.7.1
 - Multicore Manager (MCMgr) v4.0.2
 - RMsg-Lite v2.0.2

[2.4.0]

- Multicore SDK component versions:
 - embedded Remote Procedure Call (eRPC) v1.7.0
 - eRPC generator (erpcgen) v1.7.0
 - Multicore Manager (MCMgr) v4.0.1
 - RMsg-Lite v2.0.1

[2.3.1]

- Multicore SDK component versions:
 - embedded Remote Procedure Call (eRPC) v1.6.0
 - eRPC generator (erpcgen) v1.6.0
 - Multicore Manager (MCMgr) v4.0.0
 - RMsg-Lite v1.2.0

[2.3.0]

- Multicore SDK component versions:
 - embedded Remote Procedure Call (eRPC) v1.5.0
 - eRPC generator (erpcgen) v1.5.0
 - Multicore Manager (MCMgr) v3.0.0
 - RPSMsg-Lite v1.2.0

[2.2.0]

- Multicore SDK component versions:
 - embedded Remote Procedure Call (eRPC) v1.4.0
 - eRPC generator (erpcgen) v1.4.0
 - Multicore Manager (MCMgr) v2.0.1
 - RPSMsg-Lite v1.1.0

[2.1.0]

- Multicore SDK component versions:
 - embedded Remote Procedure Call (eRPC) v1.3.0
 - eRPC generator (erpcgen) v1.3.0

[2.0.0]

- Multicore SDK component versions:
 - embedded Remote Procedure Call (eRPC) v1.2.0
 - eRPC generator (erpcgen) v1.2.0
 - Multicore Manager (MCMgr) v2.0.0
 - RPSMsg-Lite v1.0.0

[1.1.0]

- Multicore SDK component versions:
 - embedded Remote Procedure Call (eRPC) v1.1.0
 - Multicore Manager (MCMgr) v1.1.0
 - Open-AMP / RPSMsg based on SHA1 ID 44b5f3c0a6458f3cf80 rev01

[1.0.0]

- Multicore SDK component versions:
 - embedded Remote Procedure Call (eRPC) v1.0.0
 - Multicore Manager (MCMgr) v1.0.0
 - Open-AMP / RPSMsg based on SHA1 ID 44b5f3c0a6458f3cf80 rev00

Multicore SDK Components

RPMSG-Lite

MCUXpresso SDK : mcuxsdk-middleware-rpmsg-lite

Overview This repository is for MCUXpresso SDK RPMSG-Lite middleware delivery and it contains RPMSG-Lite component officially provided in NXP MCUXpresso SDK. This repository is part of the MCUXpresso SDK overall delivery which is composed of several sub-repositories/projects. Navigate to the top/parent repository [mcuxsdk](#) for the complete delivery of MCUXpresso SDK to be able to build and run RPMSG-Lite examples that are based on mcux-sdk-middleware-rpmsg-lite component.

Documentation Overall details can be reviewed here: [MCUXpresso SDK Online Documentation](#)

Visit [RPMSG-Lite - Documentation](#) to review details on the contents in this sub-repo.

For Further API documentation, please look at [doxygen documentation](#)

Setup Instructions on how to install the MCUXpresso SDK provided from GitHub via west manifest [Getting Started with SDK - Detailed Installation Instructions](#)

Contribution We welcome and encourage the community to submit patches directly to the rpmsg-lite project placed on github. Contributing can be managed via pull-requests. Before a pull-request is created the code should be tested and properly formatted.

RPMSG-Lite This documentation describes the RPMsg-Lite component, which is a lightweight implementation of the Remote Processor Messaging (RPMsg) protocol. The RPMsg protocol defines a standardized binary interface used to communicate between multiple cores in a heterogeneous multicore system.

Compared to the RPMsg implementation of the Open Asymmetric Multi Processing (OpenAMP) framework (<https://github.com/OpenAMP/open-amp>), the RPMsg-Lite offers a code size reduction, API simplification, and improved modularity. On smaller Cortex-M0+ based systems, it is recommended to use RPMsg-Lite.

The RPMsg-Lite is an open-source component developed by NXP Semiconductors and released under the BSD-compatible license.

For overview please read [RPMSG-Lite VirtIO Overview](#).

For RPMSG-Lite Design Considerations please read [RPMSG-Lite Design Considerations](#).

Motivation to create RPMsg-Lite There are multiple reasons why RPMsg-Lite was developed. One reason is the need for the small footprint of the RPMsg protocol-compatible communication component, another reason is the simplification of extensive API of OpenAMP RPMsg implementation.

RPMsg protocol was not documented, and its only definition was given by the Linux Kernel and legacy OpenAMP implementations. This has changed with [1] which is a standardization protocol allowing multiple different implementations to coexist and still be mutually compatible.

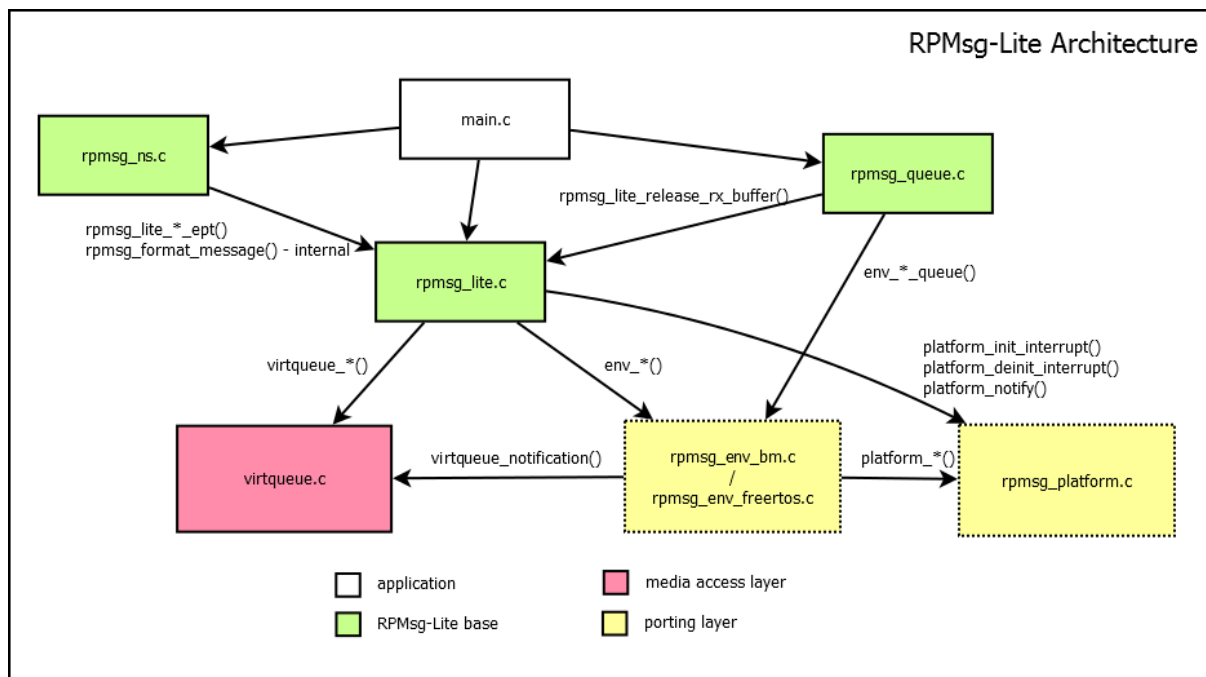
Small MCU-based systems often do not implement dynamic memory allocation. The creation of static API in RPMsg-Lite enables another reduction of resource usage. Not only does the dynamic allocation adds another 5 KB of code size, but also communication is slower and less deterministic, which is a property introduced by dynamic memory. The following table shows some rough comparison data between the OpenAMP RPMsg implementation and new RPMsg-Lite implementation:

Component / Configuration	Flash [B]	RAM [B]
OpenAMP RPMsg / Release (reference)	5547	456 + dynamic
RPMsg-Lite / Dynamic API, Release	3462	56 + dynamic
Relative Difference [%]	~62.4%	~12.3%
RPMsg-Lite / Static API (no malloc), Release	2926	352
Relative Difference [%]	~52.7%	~77.2%

Implementation The implementation of RPMsg-Lite can be divided into three sub-components, from which two are optional. The core component is situated in `rpmsg_lite.c`. Two optional components are used to implement a blocking receive API (in `rpmsg_queue.c`) and dynamic “named” endpoint creation and deletion announcement service (in `rpmsg_ns.c`).

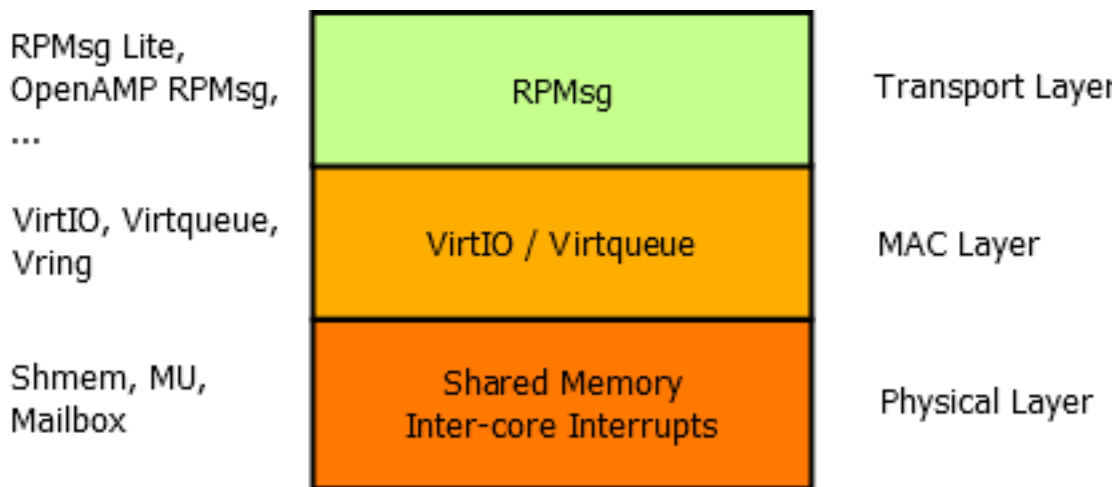
The actual “media access” layer is implemented in `virtqueue.c`, which is one of the few files shared with the OpenAMP implementation. This layer mainly defines the shared memory model, and internally defines used components such as `vring` or `virtqueue`.

The porting layer is split into two sub-layers: the environment layer and the platform layer. The first sublayer is to be implemented separately for each environment. (The bare metal environment already exists and is implemented in `rpmsg_env_bm.c`, and the FreeRTOS environment is implemented in `rpmsg_env_freertos.c` etc.) Only the source file, which matches the used environment, is included in the target application project. The second sublayer is implemented in `rpmsg_platform.c` and defines low-level functions for interrupt enabling, disabling, and triggering mainly. The situation is described in the following figure:



RPMsg-Lite core sub-component This subcomponent implements a blocking send API and callback-based receive API. The RPMsg protocol is part of the transport layer. This is realized by using so-called endpoints. Each endpoint can be assigned a different receive callback function.

However, it is important to notice that the callback is executed in an interrupt environment in current design. Therefore, certain actions like memory allocation are discouraged to execute in the callback. The following figure shows the role of RPMsg in an ISO/OSI-like layered model:



Queue sub-component (optional) This subcomponent is optional and requires implementation of the `env_*_queue()` functions in the environment porting layer. It uses a blocking receive API, which is common in RTOS-environments. It supports both copy and nocopy blocking receive functions.

Name Service sub-component (optional) This subcomponent is a minimum implementation of the name service which is present in the Linux Kernel implementation of RPMsg. It allows the communicating node both to send announcements about “named” endpoint (in other words, channel) creation or deletion and to receive these announcement taking any user-defined action in an application callback. The endpoint address used to receive name service announcements is arbitrarily fixed to be 53 (0x35).

Usage The application should put the `/rpmmsg_lite/lib/include` directory to the include path and in the application, include either the `rpmmsg_lite.h` header file, or optionally also include the `rpmmsg_queue.h` and/or `rpmmsg_ns.h` files. Both porting sublayers should be provided for you by NXP, but if you plan to use your own RTOS, all you need to do is to implement your own environment layer (in other words, `rpmmsg_env_myrtos.c`) and to include it in the project build.

The initialization of the stack is done by calling the `rpmmsg_lite_master_init()` on the master side and the `rpmmsg_lite_remote_init()` on the remote side. This initialization function must be called prior to any RPMsg-Lite API call. After the init, it is wise to create a communication endpoint, otherwise communication is not possible. This can be done by calling the `rpmmsg_lite_create_ept()` function. It optionally accepts a last argument, where an internal context of the endpoint is created, just in case the `RL_USE_STATIC_API` option is set to 1. If not, the stack internally calls `env_alloc()` to allocate dynamic memory for it. In case a callback-based receiving is to be used, an ISR-callback is registered to each new endpoint with user-defined callback data pointer. If a blocking receive is desired (in case of RTOS environment), the `rpmmsg_queue_create()` function must be called before calling `rpmmsg_lite_create_ept()`. The queue handle is passed to the endpoint creation function as a callback data argument and the callback function is set to `rpmmsg_queue_rx_cb()`. Then, it is possible to use `rpmmsg_queue_receive()` function to listen on a queue object for incoming messages. The `rpmmsg_lite_send()` function is used to send messages to the other side.

The RPMsg-Lite also implements no-copy mechanisms for both sending and receiving operations. These methods require specifics that have to be considered when used in an application.

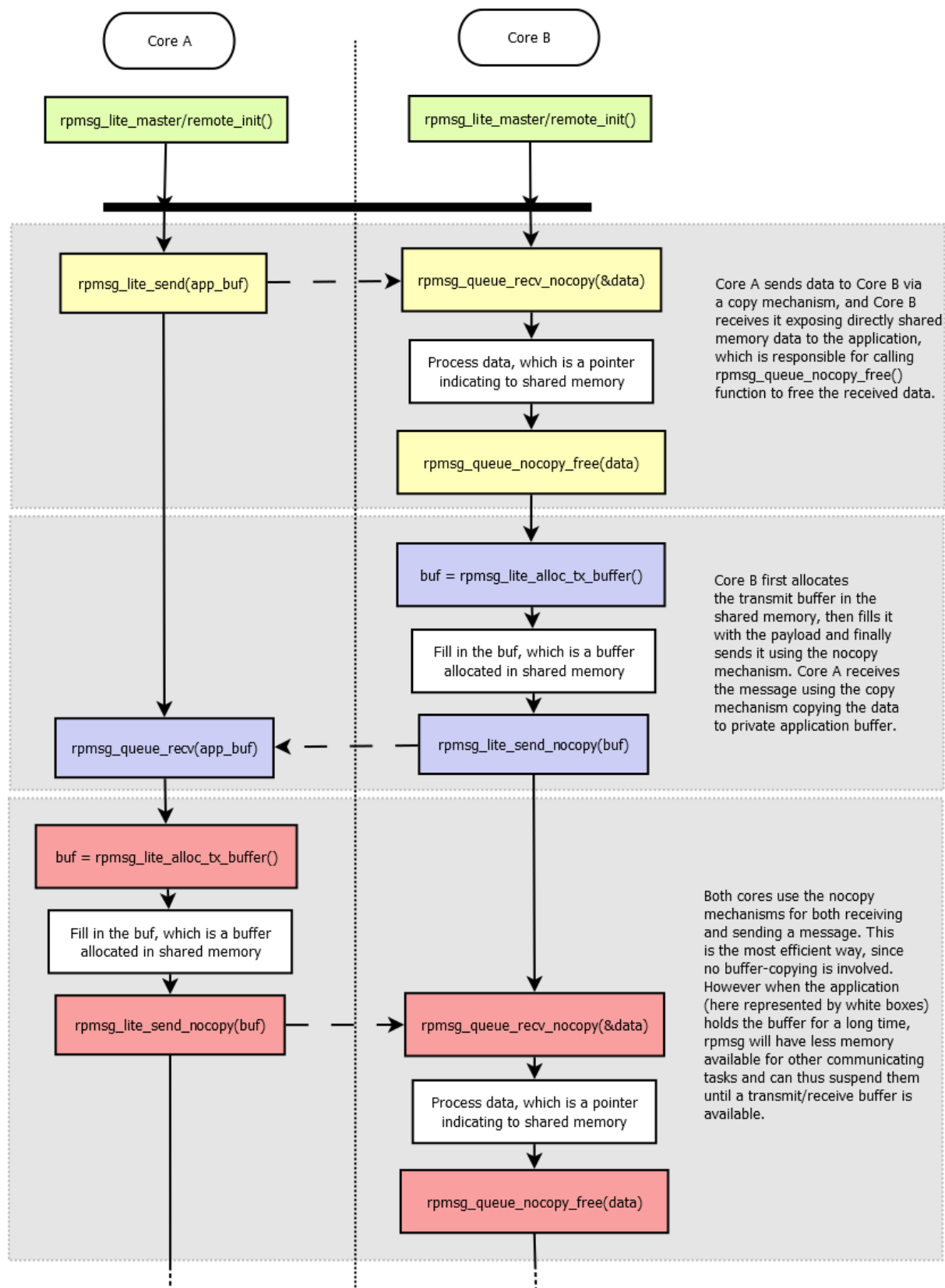
no-copy-send mechanism: This mechanism allows sending messages without the cost for copying data from the application buffer to the RMsg/virtio buffer in the shared memory. The sequence of no-copy sending steps to be performed is as follows:

- Call the `rpmsg_lite_alloc_tx_buffer()` function to get the virtio buffer and provide the buffer pointer to the application.
- Fill the data to be sent into the pre-allocated virtio buffer. Ensure that the filled data does not exceed the buffer size (provided as the `rpmsg_lite_alloc_tx_buffer()` size output parameter).
- Call the `rpmsg_lite_send_nocopy()` function to send the message to the destination endpoint. Consider the cache functionality and the virtio buffer alignment. See the `rpmsg_lite_send_nocopy()` function description below.

no-copy-recv mechanism: This mechanism allows reading messages without the cost for copying data from the virtio buffer in the shared memory to the application buffer. The sequence of no-copy receiving steps to be performed is as follows:

- Call the `rpmsg_queue_rcv_nocopy()` function to get the virtio buffer pointer to the received data.
- Read received data directly from the shared memory.
- Call the `rpmsg_queue_nocopy_free()` function to release the virtio buffer and to make it available for the next data transfer.

The user is responsible for destroying any RMsg-Lite objects he has created in case of deinitialization. In order to do this, the function `rpmsg_queue_destroy()` is used to destroy a queue, `rpmsg_lite_destroy_ep()` is used to destroy an endpoint and finally, `rpmsg_lite_deinit()` is used to deinitialize the RMsg-Lite intercore communication stack. Deinitialize all endpoints using a queue before deinitializing the queue. Otherwise, you are actively invalidating the used queue handle, which is not allowed. RMsg-Lite does not check this internally, since its main aim is to be lightweight.



Examples RPMsg_Lite multicore examples are part of NXP MCUXpressoSDK packages. Visit <https://mcuxpresso.nxp.com> to configure, build and download these packages. To get the board list with multicore support (RPMsg_Lite included) use filtering based on Middleware and search for 'multicore' string. Once the selected package with the multicore middleware is downloaded,

see

<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/boards/<board_name>/multicore_examples for RPMsg_Lite multicore examples with 'rpmsg_lite_' name prefix.

Another way of getting NXP MCUXpressoSDK RPMsg_Lite multicore examples is using the [mcuxsdk-manifests](#) Github repo. Follow the description how to use the West tool to clone and update the mcuxsdk-manifests repo in [readme section](#). Once done the armgcc rpmsg_lite examples can be found in

mcuxsdk/examples/_<board_name>/multicore_examples

You can use the evkmimxrt1170 as the board_name for instance. Similar to MCUXpressoSDK packages the RPMsg_Lite examples use the 'rpmsg_lite_' name prefix.

Notes

Environment layers implementation Several environment layers are provided in lib/rpmsg_lite/porting/environment folder. Not all of them are fully tested however. Here is the list of environment layers that passed testing:

- rpmsg_env_bm.c
- rpmsg_env_freertos.c
- rpmsg_env_xos.c
- rpmsg_env_threadx.c

The rest of environment layers has been created and used in some experimental projects, it has been running well at the time of creation but due to the lack of unit testing there is no guarantee it is still fully functional.

Shared memory configuration It is important to correctly initialize/configure the shared memory for data exchange in the application. The shared memory must be accessible from both the master and the remote core and it needs to be configured as Non-Cacheable memory. Dedicated shared memory section in linker file is also a good practise, it is recommended to use linker files from MCUXpressoSDK packages for NXP devices based applications. It needs to be ensured no other application part/component is unintentionally accessing this part of memory.

Configuration options The RPMsg-Lite can be configured at the compile time. The default configuration is defined in the rpmsg_default_config.h header file. This configuration can be customized by the user by including rpmsg_config.h file with custom settings. The following table summarizes all possible RPMsg-Lite configuration options.

Config- uration option	De- fault value	Usage
RL_MS_PE (1)		Delay in milliseconds used in non-blocking API functions for polling.
RL_BUFFE (496)		Size of the buffer payload, it must be more than 1 byte, and has to be word align (including rpmsg header size 16 bytes), if not it will be aligned up
RL_BUFFE (2)		Number of the buffers, it must be power of two (2, 4, ...)
RL_API_H (1)		Zero-copy API functions enabled/disabled.
RL_USE_S' (0)		Static API functions (no dynamic allocation) enabled/disabled.
RL_USE_D (0)		Memory cache management of shared memory. Use in case of data cache is enabled for shared memory.
RL_CLEAF (0)		Clearing used buffers before returning back to the pool of free buffers enabled/disabled.
RL_USE_M (0)		When enabled IPC interrupts are managed by the Multicore Manager (IPC interrupts router), when disabled RPSG-Lite manages IPC interrupts by itself.
RL_USE_E (0)		When enabled the environment layer uses its own context. Required for some environments (QNX). The default value is 0 (no context, saves some RAM).
RL_DEBU (0)		When enabled buffer pointers passed to <code>rpmsg_lite_send_nocopy()</code> and <code>rpmsg_lite_release_rx_buffer()</code> functions (enabled by <code>RL_API_HAS_ZEROCOPY</code> config) are checked to avoid passing invalid buffer pointer. The default value is 0 (disabled). Do not use in RPSG-Lite to Linux configuration.
RL_ALLO (0)		When enabled the opposite side is notified each time received buffers are consumed and put into the queue of available buffers. Enable this option in RPSG-Lite to Linux configuration to allow unblocking of the Linux blocking send. The default value is 0 (RPSG-Lite to RPSG-Lite communication).
RL_ALLO (0)		It allows to define custom shared memory configuration and replacing the shared memory related global settings from <code>rpmsg_config.h</code> . This is useful when multiple instances are running in parallel but different shared memory arrangement (vring size & alignment, buffers size & count) is required. The default value is 0 (all RPSG-Lite instances use the same shared memory arrangement as defined by common config macros).
RL_ASSER	see rpmsg	Assert implementation.

How to format rpmsg-lite code To format code, use the application developed by Google, named *clang-format*. This tool is part of the *llvm* project. Currently, the clang-format 10.0.0 version is used for rpmsg-lite. The set of style settings used for clang-format is defined in the `.clang-format` file, placed in a root of the rpmsg-lite directory where Python script `run_clang_format.py` can be executed. This script executes the application named *clang-format.exe*. You need to have the path of this application in the OS's environment path, or you need to change the script.

References

[1] M. Novak, M. Cingel, **Lockless Shared Memory Based Multicore Communication Protocol** Copyright © 2016 Freescale Semiconductor, Inc. Copyright © 2016-2025 NXP

Changelog RPSG-Lite All notable changes to this project will be documented in this file. The format is based on [Keep a Changelog](#), and this project adheres to [Semantic Versioning](#).

Unreleased

Added

- Added i.MX93W parts support
- Added i.MX952 parts support
- Added mcxl14x parts support

Changed

- Port `platform_get_custom_shmem_config` change return value from `uint32_t` to `int32_t` for error handling consistency.

Fixed

- Updated unit tests code to allow correct GCOV code coverage measurement.
- Added missing `dsb` instructions into all ISRs for cm4/cm7 based platform layers.
- Fixed CERT EXP34-C by adding `__attribute__((noreturn))` to `RL_HANG(void)` function.
- **MISRA C-2012 Rule 14.3 compliance:** Simplified `RL_WORD_ALIGN_UP` and `RL_WORD_ALIGN_DOWN` macros to eliminate invariant controlling expression violations (CID 5011148)
 - Replaced ternary operator implementations with standard bitwise alignment idioms
 - Fixed hardcoded 4U constant in `RL_WORD_ALIGN_UP` to use `RL_WORD_SIZE` for better portability
- Fixed several MISRA compliance violations

v5.3.0

Added

- RT700 porting layer added support to send `rpmsg` messages between CM33_0 <-> Hifi1 and CM33_1 <-> Hifi4 cores.
- Add new platform macro `RL_PLATFORM_MAX_ISR_COUNT` this will set number of IRQ count per platform. This macro is then used in environment layers to set `isr_table` size where irq handles are registered. It size should match the bit length of `VQ_ID` so all combinations can fit into table.
- Unit tests updated to improve code coverage, new unit tests added covering static allocations in `rtos` environment layers.

Fixed

- `virtio.h` removed `typedef uint8_t boolean` and in its place use standard C99 `bool` type to avoid potential type conflicts.
- `env_acquire_sync_lock()` and `env_release_sync_lock()` synchronization primitives removed
- Kconfig consolidation, when `RL_ALLOW_CUSTOM_SHMEM_CONFIG` enabled the `platform_get_custom_shmem_config()` function needs to be implemented in platform layer to provide custom shared memory configuration for `RPMsg-Lite` instance.

v5.2.1

Added

- Doc added RPMSG-Lite VirtIO Overview
- Doc added RPMSG-Lite Design Considerations
- Added frdmimxrt1186 unit testing

Changed

- Remove limitation that `RL_BUFFER_SIZE` needs to be power of 2. It just has to be more than 16 bytes, e.g. 16 bytes of rpmsg header and payload size at least 1 byte and word aligned, if not it will be aligned up.

Fixed

- Fixed CERT-C INT31-C violation in `platform_notify` function in `rpmsg_platform.c` for `imxrt700_m33`, `imxrt700_hifi4`, `imxrt700_hifi1` platforms

v5.2.0

Added

- Add MCXL20 porting layer and unit testing
- New utility macro `RL_CALCULATE_BUFFER_COUNT_DOWN_SAFE` to safely determine maximum buffer count within shared memory while preventing integer underflow.
- RT700 platform add support for MCMGR in DSPs

Changed

- Change `rpmsg_platform.c` to support new MCMGR API
- Improved input validation in initialization functions to properly handle insufficient memory size conditions.
- Refactored repeated buffer count calculation pattern for better code maintainability.
- To make sure that remote has already registered IRQ there is required App level IPC mechanism to notify master about it

Fixed

- Fixed `env_wait_for_link_up` function to handle timeout in link state checks for baremetal and qnx environment, `RL_BLOCK` mode can be used to wait indefinitely.
- Fixed CERT-C INT31-C violation by adding compile-time check to ensure `RL_PLATFORM_HIGHEST_LINK_ID` remains within safe range for 16-bit casting in virtqueue ID creation.
- Fixed CERT-C INT30-C violations by adding protection against unsigned integer underflow in shared memory calculations, specifically in `shmem_length - (uint32_t)RL_VRING_OVERHEAD` and `shmem_length - 2U * shmem_config.vring_size` expressions.
- Fixed CERT INT31-C violation in `platform_interrupt_disable()` and similar functions by replacing unsafe cast from `uint32_t` to `int32_t` with a return of 0 constant.

- Fixed unsigned integer underflow in `rpmsg_lite_alloc_tx_buffer()` where subtracting header size from buffer size could wrap around if buffer was too small, potentially leading to incorrect buffer sizing.
- Fixed CERT-C INT31-C violation in `rpmsg_lite.c` where `size` parameter was cast from `uint32_t` to `uint16_t` without proper validation.
 - Applied consistent masking approach to both `size` and `flags` parameters: `(uint16_t)(value & 0xFFFFU)`.
 - This fix prevents potential data loss when `size` values exceed 65535.
- Fixed CERT INT31-C violation in `env_memset` functions by explicitly converting `int32_t` values to unsigned char using bit masking. This prevents potential data loss or misinterpretation when passing values outside the unsigned char range (0-255) to the standard `memset()` function.
- Fixed CERT-C INT31-C violations in RPMsg-Lite environment porting: Added validation checks for signed-to-unsigned integer conversions to prevent data loss and misinterpretation.
 - `rpmsg_env_freertos.c`: Added validation before converting `int32_t` to `UBaseType_t`.
 - `rpmsg_env_qnx.c`: Fixed format string and added validation before assigning to `mqstat` fields.
 - `rpmsg_env_threadx.c`: Added validation to prevent integer overflow and negative values.
 - `rpmsg_env_xos.c`: Added range checking before casting to `uint16_t`.
 - `rpmsg_env_zephyr.c`: Added validation before passing values to `k_msgq_init`.
- Fixed a CERT INT31-C compliance issue in `env_get_current_queue_size()` function where an unsigned queue count was cast to a signed `int32_t` without proper validation, which could lead to lost or misinterpreted data if queue size exceeded `INT32_MAX`.
- Fixed CERT INT31-C violation in `rpmsg_platform.c` where `memcmp()` return value (signed int) was compared with unsigned constant without proper type handling.
- Fixed CERT INT31-C violation in `rpmsg_platform.c` where casting from `uint32_t` to `uint16_t` could potentially result in data loss. Changed length variable type from `uint16_t` to `uint32_t` to properly handle memory address differences without truncation.
- Fixed potential integer overflow in `env_sleep_msec()` function in ThreadX environment implementation by rearranging calculation order in the sleep duration formula.
- Fixed CERT-C INT31-C violation in RPMsg-Lite where bitwise NOT operations on integer constants were performed in signed integer context before being cast to unsigned. This could potentially lead to misinterpreted data on `imx943` platform.
- Added `RL_MAX_BUFFER_COUNT` (32768U) and `RL_MAX_VRING_ALIGN` (65536U) limit to ensure alignment values cannot contribute to integer overflow
- Fixed CERT INT31-C violation in `vring_need_event()`, added cast to `uint16_t` for each operand.

v5.1.4 - 27-Mar-2025

Added

- Add KW43B43 porting layer

Changed

- Doxygen bump to version 1.9.6

v5.1.3 - 13-Jan-2025

Added

- Memory cache management of shared memory. Enable with `#define RL_USE_DCACHE (1)` in `rpmsg_config.h` in case of data cache is used.
- Cmake/Kconfig support added.
- Porting layers for `imx95`, `imxrt700`, `mcmxw71x`, `mcmxw72x`, `kw47b42` added.

v5.1.2 - 08-Jul-2024

Changed

- Zephyr-related changes.
- Minor Misra corrections.

v5.1.1 - 19-Jan-2024

Added

- Test suite provided.
- Zephyr support added.

Changed

- Minor changes in platform and env. layers, minor test code updates.

v5.1.0 - 02-Aug-2023

Added

- RPMsg-Lite: Added aarch64 support.

Changed

- RPMsg-Lite: Increased the queue size to $(2 * RL_BUFFER_COUNT)$ to cover zero copy cases.
- Code formatting using LLVM16.

Fixed

- Resolved issues in ThreadX env. layer implementation.

v5.0.0 - 19-Jan-2023

Added

- Timeout parameter added to `rpmsg_lite_wait_for_link_up` API function.

Changed

- Improved debug check buffers implementation - instead of checking the pointer fits into shared memory check the presence in the VirtIO ring descriptors list.
- `VRING_SIZE` is set based on number of used buffers now (as calculated in `vring_init`) - updated for all platforms that are not communicating to Linux `rpmsg` counterpart.

Fixed

- Fixed wrong `RL_VRING_OVERHEAD` macro comment in `platform.h` files
- Misra corrections.

v4.0.0 - 20-Jun-2022

Added

- Added support for custom shared memory arrangement per the `RPMsg_Lite` instance.
- Introduced new `rpmsg_lite_wait_for_link_up()` API function - this allows to avoid using busy loops in rtos environments, GitHub PR #21.

Changed

- Adjusted `rpmsg_lite_is_link_up()` to return `RL_TRUE/RL_FALSE`.

v3.2.0 - 17-Jan-2022

Added

- Added support for i.MX8 MP multicore platform.

Changed

- Improved static allocations - allow OS-specific objects being allocated statically, GitHub PR #14.
- Aligned `rpmsg_env_xos.c` and some platform layers to latest static allocation support.

Fixed

- Minor Misra and typo corrections, GitHub PR #19, #20.

v3.1.2 - 16-Jul-2021

Added

- Addressed MISRA 21.6 rule violation in `rpmsg_env.h` (use SDK's `PRINTF` in MCUXpressoSDK examples, otherwise `stdio printf` is used).
- Added environment layers for XOS.
- Added support for i.MX RT500, i.MX RT1160 and i.MX RT1170 multicore platforms.

Fixed

- Fixed incorrect description of the `rpmsg_lite_get_endpoint_from_addr` function.

Changed

- Updated `RL_BUFFER_COUNT` documentation (issue #10).
- Updated `imxrt600_hifi4` platform layer.

v3.1.1 - 15-Jan-2021

Added

- Introduced `RL_ALLOW_CONSUMED_BUFFERS_NOTIFICATION` config option to allow opposite side notification sending each time received buffers are consumed and put into the queue of available buffers.
- Added environment layers for Threadx.
- Added support for i.MX8QM multicore platform.

Changed

- Several MISRA C-2012 violations addressed.

v3.1.0 - 22-Jul-2020

Added

- Added support for several new multicore platforms.

Fixed

- MISRA C-2012 violations fixed (7.4).
- Fixed missing lock in `rpmsg_lite_rx_callback()` for QNX env.
- Correction of `rpmsg_lite_instance` structure members description.
- Address -Waddress-of-packed-member warnings in GCC9.

Changed

- Clang update to v10.0.0, code re-formatted.

v3.0.0 - 20-Dec-2019

Added

- Added support for several new multicore platforms.

Fixed

- MISRA C-2012 violations fixed, incl. data types consolidation.
- Code formatted.

v2.2.0 - 20-Mar-2019

Added

- Added configuration macro `RL_DEBUG_CHECK_BUFFERS`.
- Several MISRA violations fixed.
- Added environment layers for QNX and Zephyr.
- Allow environment context required for some environment (controlled by the `RL_USE_ENVIRONMENT_CONTEXT` configuration macro).
- Data types consolidation.

v1.1.0 - 28-Apr-2017

Added

- Supporting i.MX6SX and i.MX7D MPU platforms.
- Supporting LPC5411x MCU platform.
- Baremetal and FreeRTOS support.
- Support of copy and zero-copy transfer.
- Support of static API (without dynamic allocations).

Multicore Manager

MCUXpresso SDK : `mcuxsdk-middleware-mcmgr` (Multicore Manager)

Overview This repository is for MCUXpresso SDK Multicore Manager middleware delivery and it contains Multicore Manager component officially provided in NXP MCUXpresso SDK. This repository is part of the MCUXpresso SDK overall delivery which is composed of several sub-repositories/projects. Navigate to the top/parent repository [mcuxsdk](#) for the complete delivery of MCUXpresso SDK to be able to build and run Multicore Manager examples that are based on `mcux-sdk-middleware-mcmgr` component.

Documentation Overall details can be reviewed here: [MCUXpresso SDK Online Documentation](#)

Visit [Multicore Manager - Documentation](#) to review details on the contents in this sub-repo.

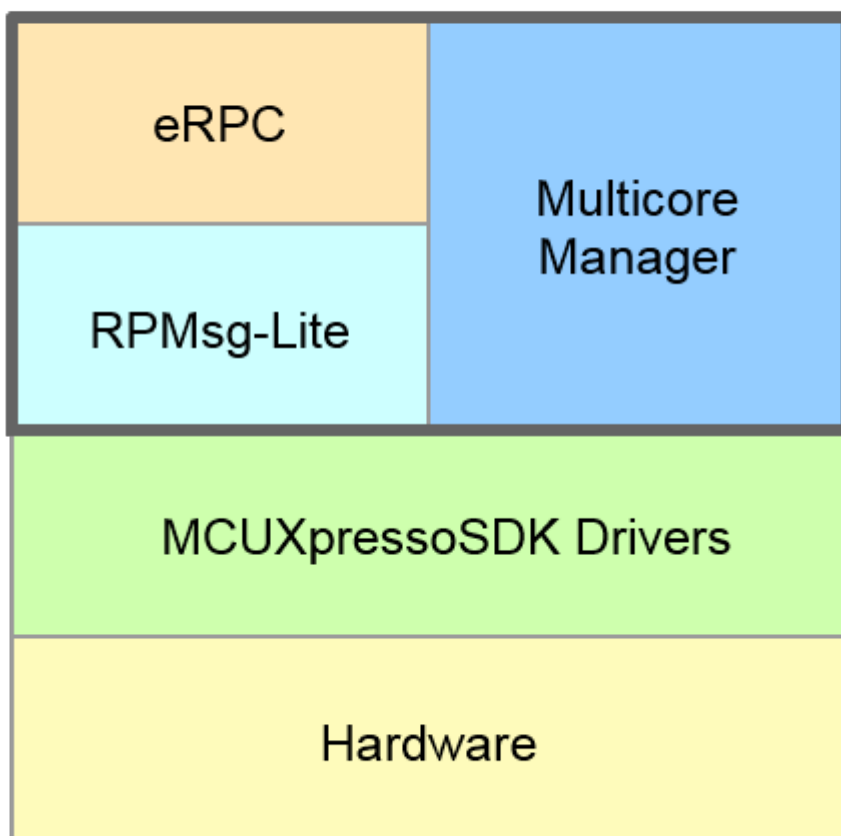
For Further API documentation, please look at [doxygen documentation](#)

Setup Instructions on how to install the MCUXpresso SDK provided from GitHub via west manifest [Getting Started with SDK - Detailed Installation Instructions](#)

Contribution We welcome and encourage the community to submit patches directly to the mcmgr project placed on github. Contributing can be managed via pull-requests. Before a pull-request is created the code should be tested and properly formatted.

Multicore Manager (MCMGR) The Multicore Manager (MCMGR) software library provides a number of services for multicore systems. This library is distributed as a part of the Multicore SDK (MCSDK). Together, the MCSDK and the MCUXpresso SDK (SDK) form a framework for development of software for NXP multicore devices.

The MCMGR component is located in the <MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/middleware/multicore/mcmgr directory.



The Multicore Manager provides the following major functions:

- Maintains information about all cores in system.
- Secondary/auxiliary core(s) startup and shutdown.
- Remote core monitoring and event handling.

Usage of the MCMGR software component The main use case of MCMGR is the secondary/auxiliary core start. This functionality is performed by the public API function.

Example of MCMGR usage to start secondary core:

```
#include "mcmgr.h"

void main()
{
    /* Initialize MCMGR - low level multicore management library.
       Call this function as close to the reset entry as possible,
       (into the startup sequence) to allow CoreUp event triggering. */
    MCMGR_EarlyInit();

    /* Initialize MCMGR, install generic event handlers */
    MCMGR_Init();

    /* Boot secondary core application from the CORE1_BOOT_ADDRESS, pass "1" as startup data,
    ↪starting synchronously. */
    MCMGR_StartCore(kMCMGR_Core1, CORE1_BOOT_ADDRESS, 1, kMCMGR_Start_Synchronous);
    .
    .
    .
    /* Stop secondary core execution. */
    MCMGR_StopCore(kMCMGR_Core1);
}
```

Some platforms allow stopping and re-starting the secondary core application again, using the MCMGR_StopCore / MCMGR_StartCore API calls. It is necessary to ensure the initially loaded image is not corrupted before re-starting, especially if it deals with the RAM target. Cache coherence has to be considered/ensured as well.

It could also happen that the secondary core application stops running correctly and the primary core application does not know about that situation. Therefore, it is beneficial to implement a mechanism for core health monitoring. The *test_heartbeat* unit test can serve as an example how to ensure that: secondary core could periodically send heartbeat signals to the primary core using MCMGR_TriggerEvent() API to indicate that it is alive and functioning properly.

Another important MCMGR feature is the ability for remote core monitoring and handling of events such as reset, exception, and application events. Application-specific callback functions for events are registered by the MCMGR_RegisterEvent() API. Triggering these events is done using the MCMGR_TriggerEvent() API. mcmgr_event_type_t enums all possible event types.

An example of MCMGR usage for remote core monitoring and event handling. Code for the primary side:

```
#include "mcmgr.h"

#define APP_RPMSG_READY_EVENT_DATA (1)
#define APP_NUMBER_OF_CORES (2)
#define APP_SECONDARY_CORE kMCMGR_Core1

/* Callback function registered via the MCMGR_RegisterEvent() and triggered by MCMGR_TriggerEvent()
↪called on the secondary core side */
void RPMsgRemoteReadyEventHandler(mcmgr_core_t coreNum, uint16_t eventData, void *context)
{
    uint16_t *data = &((uint16_t *)context)[coreNum];

    *data = eventData;
}

void main()
{
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```

uint16_t RPMsgRemoteReadyEventData[NUMBER_OF_CORES] = {0};

/* Initialize MCMGR - low level multicore management library.
   Call this function as close to the reset entry as possible,
   (into the startup sequence) to allow CoreUp event triggering. */
MCMGR_EarlyInit();

/* Initialize MCMGR, install generic event handlers */
MCMGR_Init();

/* Register the application event before starting the secondary core */
MCMGR_RegisterEvent(kMCMGR_RemoteApplicationEvent, RPMsgRemoteReadyEventHandler, (void_)
↳ RPMsgRemoteReadyEventData);

/* Boot secondary core application from the CORE1_BOOT_ADDRESS, pass rpmsg_lite_base address_
↳ as startup data, starting synchronously. */
MCMGR_StartCore(APP_SECONDARY_CORE, CORE1_BOOT_ADDRESS, (uint32_t)rpmsg_lite_
↳ base, kMCMGR_Start_Synchronous);

/* Wait until the secondary core application signals the rpmsg remote has been initialized and is ready to_
↳ communicate. */
while(APP_RPMSG_READY_EVENT_DATA != RPMsgRemoteReadyEventData[APP_SECONDARY_
↳ CORE]) {};
.
.
.
}

```

Code for the secondary side:

```

#include "mcmgr.h"

#define APP_RPMSG_READY_EVENT_DATA (1)

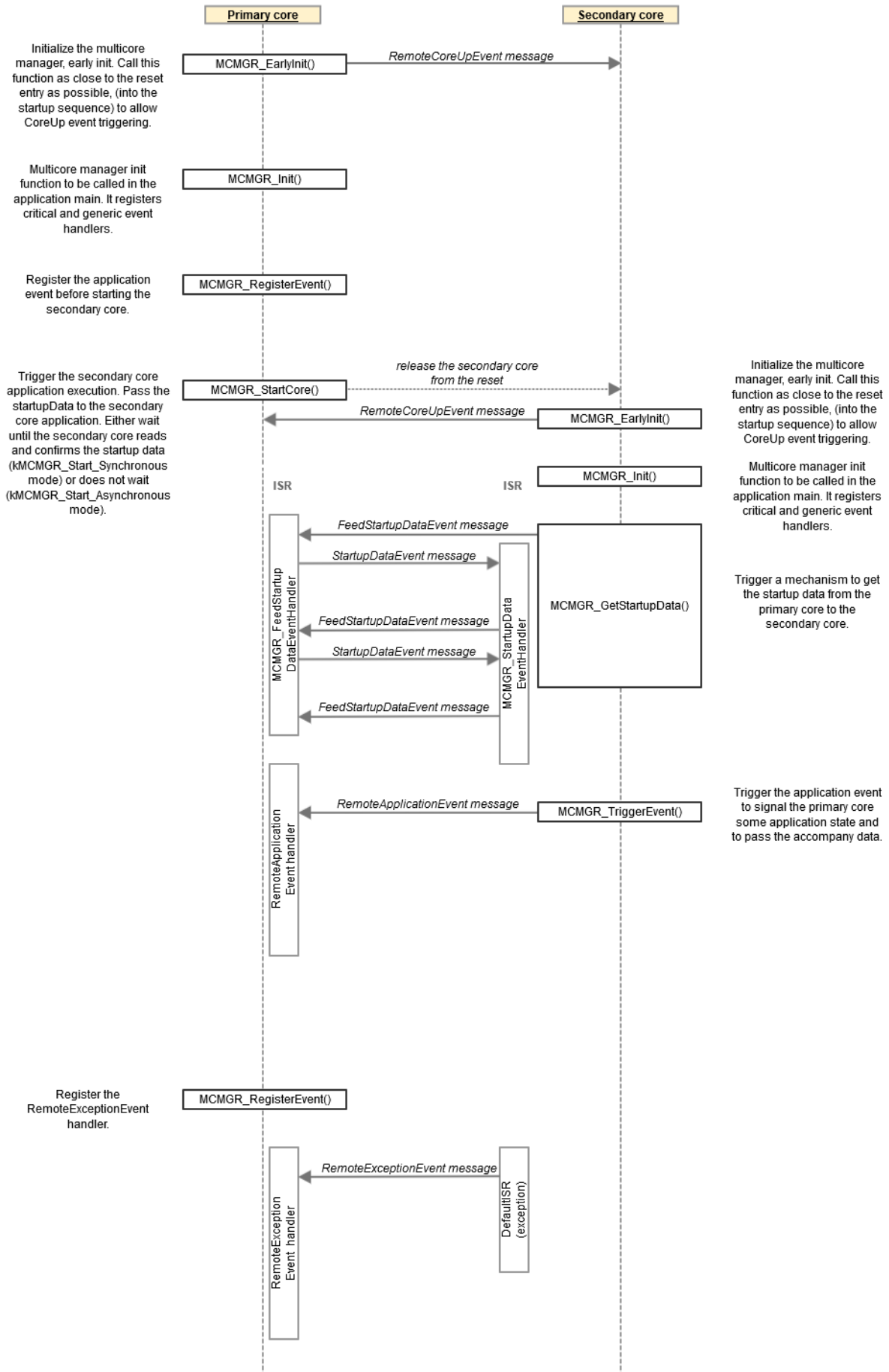
void main()
{
    /* Initialize MCMGR - low level multicore management library.
       Call this function as close to the reset entry as possible,
       (into the startup sequence) to allow CoreUp event triggering. */
    MCMGR_EarlyInit();

    /* Initialize MCMGR, install generic event handlers */
    MCMGR_Init();
    .
    .
    .

    /* Signal the to other core that we are ready by triggering the event and passing the APP_RPMSG_
↳ READY_EVENT_DATA */
    MCMGR_TriggerEvent(kMCMGR_Core0, kMCMGR_RemoteApplicationEvent, APP_RPMSG_
↳ READY_EVENT_DATA);
    .
    .
    .
}

```

MCMGR Data Exchange Diagram The following picture shows how the handshakes are supposed to work between the two cores in the MCMGR software.



Changelog Multicore Manager All notable changes to this project will be documented in this file.

The format is based on [Keep a Changelog](#), and this project adheres to [Semantic Versioning](#).

Unreleased

Added

- Added mcxl14x parts support

Fixed

- Fix MISRA C-2012 Rule 20.8 violations.

v5.0.2

Added

- Added gcov options and configs to support mcmgr code coverage
- Added new test_weak_mu_isr testcase for devices with MU peripheral
- Added new test_heartbeat testcase showing heartbeat mechanism between primary and secondary cores using the MCMGR

v5.0.1

Added

- Added frdmimxrt1186 unit testing

Changed

- [KW43] Rename core#1 reset control register

Fixed

- Added CX flag into CMakeLists.txt to allow c++ build compatibility.
- Fix path to mcmgr headers directory in doxyfile

v5.0.0

Added

- Added MCMGR_BUSY_POLL_COUNT macro to prevent infinite polling loops in MCMGR operations.
- Implemented timeout mechanism for all polling loops in MCMGR code.
- Added support to handle more than two cores. Breaking API change by adding parameter coreNum specifying core number in functions bellow.
 - MCMGR_GetStartupData(uint32_t *startupData, mcmgr_core_t coreNum)

- MCMGR_TriggerEvent(mcmgr_event_type_t type, uint16_t eventData, mcmgr_core_t coreNum)
- MCMGR_TriggerEventForce(mcmgr_event_type_t type, uint16_t eventData, mcmgr_core_t coreNum)
- typedef void (*mcmgr_event_callback_t)(uint16_t data, void *context, mcmgr_core_t coreNum);

When registering the event with function MCMGR_RegisterEvent() user now needs to provide callbackData pointer to array of elements per every core in system (see README.md for example). In case of systems with only two cores the coreNum in callback can be ignored as events can arrive only from one core. Please see Porting guide for more details: Porting-GuideTo_v5.md

- Updated all porting files to support new MCMGR API.
- Added new platform specific include file mcmgr_platform.h. It will contain common platform specific macros that can be then used in mcmgr and application. e.g. platform core count MCMGR_CORECOUNT 4.
- Move all header files to new inc directory.
- Added new platform-specific include files inc/platform/<platform_name>/mcmgr_platform.h.

Added

- Add MCXL20 porting layer and unit testing

v4.1.7

Fixed

- mcmgr_stop_core_internal() function now returns kStatus_MCMGR_NotImplemented status code instead of kStatus_MCMGR_Success when device does not support stop of secondary core. Ports affected: kw32w1, kw45b41, kw45b42, mcxw716, mcxw727.

[v4.1.6]

Added

- Multicore Manager moved to standalone repository.
- Add porting layers for imxrt700, mcmxw727, kw47b42.
- New MCMGR_ProcessDeferredRxIsr() API added.

[v4.1.5]

Added

- Add notification into MCMGR_EarlyInit and mcmgr_early_init_internal functions to avoid using uninitialized data in their implementations.

[v4.1.4]

Fixed

- Avoid calling tx isr callbacks when respective Messaging Unit Transmit Interrupt Enable flag is not set in the CR/TCR register.
- Messaging Unit RX and status registers are cleared after the initialization.

[v4.1.3]

Added

- Add porting layers for imxrt1180.

Fixed

- mu_isr() updated to avoid calling tx isr callbacks when respective Transmit Interrupt Enable flag is not set in the CR/TCR register.
- mcmgr_mu_internal.c code adaptation to new supported SoCs.

[v4.1.2]

Fixed

- Update mcmgr_stop_core_internal() implementations to set core state to kMCMGR_ResetCoreState.

[v4.1.0]

Fixed

- Code adjustments to address MISRA C-2012 Rules

[v4.0.3]

Fixed

- Documentation updated to describe handshaking in a graphic form.
- Minor code adjustments based on static analysis tool findings

[v4.0.2]

Fixed

- Align porting layers to the updated MCUXpressoSDK feature files.

[v4.0.1]

Fixed

- Code formatting, removed unused code

[v4.0.0]

Added

- Add new MCMGR_TriggerEventForce() API.

[v3.0.0]

Removed

- Removed MCMGR_LoadApp(), MCMGR_MapAddress() and MCMGR_SignalReady()

Modified

- Modified MCMGR_GetStartupData()

Added

- Added MCMGR_EarlyInit(), MCMGR_RegisterEvent() and MCMGR_TriggerEvent()
- Added the ability for remote core monitoring and event handling

[v2.0.1]

Fixed

- Updated to be Misra compliant.

[v2.0.0]

Added

- Support for lpcxpresso54114 board.

[v1.1.0]

Fixed

- Ported to KSDK 2.0.0.

[v1.0.0]

Added

- Initial release.

eRPC

MCUXpresso SDK : mcuxsdk-middleware-erpc

Overview This repository is for MCUXpresso SDK eRPC middleware delivery and it contains eRPC component officially provided in NXP MCUXpresso SDK. This repository is part of the MCUXpresso SDK overall delivery which is composed of several sub-repositories/projects. Navigate to the top/parent repository [mcuxsdk](#) for the complete delivery of MCUXpresso SDK to be able to build and run eRPC examples that are based on mcux-sdk-middleware-erpc component.

Documentation Overall details can be reviewed here: [MCUXpresso SDK Online Documentation](#)

Visit [eRPC - Documentation](#) to review details on the contents in this sub-repo.

Setup Instructions on how to install the MCUXpresso SDK provided from GitHub via west manifest [Getting Started with SDK - Detailed Installation Instructions](#)

Contribution We welcome and encourage the community to submit patches directly to the eRPC project placed on github. Contributing can be managed via pull-requests. Before a pull-request is created the code should be tested and properly formatted.

eRPC

- [MCUXpresso SDK : mcuxsdk-middleware-erpc](#)
 - [Overview](#)
 - [Documentation](#)
 - [Setup](#)
 - [Contribution](#)
- [eRPC](#)
 - [About](#)
 - [Releases](#)
 - * [Edge releases](#)
 - [Documentation](#)
 - [Examples](#)
 - [References](#)
 - [Directories](#)
 - [Building and installing](#)
 - * [Requirements](#)
 - [Windows](#)
 - [Mac OS X](#)
 - * [Building](#)
 - [CMake and KConfig](#)
 - [Make](#)

- * *Installing for Python*

- *Known issues and limitations*
- *Code providing*

About

eRPC (Embedded RPC) is an open source Remote Procedure Call (RPC) system for multichip embedded systems and heterogeneous multicore SoCs.

Unlike other modern RPC systems, such as the excellent [Apache Thrift](#), eRPC distinguishes itself by being designed for tightly coupled systems, using plain C for remote functions, and having a small code size (<5kB). It is not intended for high performance distributed systems over a network.

eRPC does not force upon you any particular API style. It allows you to export existing C functions, without having to change their prototypes. (There are limits, of course.) And although the internal infrastructure is written in C++, most users will be able to use only the simple C setup APIs shown in the examples below.

A code generator tool called `erpcgen` is included. It accepts input IDL files, having an `.erpc` extension, that have definitions of your data types and remote interfaces, and generates the shim code that handles serialization and invocation. `erpcgen` can generate either C/C++ or Python code.

Example `.erpc` file:

```
// Define a data type.
enum LEDName { kRed, kGreen, kBlue }

// An interface is a logical grouping of functions.
interface IO {
    // Simple function declaration with an empty reply.
    set_led(LEDName whichLed, bool onOrOff) -> void
}

```

Client side usage:

```
void example_client(void) {
    erpc_transport_t transport;
    erpc_mbf_t message_buffer_factory;
    erpc_client_t client_manager;

    /* Init eRPC client infrastructure */
    transport = erpc_transport_cmsis_uart_init(Driver_USART0);
    message_buffer_factory = erpc_mbf_dynamic_init();
    client_manager = erpc_client_init(transport, message_buffer_factory);

    /* init eRPC client IO service */
    initIO_client(client_manager);

    // Now we can call the remote function to turn on the green LED.
    set_led(kGreen, true);

    /* deinit objects */
    deinitIO_client();
    erpc_client_deinit(client_manager);
    erpc_mbf_dynamic_deinit(message_buffer_factory);
}

```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```

    erpc_transport_tcp_deinit(transport);
}

void example_client(void) {
    erpc_transport_t transport;
    erpc_mbf_t message_buffer_factory;
    erpc_client_t client_manager;

    /* Init eRPC client infrastructure */
    transport = erpc_transport_cmsis_uart_init(Driver_USART0);
    message_buffer_factory = erpc_mbf_dynamic_init();
    client_manager = erpc_client_init(transport, message_buffer_factory);

    /* scope for client service */
    {
        /* init eRPC client IO service */
        IO_client client(client_manager);

        // Now we can call the remote function to turn on the green LED.
        client.set_led(kGreen, true);
    }

    /* deinit objects */
    erpc_client_deinit(client_manager);
    erpc_mbf_dynamic_deinit(message_buffer_factory);
    erpc_transport_tcp_deinit(transport);
}

```

Server side usage:

```

// Implement the remote function.
void set_led(LEDName whichLed, bool onOrOff) {
    // implementation goes here
}

void example_server(void) {
    erpc_transport_t transport;
    erpc_mbf_t message_buffer_factory;
    erpc_server_t server;
    erpc_service_t service = create_IO_service();

    /* Init eRPC server infrastructure */
    transport = erpc_transport_cmsis_uart_init(Driver_USART0);
    message_buffer_factory = erpc_mbf_dynamic_init();
    server = erpc_server_init(transport, message_buffer_factory);

    /* add custom service implementation to the server */
    erpc_add_service_to_server(server, service);

    // Run the server.
    erpc_server_run();

    /* deinit objects */
    destroy_IO_service(service);
    erpc_server_deinit(server);
    erpc_mbf_dynamic_deinit(message_buffer_factory);
    erpc_transport_tcp_deinit(transport);
}

```

```

// Implement the remote function.
class IO : public IO_interface

```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```

{
  /* eRPC call definition */
  void set_led(LEDName whichLed, bool onOrOff) override {
    // implementation goes here
  }
}

void example_server(void) {
  erpc_transport_t transport;
  erpc_mbf_t message_buffer_factory;
  erpc_server_t server;
  IO IOImpl;
  IO_service io(&IOImpl);

  /* Init eRPC server infrastructure */
  transport = erpc_transport_cmsis_uart_init(Driver_USART0);
  message_buffer_factory = erpc_mbf_dynamic_init();
  server = erpc_server_init(transport, message_buffer_factory);

  /* add custom service implementation to the server */
  erpc_add_service_to_server(server, &io);

  /* poll for requests */
  erpc_status_t err = server.run();

  /* deinit objects */
  erpc_server_deinit(server);
  erpc_mbf_dynamic_deinit(message_buffer_factory);
  erpc_transport_tcp_deinit(transport);
}

```

A number of transports are supported, and new transport classes are easy to write.

Supported transports can be found in *erpc/erpc_c/transport* folder. E.g:

- CMSIS UART
- NXP Kinetis SPI and DSPI
- POSIX and Windows serial port
- TCP/IP (mostly for testing)
- NXP RPMsg-Lite / RPMsg TTY
- SPIdev Linux
- USB CDC
- NXP Messaging Unit

eRPC is available with an unrestrictive BSD 3-clause license. See the [LICENSE](#) file for the full license text.

Releases [eRPC releases](#)

Edge releases Edge releases can be found on [eRPC CircleCI](#) webpage. Choose build of interest, then platform target and choose ARTIFACTS tab. Here you can find binary application from chosen build.

Documentation Documentation is in the [wiki](#) section.

[eRPC Infrastructure documentation](#)

Examples *Example IDL* is available in the *examples/* folder.

Plenty of eRPC multicore and multiprocessor examples can be also found in NXP MCUXpressoSDK packages. Visit <https://mcuxpresso.nxp.com> to configure, build and download these packages.

To get the board list with multicore support (eRPC included) use filtering based on Middleware and search for 'multicore' string. Once the selected package with the multicore middleware is downloaded, see

<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/boards/<board_name>/multicore_examples for eRPC multicore examples (RPMsg_Lite or Messaging Unit transports used) or

<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/boards/<board_name>/multiprocessor_examples for eRPC multiprocessor examples (UART or SPI transports used).

eRPC examples use the 'erpc_' name prefix.

Another way of getting NXP MCUXpressoSDK eRPC multicore and multiprocessor examples is using the [mcux-sdk](#) Github repo. Follow the description how to use the West tool to clone and update the mcuxsdk repo in [readme Overview section](#). Once done the armgcc eRPC examples can be found in

mcuxsdk/examples/<board_name>/multicore_examples or in

mcuxsdk/examples/<board_name>/multiprocessor_examples folders.

You can use the evkmimxrt1170 as the board_name for instance. Similar to MCUXpressoSDK packages the eRPC examples use the 'erpc_' name prefix.

References This section provides links to interesting erpc-based projects, articles, blogs or guides:

- [erpc \(EmbeddedRPC\) getting started notes](#)
- [ERPC Linux Local Environment Construction and Use](#)
- [The New Wio Terminal eRPC Firmware](#)

Directories *doc* - Documentation.

doxygen - Configuration and support files for running Doxygen over the eRPC C++ infrastructure and erpcgen code.

erpc_c - Holds C/C++ infrastructure for eRPC. This is the code you will include in your application.

erpc_python - Holds Python version of the eRPC infrastructure.

erpcgen - Holds source code for erpcgen and makefiles or project files to build erpcgen on Windows, Linux, and OS X.

erpcsniffer - Holds source code for erpcsniffer application.

examples - Several example IDL files.

mk - Contains common makefiles for building eRPC components.

test - Client/server tests. These tests verify the entire communications path from client to server and back.

utilities - Holds utilities which bring additional benefit to eRPC apps developers.

Building and installing These build instructions apply to host PCs and embedded Linux. For bare metal or RTOS embedded environments, you should copy the *erpc_c* directory into your application sources.

CMake and KConfig build:

It builds a static library of the eRPC C/C++ infrastructure, the *erpcgen* executable, and optionally the unit tests and examples.

CMake is compatible with gcc and clang. On Windows local MingGW downloaded by *script* can be used.

Make build:

It builds a static library of the eRPC C/C++ infrastructure, the *erpcgen* executable, and optionally the unit tests.

The makefiles are compatible with gcc or clang on Linux, OS X, and Cygwin. A Windows build of *erpcgen* using Visual Studio is also available in the *erpcgen/VisualStudio_v14* directory. There is also an Xcode project file in the *erpcgen* directory, which can be used to build *erpcgen* for OS X.

Requirements eRPC now support building **erpcgen**, **erpc_lib**, **tests** and **C examples** using CMake.

Requirements when using CMake:

- **CMake** (minimal version 3.20.0)
- Generator - **Make, Ninja, ...**
- **C/C++ compiler** - **GCC, CLANG, ...**
- **Binson** - <https://www.gnu.org/software/bison/>
- **Flex** - <https://github.com/westes/flex/>

Requirements when using Make:

- **Make**
- **C/C++ compiler** - **GCC, CLANG, ...**
- **Binson** - <https://www.gnu.org/software/bison/>
- **Flex** - <https://github.com/westes/flex/>

Windows Related steps to build **erpcgen** using **Visual Studio** are described in *erpcgen/VisualStudio_v14/readme_erpcgen.txt*.

To install MinGW, Bison, Flex locally on Windows:

```
./install_dependencies.ps1
* ***

#### Linux

```bash
./install_dependencies.sh
```

Mandatory for case, when build for different architecture is needed

- **gcc-multilib, g++-multilib**

#### **Mac OS X**

```
./install_dependencies.sh
```

## Building

**CMake and KConfig** eRPC use CMake and KConfig to configurate and build eRPC related targets. KConfig can be edited by *prj.conf* or *menuconfig* when building.

Generate project, config and build. In *erpc/* execute:

```
cmake -B ./build # in erpc/build generate cmake project
cmake --build ./build --target menuconfig # Build menuconfig and configurate erpcgen, erpc_lib, tests and
↳examples
cmake --build ./build # Build all selected target from prj.conf/menuconfig
```

**\*\*CMake will use the system's default compilers and generator**

If you want to use Windows and locally installed MinGW, use *CMake preset* :

```
cmake --preset mingw64 # Generate project in ./build using mingw64's make and compilers
cmake --build ./build --target menuconfig # Build menuconfig and configurate erpcgen, erpc_lib, tests and
↳examples
cmake --build ./build # Build all selected target from prj.conf/menuconfig
```

**Make** To build the library and erpcgen, run from the repo root directory:

```
make
```

To install the library, erpcgen, and include files, run:

```
make install
```

You may need to sudo the `make install`.

By default this will install into `/usr/local`. If you want to install elsewhere, set the `PREFIX` environment variable. Example for installing into `/opt`:

```
make install PREFIX=/opt
```

List of top level Makefile targets:

- `erpc`: build the `liberpc.a` static library
- `erpcgen`: build the `erpcgen` tool
- `erpcsniffer`: build the sniffer tool
- `test`: build the unit tests under the `test` directory
- `all`: build all of the above
- `install`: install `liberpc.a`, `erpcgen`, and include files

eRPC code is validated with respect to the C++ 11 standard.

**Installing for Python** To install the Python infrastructure for eRPC see instructions in the *erpc python readme*.

### Known issues and limitations

- Static allocations controlled by the `ERPC_ALLOCATION_POLICY` config macro are not fully supported yet, i.e. not all erpc objects can be allocated statically now. It deals with the ongoing process and the full static allocations support will be added in the future.

**Code providing** Repository on Github contains two main branches: **main** and **develop**. Code is developed on **develop** branch. Release version is created via merging **develop** branch into **main** branch.

---

Copyright 2014-2016 Freescale Semiconductor, Inc.

Copyright 2016-2025 NXP

### eRPC Getting Started

**Overview** This *Getting Started User Guide* shows software developers how to use Remote Procedure Calls (RPC) in embedded multicore microcontrollers (eRPC).

The eRPC documentation is located in the `<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/middleware/multicore/erpc/doc` folder.

**Create an eRPC application** This section describes a generic way to create a client/server eRPC application:

1. **Design the eRPC application:** Decide which data types are sent between applications, and define functions that send/receive this data.
2. **Create the IDL file:** The IDL file contains information about data types and functions used in an eRPC application, and is written in the IDL language.
3. **Use the eRPC generator tool:** This tool takes an IDL file and generates the shim code for the client and the server-side applications.
4. **Create an eRPC application:**
  1. Create two projects, where one project is for the client side (primary core) and the other project is for the server side (secondary core).
  2. Add generated files for the client application to the client project, and add generated files for the server application to the server project.
  3. Add infrastructure files.
  4. Add user code for client and server applications.
  5. Set the client and server project options.
5. **Run the eRPC application:** Run both the server and the client applications. Make sure that the server has been run before the client request was sent.

A specific example follows in the next section.

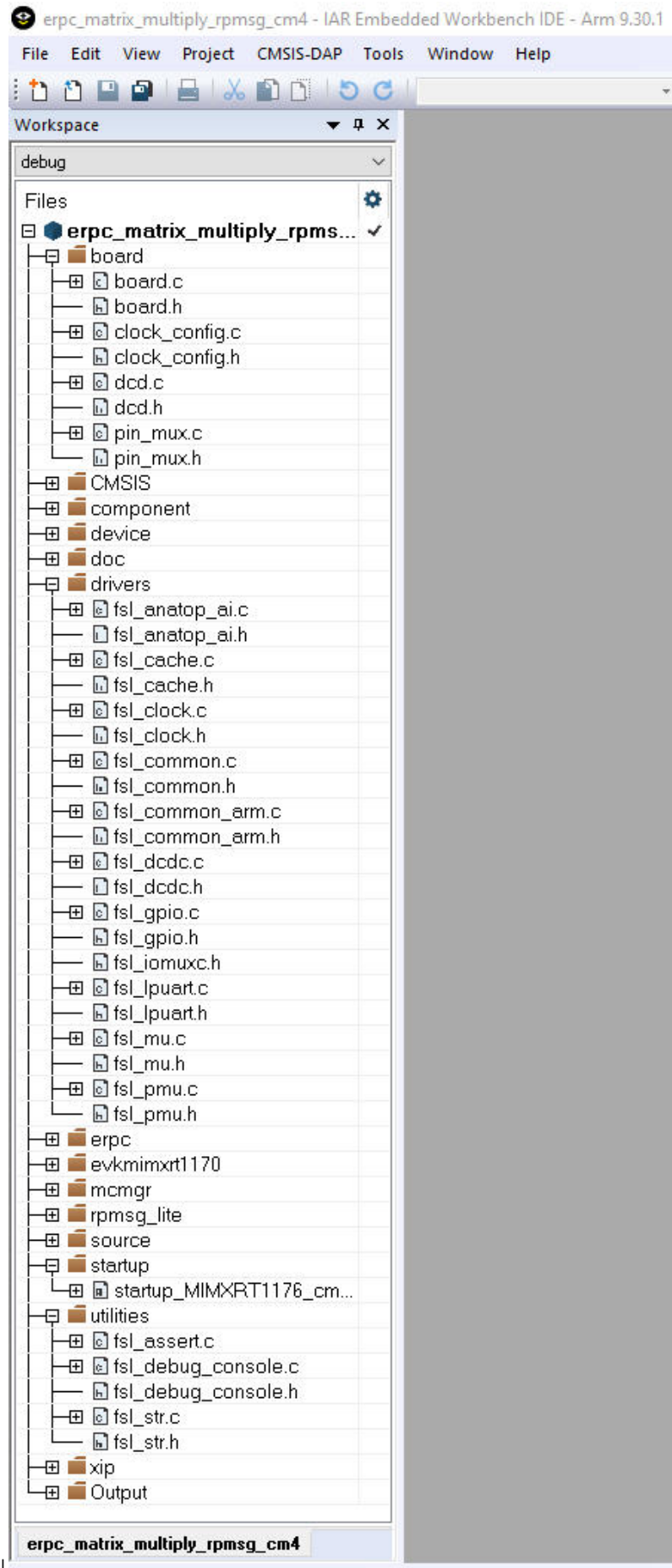
**Multicore server application** The “Matrix multiply” eRPC server project is located in the following folder:

`<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/boards/evkmimxrt1170/multicore_examples/erpc_matrix_multiply_rpmsg/cm4/iar/`

The project files for the eRPC server have the `_cm4` suffix.

**Server project basic source files** The startup files, board-related settings, peripheral drivers, and utilities belong to the basic project source files and form the skeleton of all MCUXpresso SDK applications. These source files are located in:

- `<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/devices/<device>`
- `<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/boards/<board_name>/multicore_examples/<example_name>/`



|

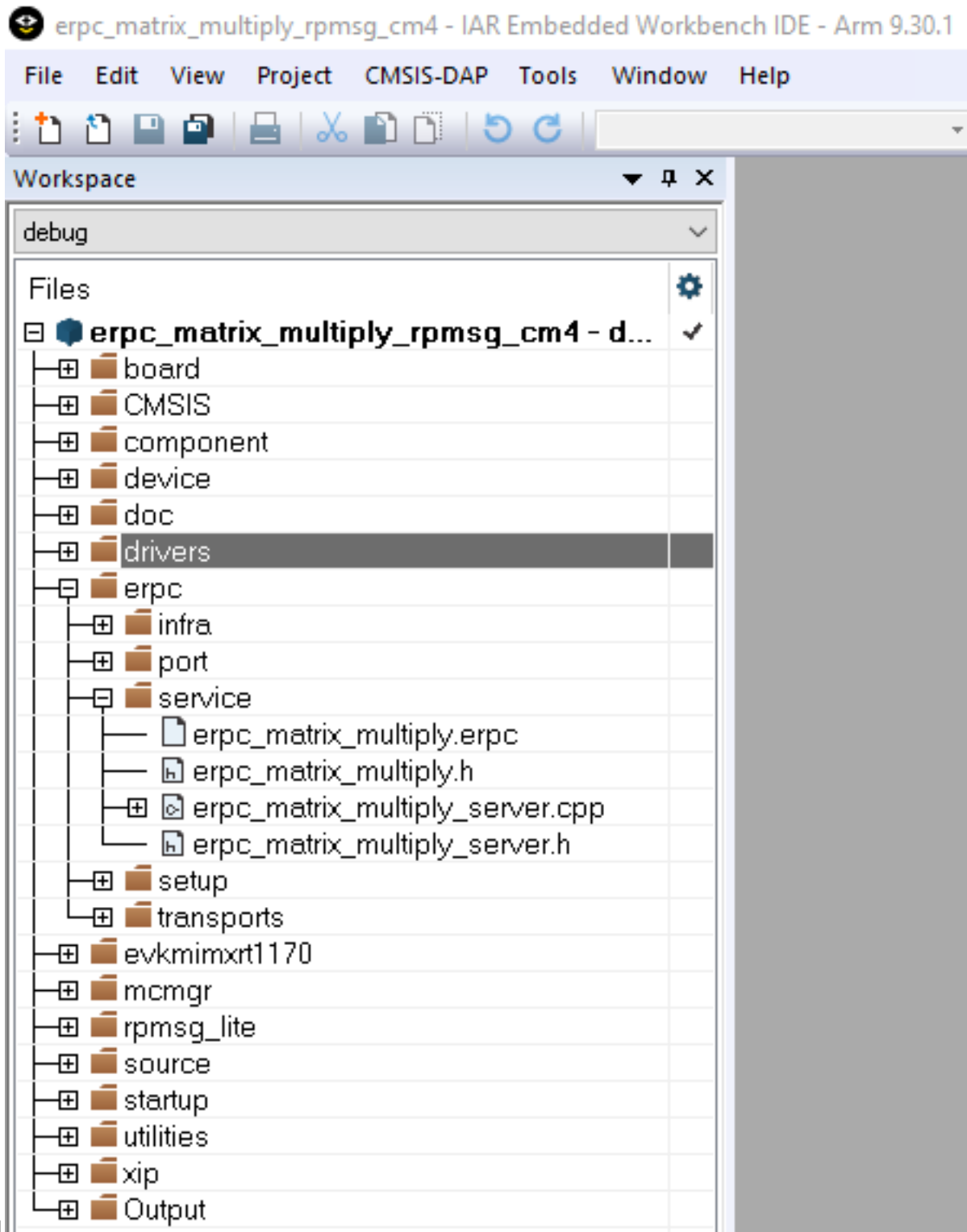
**Parent topic:**Multicore server application

**Server related generated files** The server-related generated files are:

- erpc\_\_matric\_\_multiply.h
- erpc\_\_matrix\_\_multiply\_\_server.h
- erpc\_\_matrix\_\_multiply\_\_server.cpp

The server-related generated files contain the shim code for functions and data types declared in the IDL file. These files also contain functions for the identification of client requested functions, data deserialization, calling requested function's implementations, and data serialization and return, if requested by the client. These shim code files can be found in the following folder:

`<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/boards/evkmimxrt1170/multicore_examples/erpc_common/erpc_matrix_multiply/`



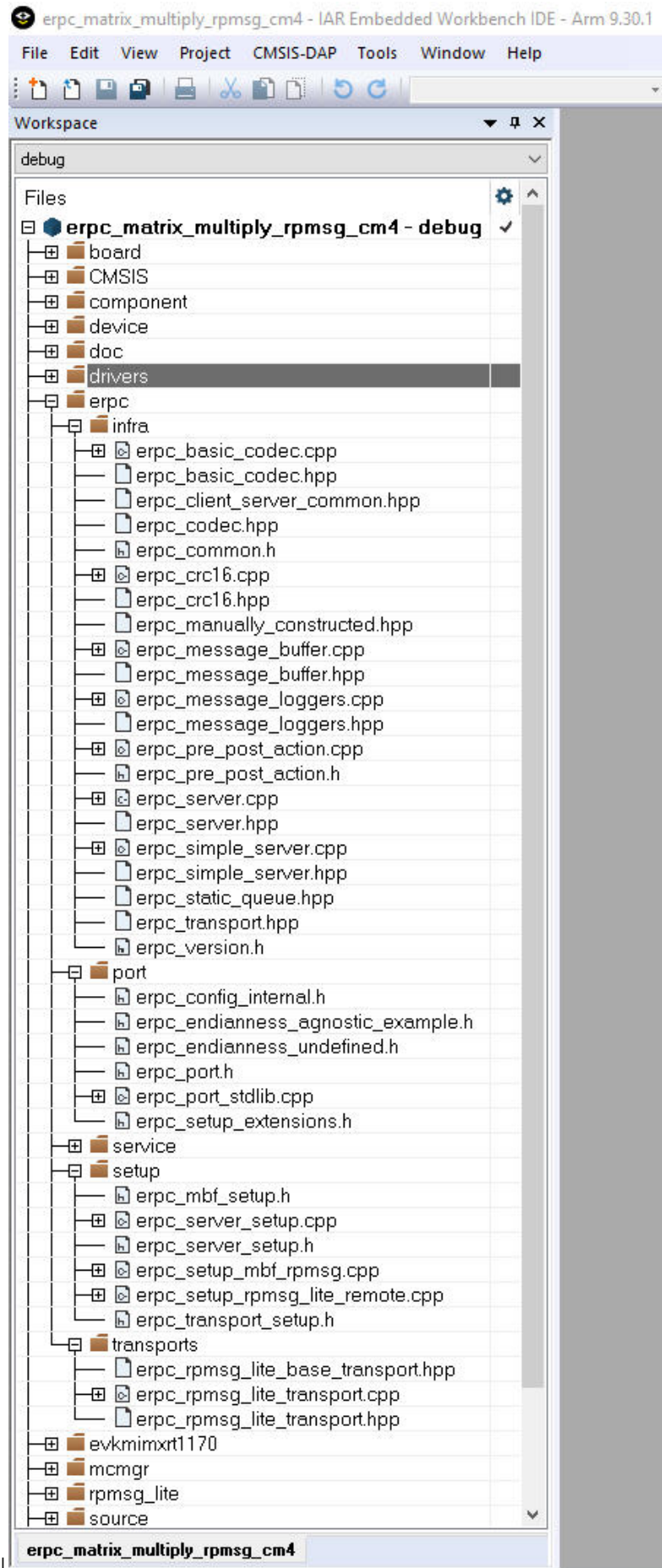
**Parent topic:**Multicore server application

**Server infrastructure files** The eRPC infrastructure files are located in the following folder:

`<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/middleware/multicore/erpc/erpc_c`

The **erpc\_c** folder contains files for creating eRPC client and server applications in the C/C++ language. These files are distributed into subfolders.

- The **infra** subfolder contains C++ infrastructure code used to build server and client applications.
  - Four files, `erpc_server.hpp`, `erpc_server.cpp`, `erpc_simple_server.hpp`, and `erpc_simple_server.cpp`, are used for running the eRPC server on the server-side applications. The simple server is currently the only implementation of the server, and its role is to catch client requests, identify and call requested functions, and send data back when requested.
  - Three files (`erpc_codec.hpp`, `erpc_basic_codec.hpp`, and `erpc_basic_codec.cpp`) are used for codecs. Currently, the basic codec is the initial and only implementation of the codecs.
  - The `erpc_common.hpp` file is used for common eRPC definitions, typedefs, and enums.
  - The `erpc_manually_constructed.hpp` file is used for allocating static storage for the used objects.
  - Message buffer files are used for storing serialized data: `erpc_message_buffer.h` and `erpc_message_buffer.cpp`.
  - The `erpc_transport.h` file defines the abstract interface for transport layer.
- The **port** subfolder contains the eRPC porting layer to adapt to different environments.
  - `erpc_port.h` file contains definition of `erpc_malloc()` and `erpc_free()` functions.
  - `erpc_port_stdlib.cpp` file ensures adaptation to `stdlib`.
  - `erpc_config_internal.h` internal erpc configuration file.
- The **setup** subfolder contains a set of plain C APIs that wrap the C++ infrastructure, providing client and server init and deinit routines that greatly simplify eRPC usage in C-based projects. No knowledge of C++ is required to use these APIs.
  - The `erpc_server_setup.h` and `erpc_server_setup.cpp` files need to be added into the “Matrix multiply” example project to demonstrate the use of C-wrapped functions in this example.
  - The `erpc_transport_setup.h` and `erpc_setup_rpmsg_lite_remote.cpp` files need to be added into the project in order to allow the C-wrapped function for transport layer setup.
  - The `erpc_mbf_setup.h` and `erpc_setup_mbf_rpmsg.cpp` files need to be added into the project in order to allow message buffer factory usage.
- The **transports** subfolder contains transport classes for the different methods of communication supported by eRPC. Some transports are applicable only to host PCs, while others are applicable only to embedded or multicore systems. Most transports have corresponding client and server setup functions in the setup folder.
  - RPMsg-Lite is used as the transport layer for the communication between cores, `erpc_rpmsg_lite_base_transport.hpp`, `erpc_rpmsg_lite_transport.hpp`, and `erpc_rpmsg_lite_transport.cpp` files need to be added into the server project.



|

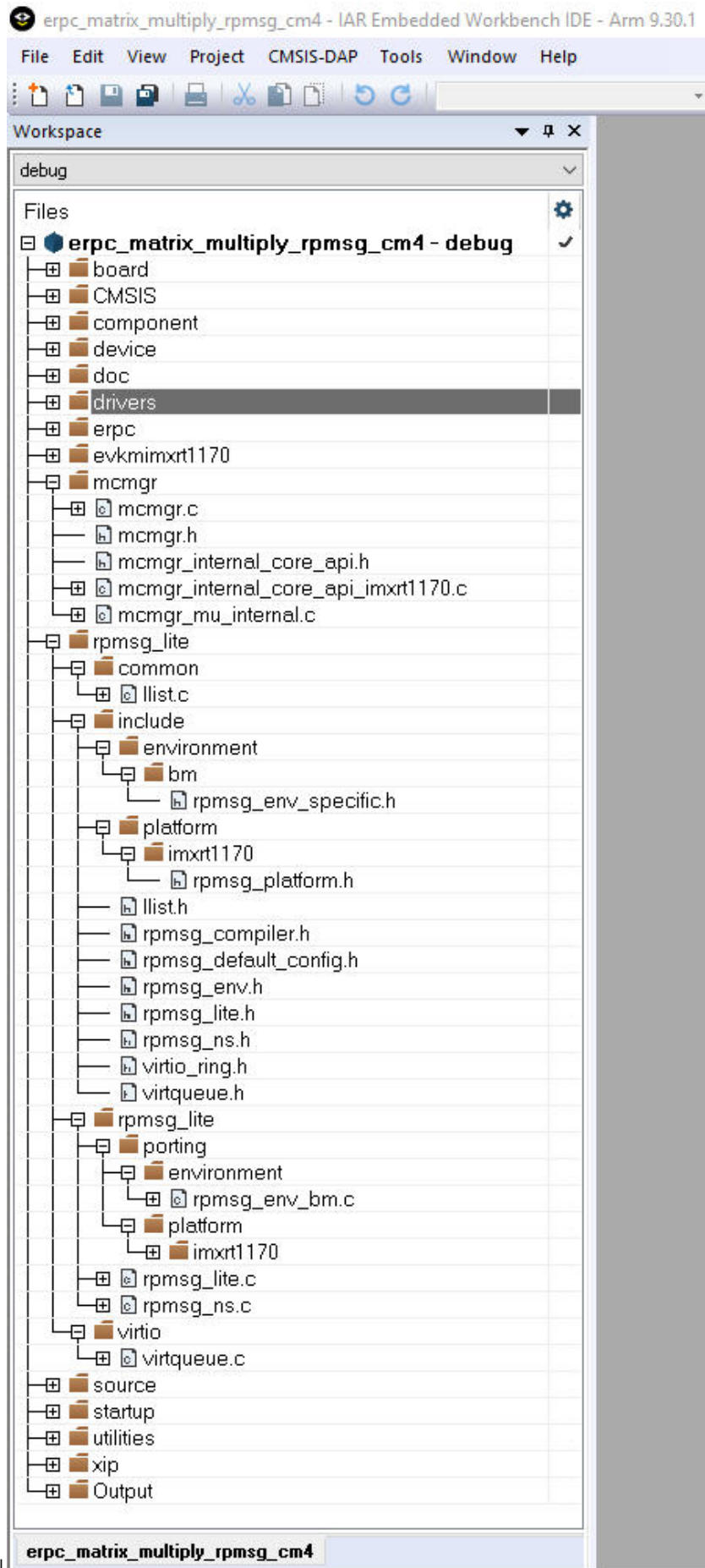
**Parent topic:**Multicore server application

**Server multicore infrastructure files** Because of the RPLite (transport layer), it is also necessary to include RPLite related files, which are in the following folder:

`<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/middleware/multicore/rplite/`

The multicore example applications also use the Multicore Manager software library to control the secondary core startup and shutdown. These source files are located in the following folder:

`<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/middleware/multicore/mcmgr/`



|  
**Parent topic:**Multicore server application

**Server user code** The server's user code is stored in the `main_core1.c` file, located in the following folder:

`<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/boards/evkmimxrt1170/multicore_examples/erpc_matrix_multiply_rpmsg/cm4`

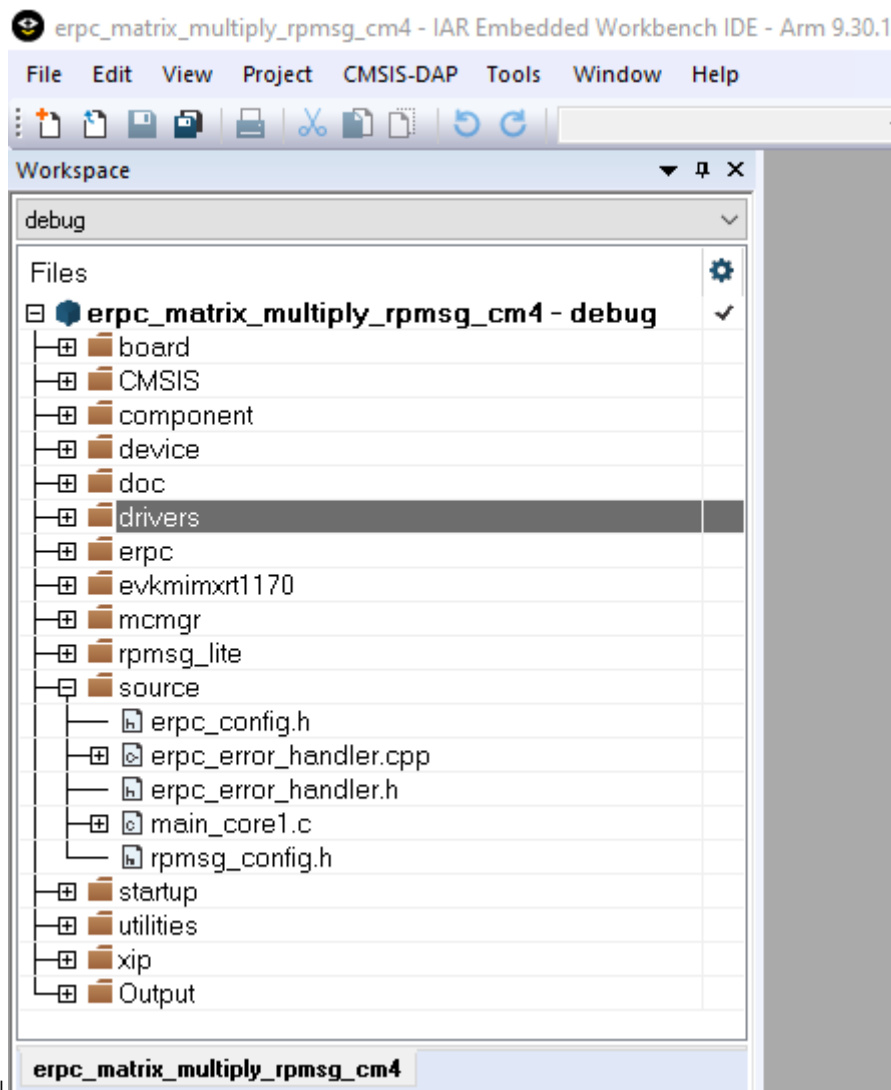
The `main_core1.c` file contains two functions:

- The **main()** function contains the code for the target board and eRPC server initialization. After the initialization, the matrix multiply service is added and the eRPC server waits for client's requests in the while loop.
- The **erpcMatrixMultiply()** function is the user implementation of the eRPC function defined in the IDL file.
- There is the possibility to write the application-specific eRPC error handler. The eRPC error handler of the matrix multiply application is implemented in the `erpc_error_handler.h` and `erpc_error_handler.cpp` files.

The eRPC-relevant code is captured in the following code snippet:

```
/* erpcMatrixMultiply function user implementation */
void erpcMatrixMultiply(const Matrix *matrix1, const Matrix *matrix2, Matrix *result_matrix)
{
 ...
}
int main()
{
 ...
 /* RPSMsg-Lite transport layer initialization */
 erpc_transport_t transport;
 transport = erpc_transport_rpmsg_lite_remote_init(src, dst, (void*)startupData,
 ERPC_TRANSPORT_RPMSG_LITE_LINK_ID, SignalReady, NULL);
 ...
 /* MessageBufferFactory initialization */
 erpc_mbf_t message_buffer_factory;
 message_buffer_factory = erpc_mbf_rpmsg_init(transport);
 ...
 /* eRPC server side initialization */
 erpc_server_t server;
 server = erpc_server_init(transport, message_buffer_factory);
 ...
 /* Adding the service to the server */
 erpc_service_t service = create_MatrixMultiplyService_service();
 erpc_add_service_to_server(server, service);
 ...
 while (1)
 {
 /* Process eRPC requests */
 erpc_status_t status = erpc_server_poll(server);
 /* handle error status */
 if (status != kErpcStatus_Success)
 {
 /* print error description */
 erpc_error_handler(status, 0);
 ...
 }
 ...
 }
}
```

Except for the application main file, there are configuration files for the RPMsg-Lite (`rpmsg_config.h`) and eRPC (`erpc_config.h`), located in the `<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/boards/evkmimxrt1170/multicore_examples/ erpc_matrix_multiply_rpmsg` folder.



**Parent topic:**Multicore server application

**Parent topic:**[Create an eRPC application](#)

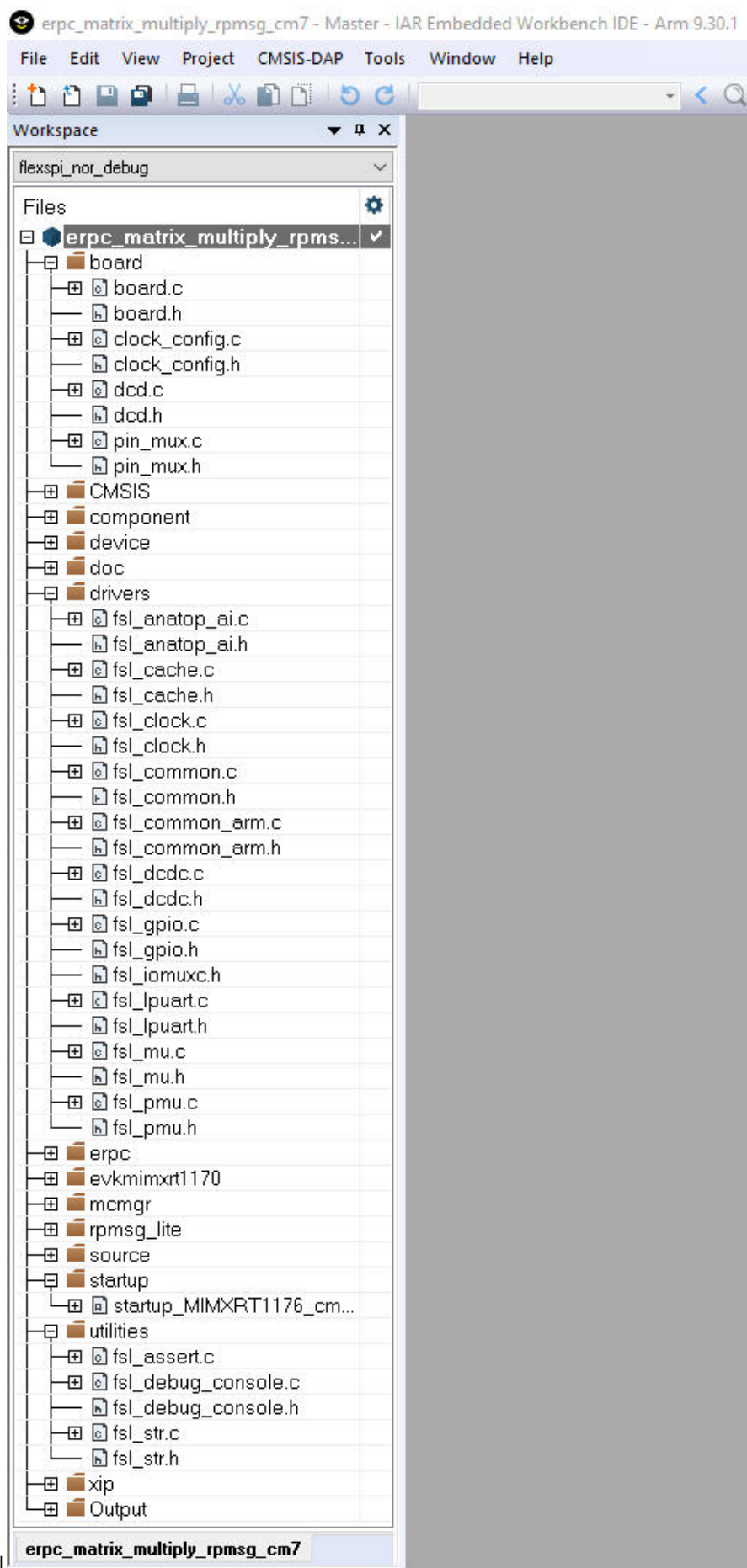
**Multicore client application** The “Matrix multiply” eRPC client project is located in the following folder:

`<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/boards/evkmimxrt1170/multicore_examples/erpc_matrix_multiply_rpmsg/cm7/iar/`

Project files for the eRPC client have the `_cm7` suffix.

**Client project basic source files** The startup files, board-related settings, peripheral drivers, and utilities belong to the basic project source files and form the skeleton of all MCUXpresso SDK applications. These source files are located in the following folders:

- `<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/devices/<device>`
- `<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/boards/<board_name>/multicore_examples/<example_name>/`



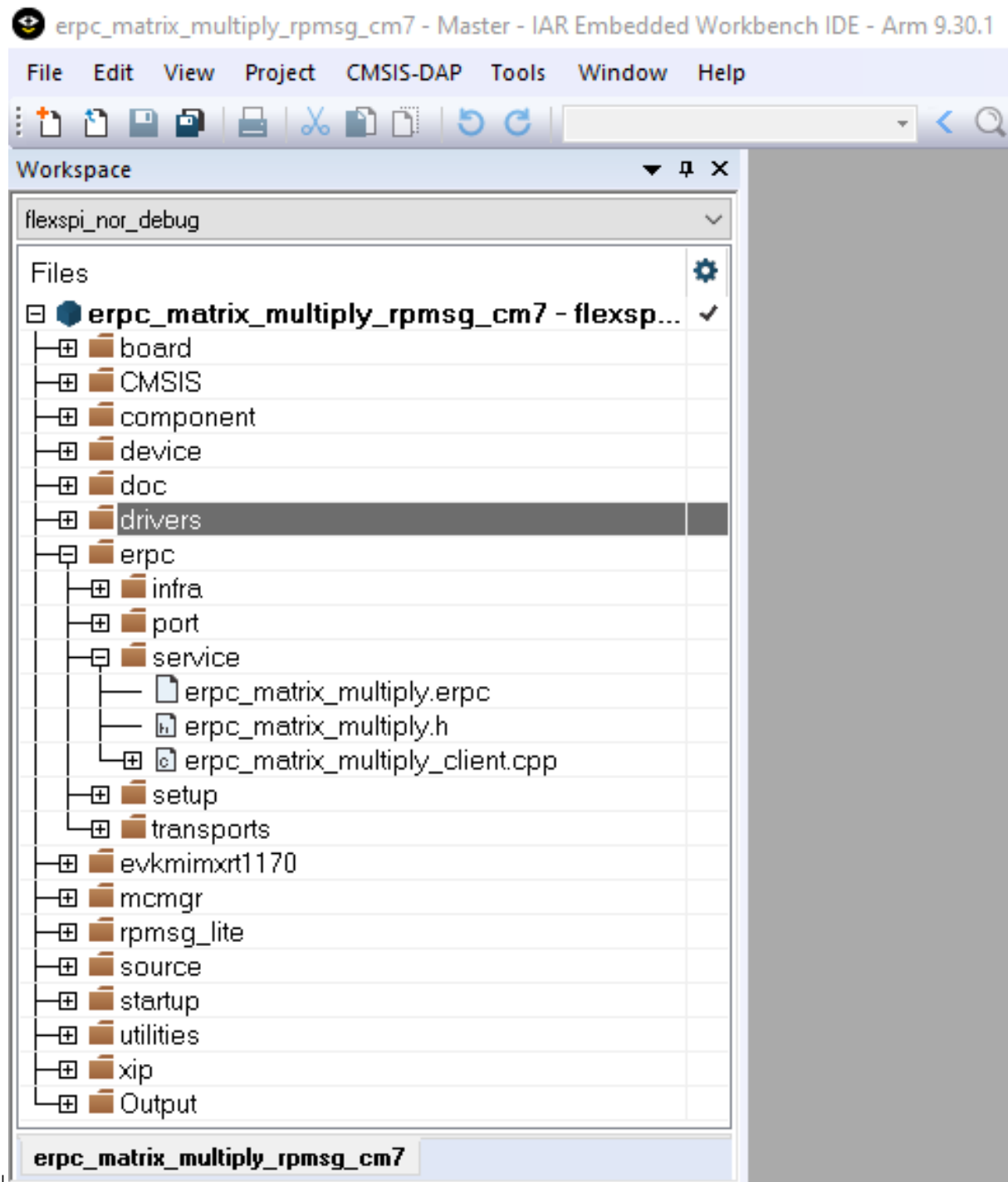
|

**Parent topic:**Multicore client application

**Client-related generated files** The client-related generated files are:

- erpc\_matrix\_multiply.h
- erpc\_matrix\_multiply\_client.cpp

These files contain the shim code for the functions and data types declared in the IDL file. These functions also call methods for codec initialization, data serialization, performing eRPC requests, and de-serializing outputs into expected data structures (if return values are expected). These shim code files can be found in the `<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/boards/evkmimxrt1170/multicore_examples/erpc_common/erpc_matrix_multiply/service/` folder.



**Parent topic:**Multicore client application

**Client infrastructure files** The eRPC infrastructure files are located in the following folder:

`<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/middleware/multicore/erpc/erpc_c`

The **erpc\_c** folder contains files for creating eRPC client and server applications in the C/C++ language. These files are distributed into subfolders.

- The **infra** subfolder contains C++ infrastructure code used to build server and client applications.

- Two files, `erpc_client_manager.h` and `erpc_client_manager.cpp`, are used for managing the client-side application. The main purpose of the client files is to create, perform, and release eRPC requests.
- Three files (`erpc_codec.hpp`, `erpc_basic_codec.hpp`, and `erpc_basic_codec.cpp`) are used for codecs. Currently, the basic codec is the initial and only implementation of the codecs.
- `erpc_common.h` file is used for common eRPC definitions, typedefs, and enums.
- `erpc_manually_constructed.hpp` file is used for allocating static storage for the used objects.
- Message buffer files are used for storing serialized data: `erpc_message_buffer.hpp` and `erpc_message_buffer.cpp`.
- `erpc_transport.hpp` file defines the abstract interface for transport layer.

The **port** subfolder contains the eRPC porting layer to adapt to different environments.

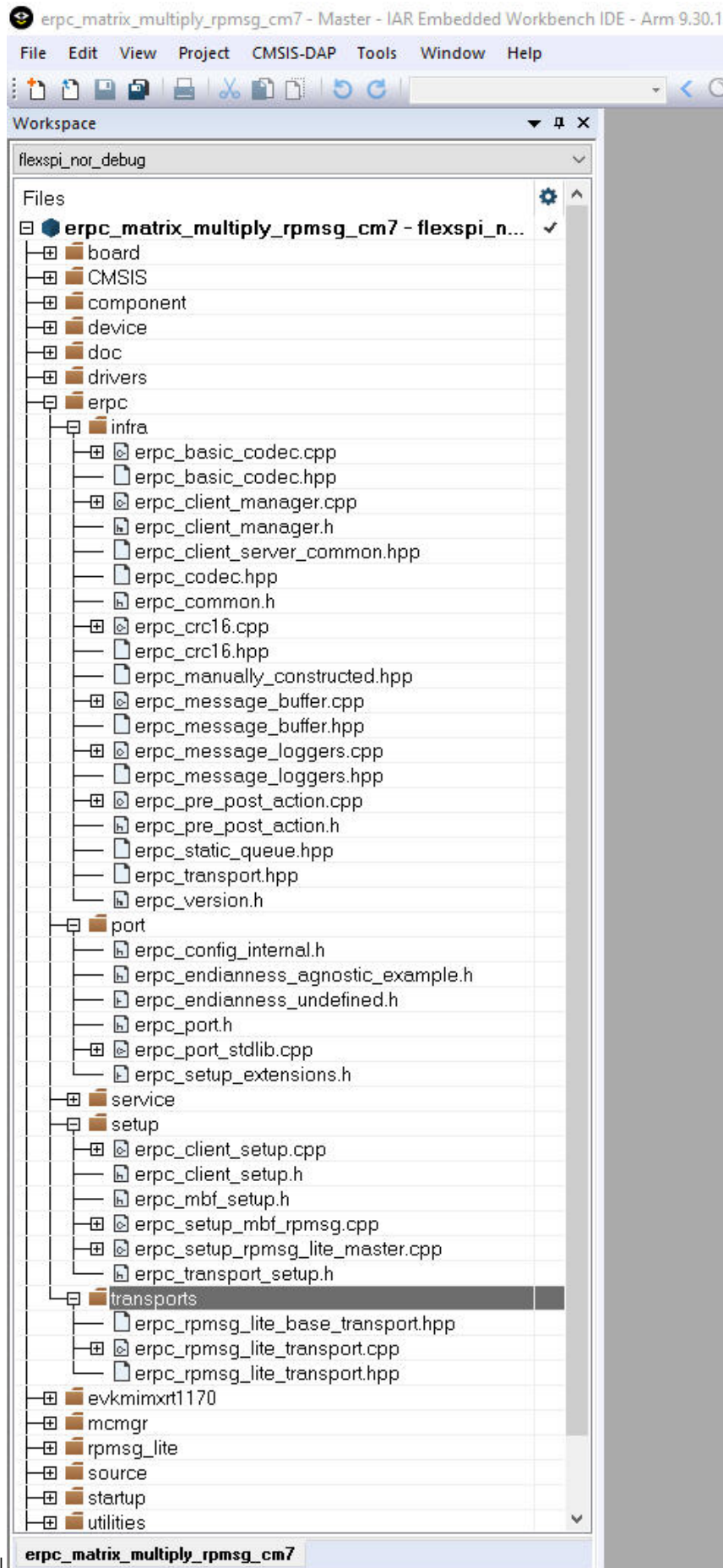
- `erpc_port.h` file contains definition of `erpc_malloc()` and `erpc_free()` functions.
- `erpc_port_stdlib.cpp` file ensures adaptation to `stdlib`.
- `erpc_config_internal.h` internal eRPC configuration file.

The **setup** subfolder contains a set of plain C APIs that wrap the C++ infrastructure, providing client and server init and deinit routines that greatly simplify eRPC usage in C-based projects. No knowledge of C++ is required to use these APIs.

- `erpc_client_setup.h` and `erpc_client_setup.cpp` files needs to be added into the “Matrix multiply” example project to demonstrate the use of C-wrapped functions in this example.
- `erpc_transport_setup.h` and `erpc_setup_rpmsg_lite_master.cpp` files needs to be added into the project in order to allow C-wrapped function for transport layer setup.
- `erpc_mbf_setup.h` and `erpc_setup_mbf_rpmsg.cpp` files needs to be added into the project in order to allow message buffer factory usage.

The **transports** subfolder contains transport classes for the different methods of communication supported by eRPC. Some transports are applicable only to host PCs, while others are applicable only to embedded or multicore systems. Most transports have corresponding client and server setup functions, in the setup folder.

- RPMsg-Lite is used as the transport layer for the communication between cores, `erpc_rpmsg_lite_base_transport.hpp`, `erpc_rpmsg_lite_transport.hpp`, and `erpc_rpmsg_lite_transport.cpp` files needs to be added into the client project.



|

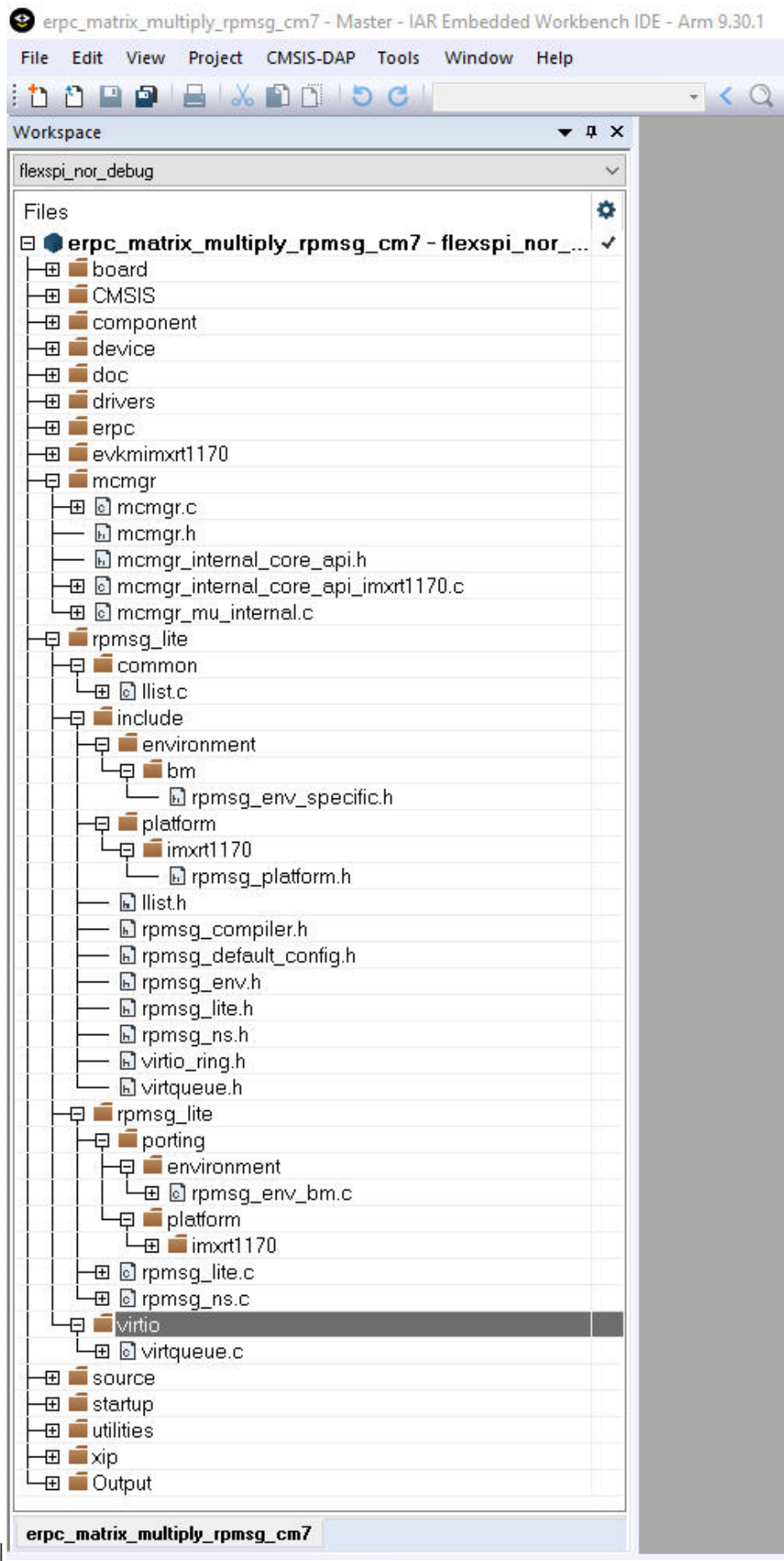
**Parent topic:**Multicore client application

**Client multicore infrastructure files** Because of the RPSMsg-Lite (transport layer), it is also necessary to include RPSMsg-Lite related files, which are in the following folder:

*<MCUXpressoSDK\_install\_dir>/middleware/multicore/rpsmsg\_lite/*

The multicore example applications also use the Multicore Manager software library to control the secondary core startup and shutdown. These source files are located in the following folder:

*<MCUXpressoSDK\_install\_dir>/middleware/multicore/mcmgr/*



|

**Parent topic:**Multicore client application

**Client user code** The client's user code is stored in the main\_core0.c file, located in the following folder:

<MCUXpressoSDK\_install\_dir>/boards/evkmimxrt1170/multicore\_example/erpc\_matrix\_multiply\_rpmsg/cm7

The main\_core0.c file contains the code for target board and eRPC initialization.

- After initialization, the secondary core is released from reset.
- When the secondary core is ready, the primary core initializes two matrix variables.
- The erpcMatrixMultiply eRPC function is called to issue the eRPC request and get the result.

It is possible to write the application-specific eRPC error handler. The eRPC error handler of the matrix multiply application is implemented in erpc\_error\_handler.h and erpc\_error\_handler.cpp files.

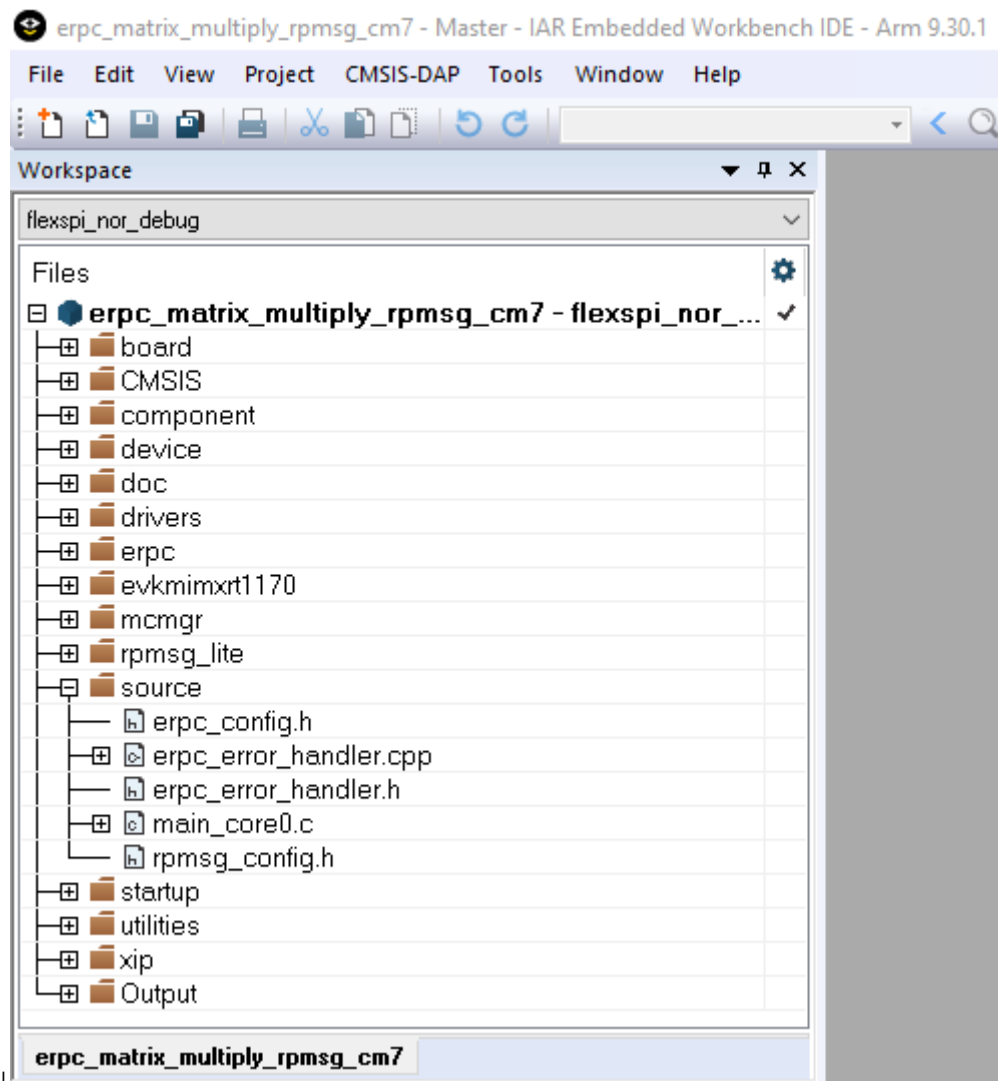
The matrix multiplication can be issued repeatedly, when pressing a software board button.

The eRPC-relevant code is captured in the following code snippet:

```
...
extern bool g_erpc_error_occurred;
...
/* Declare matrix arrays */
Matrix matrix1 = {0}, matrix2 = {0}, result_matrix = {0};
...
/* RPMsg-Lite transport layer initialization */
erpc_transport_t transport;
transport = erpc_transport_rpmsg_lite_master_init(src, dst,
ERPC_TRANSPORT_RPMSG_LITE_LINK_ID);
...
/* MessageBufferFactory initialization */
erpc_mbf_t message_buffer_factory;
message_buffer_factory = erpc_mbf_rpmsg_init(transport);
...
/* eRPC client side initialization */
erpc_client_t client;
client = erpc_client_init(transport, message_buffer_factory);
...
/* Set default error handler */
erpc_client_set_error_handler(client, erpc_error_handler);
...
while (1)
{
/* Invoke the erpcMatrixMultiply function */
erpcMatrixMultiply(matrix1, matrix2, result_matrix);
...
/* Check if some error occurred in eRPC */
if (g_erpc_error_occurred)
{
/* Exit program loop */
break;
}
...
}
```

Except for the application main file, there are configuration files for the RPMsg-Lite (rpmsg\_config.h) and eRPC (erpc\_config.h), located in the following folder:

<MCUXpressoSDK\_install\_dir>/boards/evkmimxrt1170/multicore\_examples/erpc\_matrix\_multiply\_rpmsg



Parent topic: Multicore client application

Parent topic: [Create an eRPC application](#)

**Multiprocessor server application** The “Matrix multiply” eRPC server project for multiprocessor applications is located in the `<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/boards/<board_name>/multiprocessor_examples/erpc_server_matrix_multiply_<transport_layer>` folder.

Most of the multiprocessor application setup is the same as for the multicore application. The multiprocessor server application requires server-related generated files (server shim code), server infrastructure files, and the server user code. There is no need for server multicore infrastructure files (MCMGR and RPSMsg-Lite). The RPSMsg-Lite transport layer is replaced either by SPI or UART transports. The following table shows the required transport-related files per each transport type.

SPI	<eRPC base directory>/erpc_c/setup/erpc_setup_(d)spi_slave.cpp
	<eRPC base directory>/erpc_c/transports/erpc_(d)spi_slave_transport.hpp
	<eRPC base directory>/erpc_c/transports/erpc_(d)spi_slave_transport.cpp
UART	<eRPC base directory>/erpc_c/setup/erpc_setup_uart_cmsis.cpp

<eRPC base directory>/erpc\_c/transport/erpc\_uart\_cmsis\_transport.hpp

<eRPC base directory>/erpc\_c/transport/erpc\_uart\_cmsis\_transport.cpp

|

**Server user code** The server's user code is stored in the main\_server.c file, located in the <MCUXpressoSDK\_install\_dir>/boards/<board\_name>/multiprocessor\_examples/erpc\_server\_matrix\_multiply\_<transport\_layer>/ folder.

The eRPC-relevant code with UART as a transport is captured in the following code snippet:

```

/* erpcMatrixMultiply function user implementation */
void erpcMatrixMultiply(Matrix matrix1, Matrix matrix2, Matrix result_matrix)
{
 ...
}
int main()
{
 ...
 /* UART transport layer initialization, ERPC_DEMO_UART is the structure of CMSIS UART driver
 ↪operations */
 erpc_transport_t transport;
 transport = erpc_transport_cmsis_uart_init((void *)&ERPC_DEMO_UART);
 ...
 /* MessageBufferFactory initialization */
 erpc_mbf_t message_buffer_factory;
 message_buffer_factory = erpc_mbf_dynamic_init();
 ...
 /* eRPC server side initialization */
 erpc_server_t server;
 server = erpc_server_init(transport, message_buffer_factory);
 ...
 /* Adding the service to the server */
 erpc_service_t service = create_MatrixMultiplyService_service();
 erpc_add_service_to_server(server, service);
 ...
 while (1)
 {
 /* Process eRPC requests */
 erpc_status_t status = erpc_server_poll(server)
 /* handle error status */
 if (status != kErpcStatus_Success)
 {
 /* print error description */
 erpc_error_handler(status, 0);
 ...
 }
 ...
 }
}

```

**Parent topic:**Multiprocessor server application

**Multiprocessor client application** The “Matrix multiply” eRPC client project for multiprocessor applications is located in the <MCUXpressoSDK\_install\_dir>/boards/<board\_name>/multiprocessor\_examples/erpc\_client\_matrix\_multiply\_<transport\_layer>/iar/ folder.

Most of the multiprocessor application setup is the same as for the multicore application. The multiprocessor server application requires client-related generated files (server shim code),

client infrastructure files, and the client user code. There is no need for client multicore infrastructure files (MCMGR and RPSmsg-Lite). The RPSmsg-Lite transport layer is replaced either by SPI or UART transports. The following table shows the required transport-related files per each transport type.

```
|SPI| <eRPC base directory>/erpc_c/setup/erpc_setup_(d)spi_master.cpp
<eRPC base directory>/erpc_c/transports/ erpc_(d)spi_master_transport.hpp
<eRPC base directory>/erpc_c/transports/ erpc_(d)spi_master_transport.cpp
| |UART| <eRPC base directory>/erpc_c/setup/erpc_setup_uart_cmsis.cpp
<eRPC base directory>/erpc_c/transports/erpc_uart_cmsis_transport.hpp
<eRPC base directory>/erpc_c/transports/erpc_uart_cmsis_transport.cpp
|
```

**Client user code** The client's user code is stored in the `main_client.c` file, located in the `<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/boards/<board_name>/multiprocessor_examples/erpc_client_matrix_multiply_<transport_layer>/` folder.

The eRPC-relevant code with UART as a transport is captured in the following code snippet:

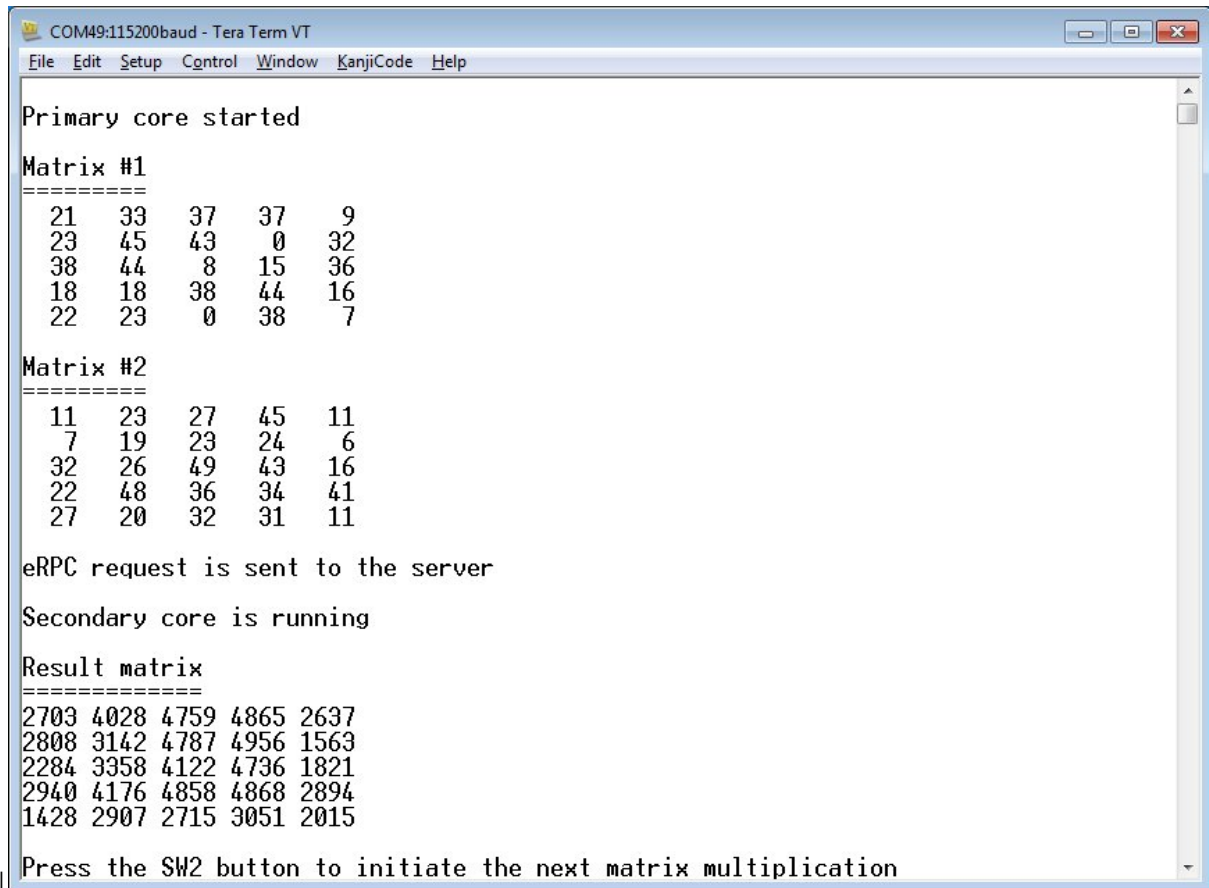
```
...
extern bool g_erpc_error_occurred;
...
/* Declare matrix arrays */
Matrix matrix1 = {0}, matrix2 = {0}, result_matrix = {0};
...
/* UART transport layer initialization, ERPC_DEMO_UART is the structure of CMSIS UART driver_
↳operations */
erpc_transport_t transport;
transport = erpc_transport_cmsis_uart_init((void *)&ERPC_DEMO_UART);
...
/* MessageBufferFactory initialization */
erpc_mbf_t message_buffer_factory;
message_buffer_factory = erpc_mbf_dynamic_init();
...
/* eRPC client side initialization */
erpc_client_t client;
client = erpc_client_init(transport,message_buffer_factory);
...
/* Set default error handler */
erpc_client_set_error_handler(client, erpc_error_handler);
...
while (1)
{
/* Invoke the erpcMatrixMultiply function */
erpcMatrixMultiply(matrix1, matrix2, result_matrix);
...
/* Check if some error occurred in eRPC */
if (g_erpc_error_occurred)
{
/* Exit program loop */
break;
}
...
}
```

**Parent topic:**Multiprocessor client application

**Parent topic:**Multiprocessor server application

Parent topic:[Create an eRPC application](#)

**Running the eRPC application** Follow the instructions in *Getting Started with MCUXpresso SDK* (document MCUXSDKGSUG) (located in the <MCUXpressoSDK\_install\_dir>/docs folder), to load both the primary and the secondary core images into the on-chip memory, and then effectively debug the dual-core application. After the application is running, the serial console should look like:



```

COM49:115200baud - Tera Term VT
File Edit Setup Control Window KanjiCode Help

Primary core started

Matrix #1
=====
 21 33 37 37 9
 23 45 43 0 32
 38 44 8 15 36
 18 18 38 44 16
 22 23 0 38 7

Matrix #2
=====
 11 23 27 45 11
 7 19 23 24 6
 32 26 49 43 16
 22 48 36 34 41
 27 20 32 31 11

eRPC request is sent to the server

Secondary core is running

Result matrix
=====
2703 4028 4759 4865 2637
2808 3142 4787 4956 1563
2284 3358 4122 4736 1821
2940 4176 4858 4868 2894
1428 2907 2715 3051 2015

Press the SW2 button to initiate the next matrix multiplication

```

For multiprocessor applications that are running between PC and the target evaluation board or between two boards, follow the instructions in the accompanied example readme files that provide details about the proper board setup and the PC side setup (Python).

Parent topic:[Create an eRPC application](#)

Parent topic:[eRPC example](#)

**eRPC example** This section shows how to create an example eRPC application called “Matrix multiply”, which implements one eRPC function (matrix multiply) with two function parameters (two matrices). The client-side application calls this eRPC function, and the server side performs the multiplication of received matrices. The server side then returns the result.

For example, use the NXP MIMXRT1170-EVK board as the target dual-core platform, and the IAR Embedded Workbench for ARM (EWARM) as the target IDE for developing the eRPC example.

- The primary core (CM7) runs the eRPC client.
- The secondary core (CM4) runs the eRPC server.
- RMsg-Lite (Remote Processor Messaging Lite) is used as the eRPC transport layer.

The “Matrix multiply” application can be also run in the multi-processor setup. In other words, the eRPC client running on one SoC communicates with the eRPC server that runs on another SoC, utilizing different transport channels. It is possible to run the board-to-PC example (PC as the eRPC server and a board as the eRPC client, and vice versa) and also the board-to-board example. These multiprocessor examples are prepared for selected boards only.

| Multicore application source and project files | `<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/boards/evkmimxrt1170/multicore/`  
| Multiprocessor application source and project files | `<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/boards/<board_name>/multi`  
`<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/boards/<board_name>/multiprocessor_examples/erpc_server_matrix_multiply_<tr`  
| |eRPC source files| `<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/middleware/multicore/erpc/|` | RMsg-Lite  
source files | `<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/middleware/multicore/rpmsg_lite/|`

**Designing the eRPC application** The matrix multiply application is based on calling single eRPC function that takes 2 two-dimensional arrays as input and returns matrix multiplication results as another 2 two-dimensional array. The IDL file syntax supports arrays with the dimension length set by the number only (in the current eRPC implementation). Because of this, a variable is declared in the IDL dedicated to store information about matrix dimension length, and to allow easy maintenance of the user and server code.

For a simple use of the two-dimensional array, the alias name (new type definition) for this data type has is declared in the IDL. Declaring this alias name ensures that the same data type can be used across the client and server applications.

**Parent topic:** [eRPC example](#)

**Creating the IDL file** The created IDL file is located in the following folder:

`<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/boards/evkmimxrt1170/multicore_examples/erpc_common/erpc_matrix_multiply/`

The created IDL file contains the following code:

```
program erpc_matrix_multiply
/*! This const defines the matrix size. The value has to be the same as the
Matrix array dimension. Do not forget to re-generate the erpc code once the
matrix size is changed in the erpc file */
const int32 matrix_size = 5;
/*! This is the matrix array type. The dimension has to be the same as the
matrix size const. Do not forget to re-generate the erpc code once the
matrix size is changed in the erpc file */
type Matrix = int32[matrix_size][matrix_size];
interface MatrixMultiplyService {
erpcMatrixMultiply(in Matrix matrix1, in Matrix matrix2, out Matrix result_matrix) ->
void
}
```

Details:

- The IDL file starts with the program name (*erpc\_matrix\_multiply*), and this program name is used in the naming of all generated outputs.
- The declaration and definition of the constant variable named *matrix\_size* follows next. The *matrix\_size* variable is used for passing information about the length of matrix dimensions to the client/server user code.
- The alias name for the two-dimensional array type (*Matrix*) is declared.
- The interface group *MatrixMultiplyService* is located at the end of the IDL file. This interface group contains only one function declaration *erpcMatrixMultiply*.
- As shown above, the function’s declaration contains three parameters of Matrix type: *matrix1* and *matrix2* are input parameters, while *result\_matrix* is the output parameter. Additionally, the returned data type is declared as void.

When writing the IDL file, the following order of items is recommended:

1. Program name at the top of the IDL file.
2. New data types and constants declarations.
3. Declarations of interfaces and functions at the end of the IDL file.

**Parent topic:** [eRPC example](#)

**Using the eRPC generator tool** | Windows OS | `<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/middleware/multicore/tools/erpcgen/Linux_x64`  
 | Linux OS | `<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/middleware/multicore/tools/erpcgen/Linux_x86`  
`<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/middleware/multicore/tools/erpcgen/Linux_x86`  
 | | Mac OS | `<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/middleware/multicore/tools/erpcgen/Mac` |

The files for the “Matrix multiply” example are pre-generated and already a part of the application projects. The following section describes how they have been created.

- The easiest way to create the shim code is to copy the erpcgen application to the same folder where the IDL file (\*.erpc) is located; then run the following command:

```
erpcgen <IDL_file>.erpc
```

- In the “Matrix multiply” example, the command should look like:

```
erpcgen erpc_matrix_multiply.erpc
```

Additionally, another method to create the shim code is to execute the eRPC application using input commands:

- “-?”/”—help” – Shows supported commands.
- “-o <filePath>”/”—output<filePath>” – Sets the output directory.

For example,

```
<path_to_erpcgen>/erpcgen -o <path_to_output>
<path_to_IDL>/<IDL_file_name>.erpc
```

For the “Matrix multiply” example, when the command is executed from the default erpcgen location, it looks like:

```
erpcgen -o
../../../../boards/evkmimxrt1170/multicore_examples/erpc_common/erpc_matrix_multiply/service
../../../../boards/evkmimxrt1170/multicore_examples/erpc_common/erpc_matrix_multiply/service/erpc_matrix_mu
```

In both cases, the following four files are generated into the `<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/boards/evkmimxrt1170/multicore_examples/erpc_common/erpc_matrix_multiply/service` folder:

- erpc\_matrix\_multiply.h
- erpc\_matrix\_multiply\_client.cpp
- erpc\_matrix\_multiply\_server.h
- erpc\_matrix\_multiply\_server.cpp

For multiprocessor examples, the eRPC file and pre-generated files can be found in the `<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/boards/<board_name>/multiprocessor_examples/erpc_common/erpc_matrix_multiply/service` folder.

**For Linux OS users:**

- Do not forget to set the permissions for the eRPC generator application.
- Run the application as `./erpcgen...` instead of as `erpcgen ....`

Parent topic: [eRPC example](#)

**Create an eRPC application** This section describes a generic way to create a client/server eRPC application:

1. **Design the eRPC application:** Decide which data types are sent between applications, and define functions that send/receive this data.
2. **Create the IDL file:** The IDL file contains information about data types and functions used in an eRPC application, and is written in the IDL language.
3. **Use the eRPC generator tool:** This tool takes an IDL file and generates the shim code for the client and the server-side applications.
4. **Create an eRPC application:**
  1. Create two projects, where one project is for the client side (primary core) and the other project is for the server side (secondary core).
  2. Add generated files for the client application to the client project, and add generated files for the server application to the server project.
  3. Add infrastructure files.
  4. Add user code for client and server applications.
  5. Set the client and server project options.
5. **Run the eRPC application:** Run both the server and the client applications. Make sure that the server has been run before the client request was sent.

A specific example follows in the next section.

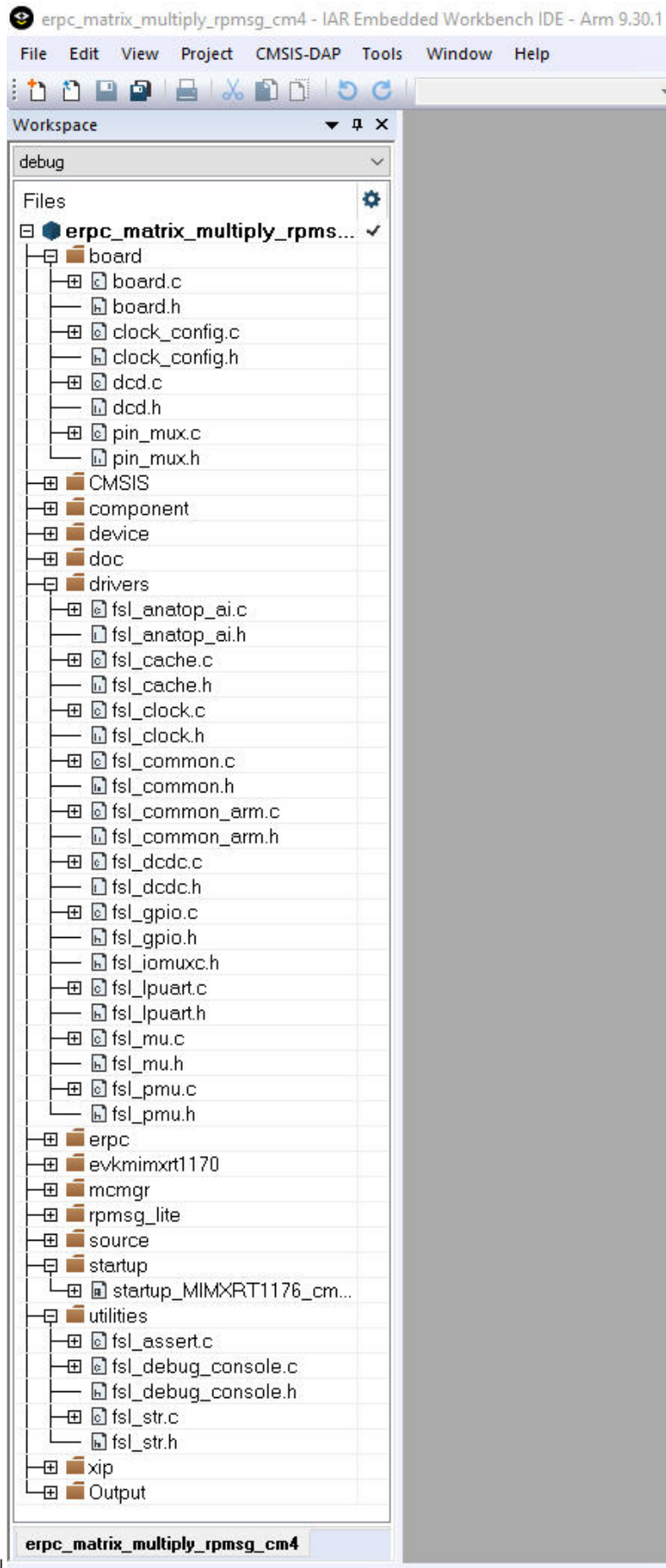
**Multicore server application** The “Matrix multiply” eRPC server project is located in the following folder:

`<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/boards/evkmimxrt1170/multicore_examples/erpc_matrix_multiply_rpmcg/cm4/iar/`

The project files for the eRPC server have the `_cm4` suffix.

**Server project basic source files** The startup files, board-related settings, peripheral drivers, and utilities belong to the basic project source files and form the skeleton of all MCUXpresso SDK applications. These source files are located in:

- `<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/devices/<device>`
- `<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/boards/<board_name>/multicore_examples/<example_name>/`



|

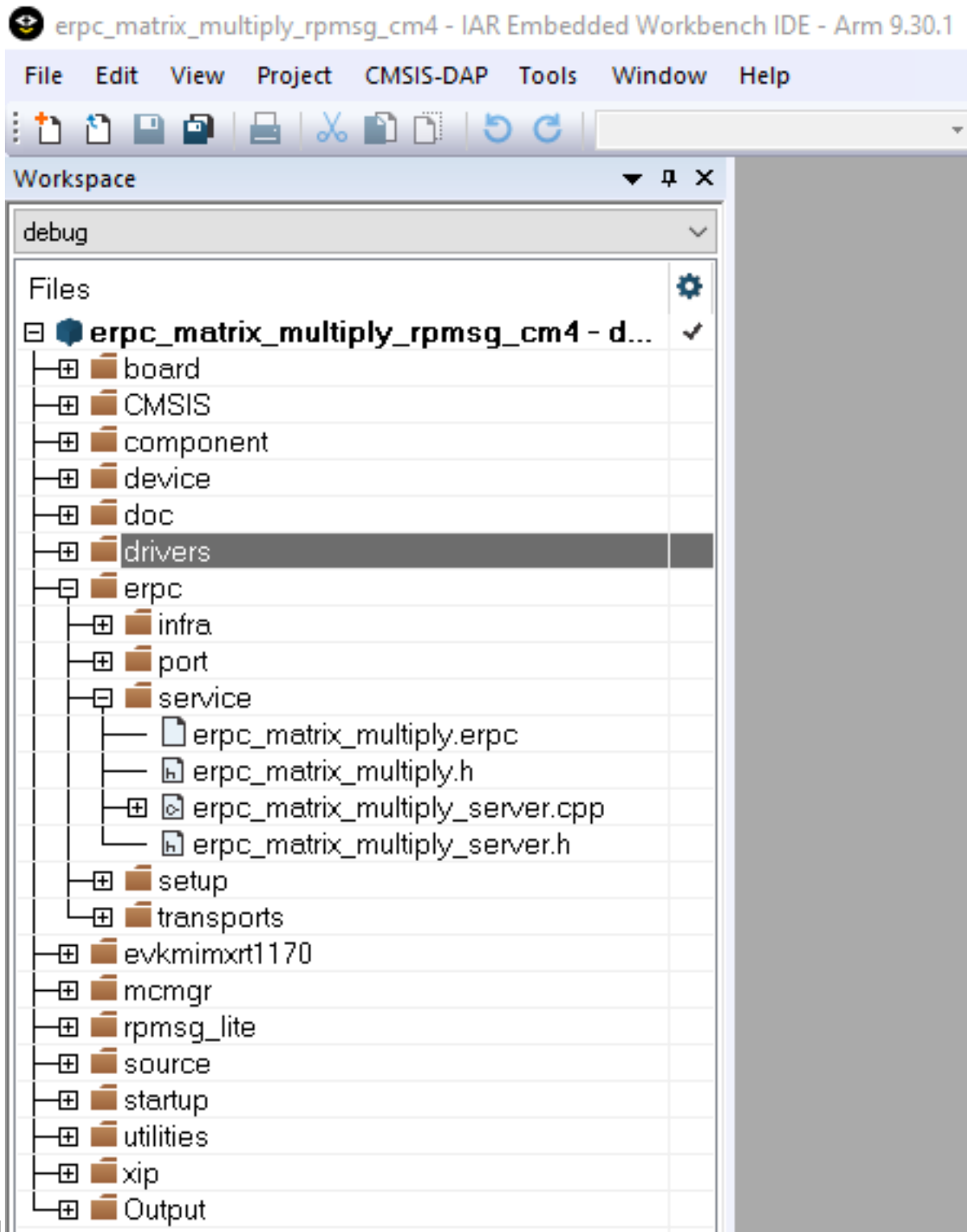
**Parent topic:**Multicore server application

**Server related generated files** The server-related generated files are:

- erpc\_\_matric\_\_multiply.h
- erpc\_\_matrix\_\_multiply\_\_server.h
- erpc\_\_matrix\_\_multiply\_\_server.cpp

The server-related generated files contain the shim code for functions and data types declared in the IDL file. These files also contain functions for the identification of client requested functions, data deserialization, calling requested function's implementations, and data serialization and return, if requested by the client. These shim code files can be found in the following folder:

`<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/boards/evkmimxrt1170/multicore_examples/erpc_common/erpc_matrix_multiply/`



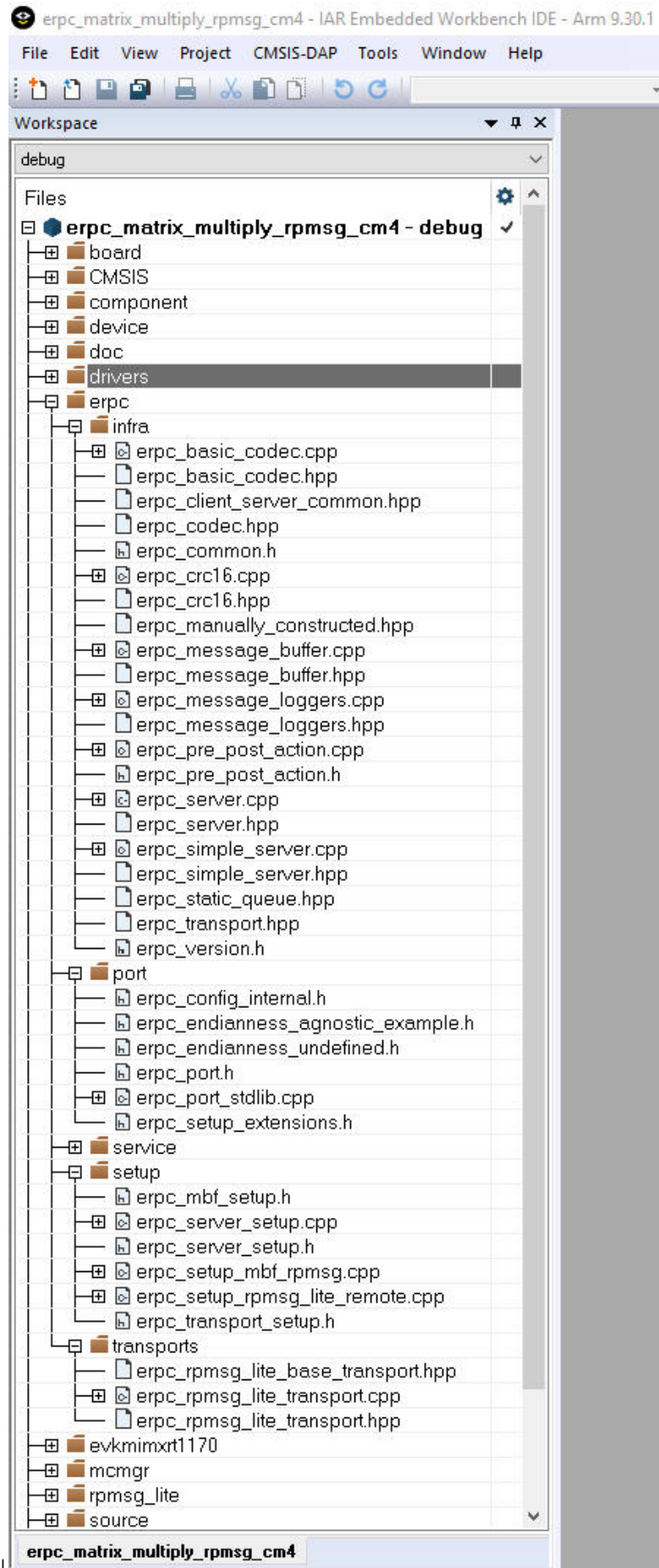
**Parent topic:**Multicore server application

**Server infrastructure files** The eRPC infrastructure files are located in the following folder:

`<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/middleware/multicore/erpc/erpc_c`

The **erpc\_c** folder contains files for creating eRPC client and server applications in the C/C++ language. These files are distributed into subfolders.

- The **infra** subfolder contains C++ infrastructure code used to build server and client applications.
  - Four files, `erpc_server.hpp`, `erpc_server.cpp`, `erpc_simple_server.hpp`, and `erpc_simple_server.cpp`, are used for running the eRPC server on the server-side applications. The simple server is currently the only implementation of the server, and its role is to catch client requests, identify and call requested functions, and send data back when requested.
  - Three files (`erpc_codec.hpp`, `erpc_basic_codec.hpp`, and `erpc_basic_codec.cpp`) are used for codecs. Currently, the basic codec is the initial and only implementation of the codecs.
  - The `erpc_common.hpp` file is used for common eRPC definitions, typedefs, and enums.
  - The `erpc_manually_constructed.hpp` file is used for allocating static storage for the used objects.
  - Message buffer files are used for storing serialized data: `erpc_message_buffer.h` and `erpc_message_buffer.cpp`.
  - The `erpc_transport.h` file defines the abstract interface for transport layer.
- The **port** subfolder contains the eRPC porting layer to adapt to different environments.
  - `erpc_port.h` file contains definition of `erpc_malloc()` and `erpc_free()` functions.
  - `erpc_port_stdlib.cpp` file ensures adaptation to `stdlib`.
  - `erpc_config_internal.h` internal erpc configuration file.
- The **setup** subfolder contains a set of plain C APIs that wrap the C++ infrastructure, providing client and server init and deinit routines that greatly simplify eRPC usage in C-based projects. No knowledge of C++ is required to use these APIs.
  - The `erpc_server_setup.h` and `erpc_server_setup.cpp` files need to be added into the “Matrix multiply” example project to demonstrate the use of C-wrapped functions in this example.
  - The `erpc_transport_setup.h` and `erpc_setup_rpmsg_lite_remote.cpp` files need to be added into the project in order to allow the C-wrapped function for transport layer setup.
  - The `erpc_mbf_setup.h` and `erpc_setup_mbf_rpmsg.cpp` files need to be added into the project in order to allow message buffer factory usage.
- The **transports** subfolder contains transport classes for the different methods of communication supported by eRPC. Some transports are applicable only to host PCs, while others are applicable only to embedded or multicore systems. Most transports have corresponding client and server setup functions in the setup folder.
  - RPMsg-Lite is used as the transport layer for the communication between cores, `erpc_rpmsg_lite_base_transport.hpp`, `erpc_rpmsg_lite_transport.hpp`, and `erpc_rpmsg_lite_transport.cpp` files need to be added into the server project.



|

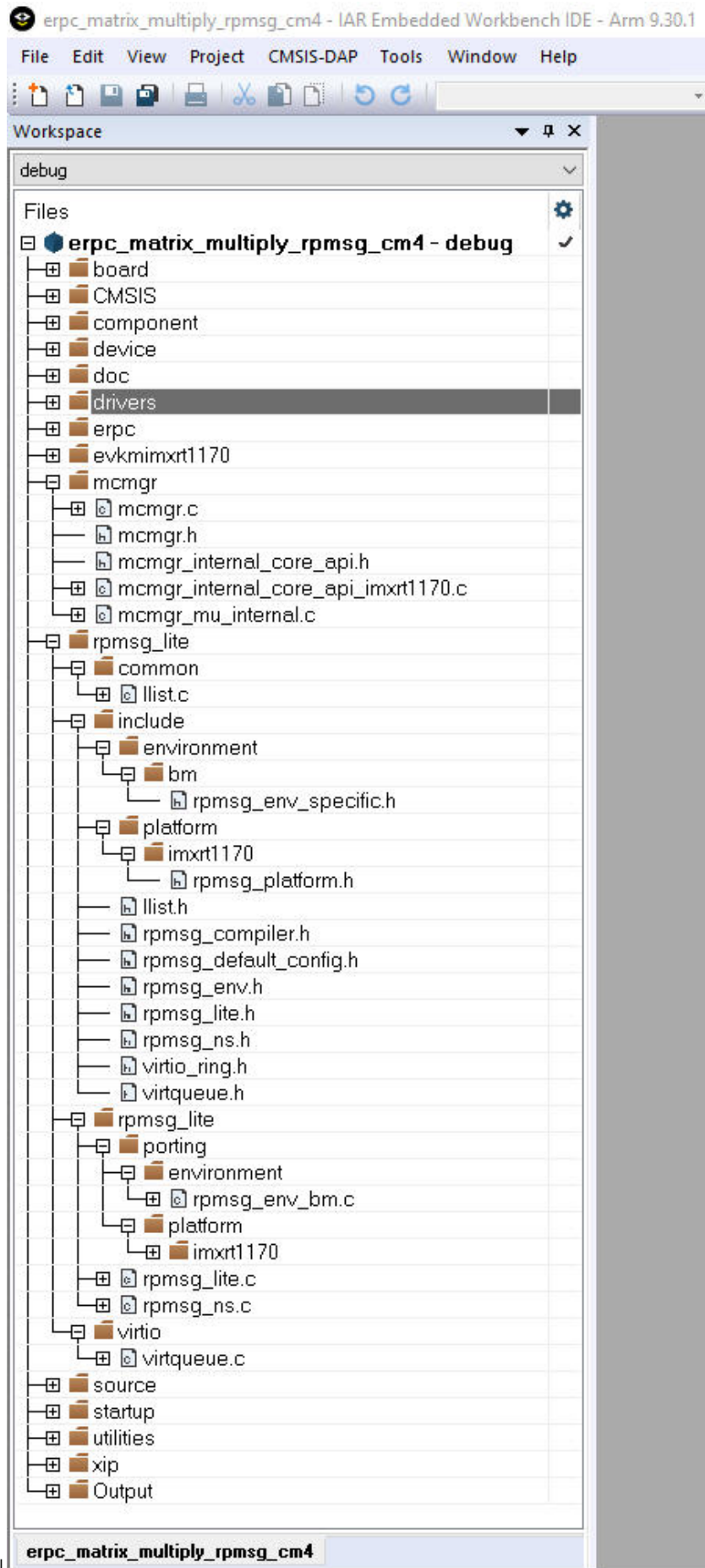
**Parent topic:**Multicore server application

**Server multicore infrastructure files** Because of the RPMsg-Lite (transport layer), it is also necessary to include RPMsg-Lite related files, which are in the following folder:

*<MCUXpressoSDK\_install\_dir>/middleware/multicore/rpmsg\_lite/*

The multicore example applications also use the Multicore Manager software library to control the secondary core startup and shutdown. These source files are located in the following folder:

*<MCUXpressoSDK\_install\_dir>/middleware/multicore/mcmgr/*



|  
**Parent topic:**Multicore server application

**Server user code** The server's user code is stored in the `main_core1.c` file, located in the following folder:

`<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/boards/evkmimxrt1170/multicore_examples/erpc_matrix_multiply_rpmsg/cm4`

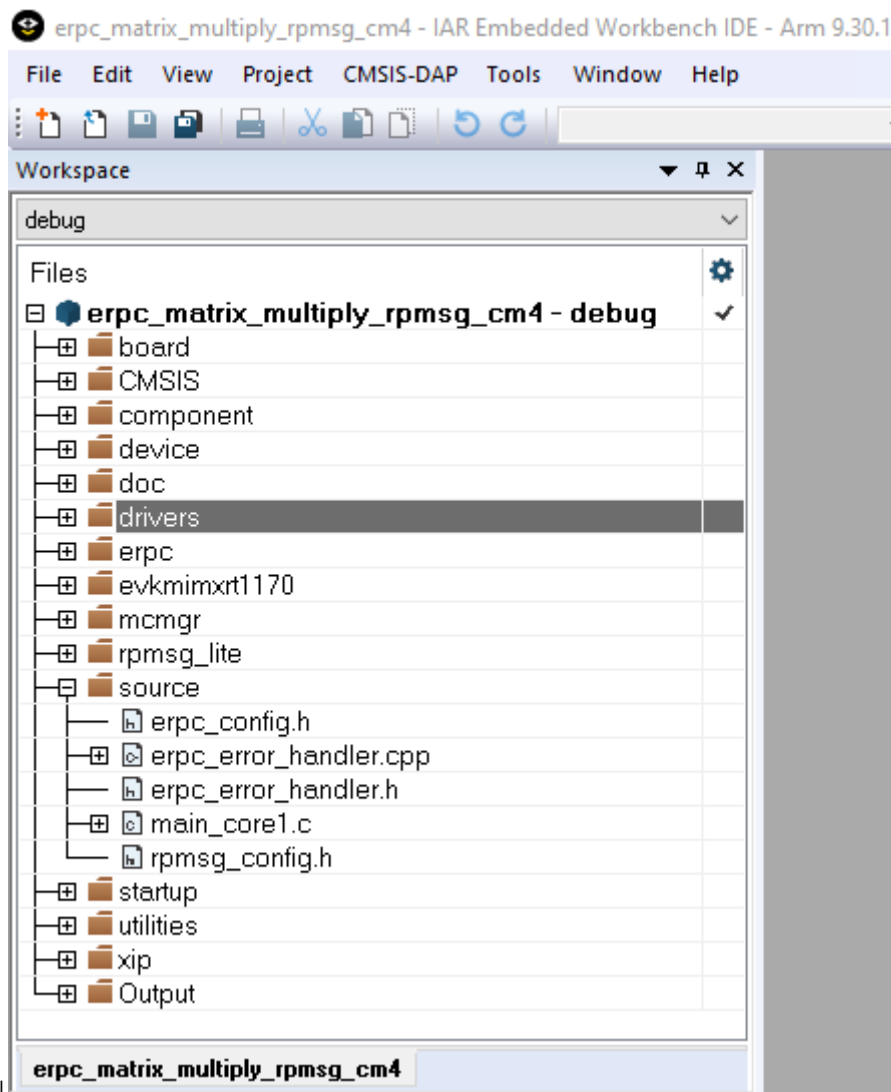
The `main_core1.c` file contains two functions:

- The **main()** function contains the code for the target board and eRPC server initialization. After the initialization, the matrix multiply service is added and the eRPC server waits for client's requests in the while loop.
- The **erpcMatrixMultiply()** function is the user implementation of the eRPC function defined in the IDL file.
- There is the possibility to write the application-specific eRPC error handler. The eRPC error handler of the matrix multiply application is implemented in the `erpc_error_handler.h` and `erpc_error_handler.cpp` files.

The eRPC-relevant code is captured in the following code snippet:

```
/* erpcMatrixMultiply function user implementation */
void erpcMatrixMultiply(const Matrix *matrix1, const Matrix *matrix2, Matrix *result_matrix)
{
 ...
}
int main()
{
 ...
 /* RPMsg-Lite transport layer initialization */
 erpc_transport_t transport;
 transport = erpc_transport_rpmsg_lite_remote_init(src, dst, (void*)startupData,
 ERPC_TRANSPORT_RPMSG_LITE_LINK_ID, SignalReady, NULL);
 ...
 /* MessageBufferFactory initialization */
 erpc_mbf_t message_buffer_factory;
 message_buffer_factory = erpc_mbf_rpmsg_init(transport);
 ...
 /* eRPC server side initialization */
 erpc_server_t server;
 server = erpc_server_init(transport, message_buffer_factory);
 ...
 /* Adding the service to the server */
 erpc_service_t service = create_MatrixMultiplyService_service();
 erpc_add_service_to_server(server, service);
 ...
 while (1)
 {
 /* Process eRPC requests */
 erpc_status_t status = erpc_server_poll(server);
 /* handle error status */
 if (status != kErpcStatus_Success)
 {
 /* print error description */
 erpc_error_handler(status, 0);
 ...
 }
 ...
 }
}
```

Except for the application main file, there are configuration files for the RPMsg-Lite (`rpmsg_config.h`) and eRPC (`erpc_config.h`), located in the `<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/boards/evkmimxrt1170/multicore_examples/ erpc_matrix_multiply_rpmsg` folder.



**Parent topic:**Multicore server application

**Parent topic:**[Create an eRPC application](#)

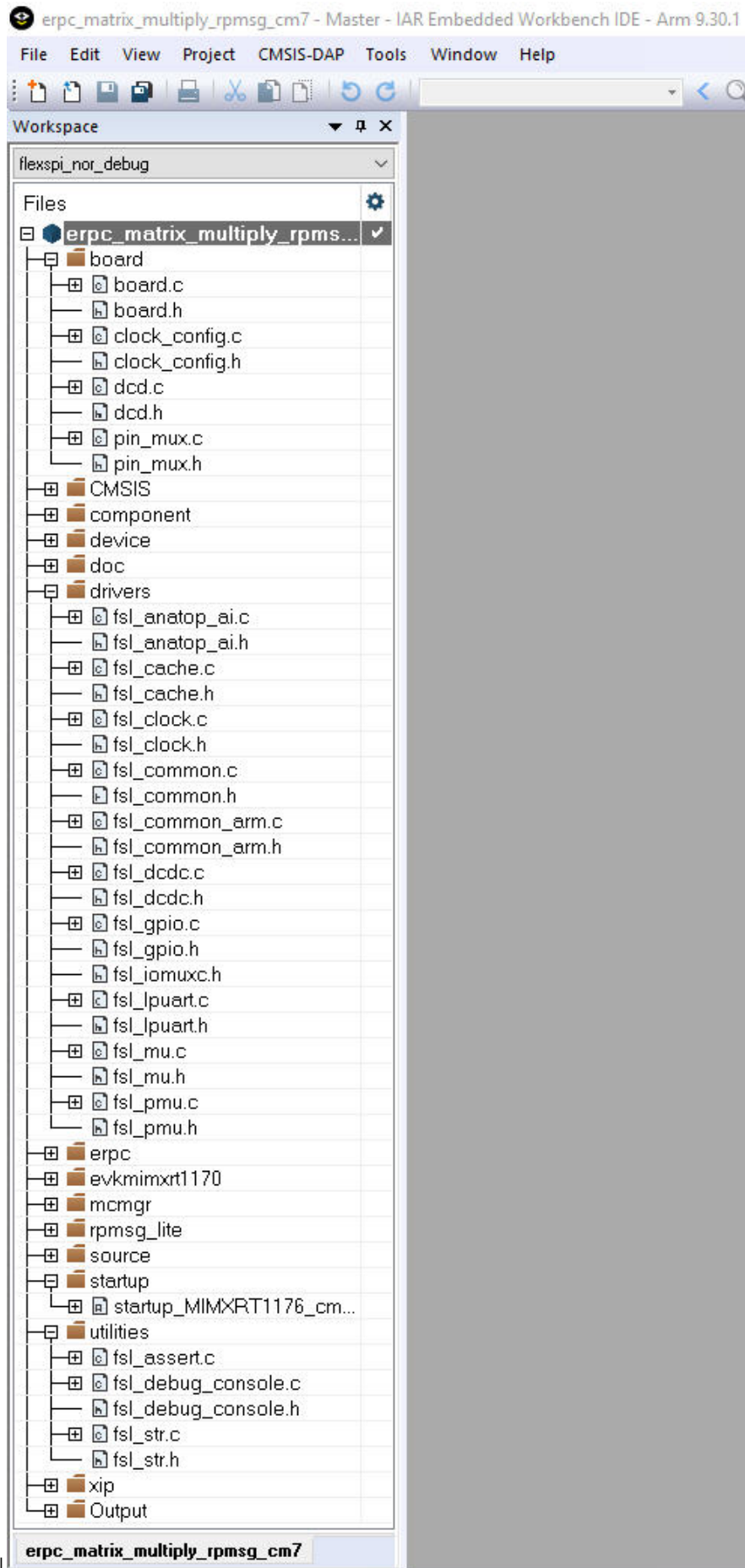
**Multicore client application** The “Matrix multiply” eRPC client project is located in the following folder:

`<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/boards/evkmimxrt1170/multicore_examples/erpc_matrix_multiply_rpmsg/cm7/iar/`

Project files for the eRPC client have the `_cm7` suffix.

**Client project basic source files** The startup files, board-related settings, peripheral drivers, and utilities belong to the basic project source files and form the skeleton of all MCUXpresso SDK applications. These source files are located in the following folders:

- `<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/devices/<device>`
- `<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/boards/<board_name>/multicore_examples/<example_name>/`



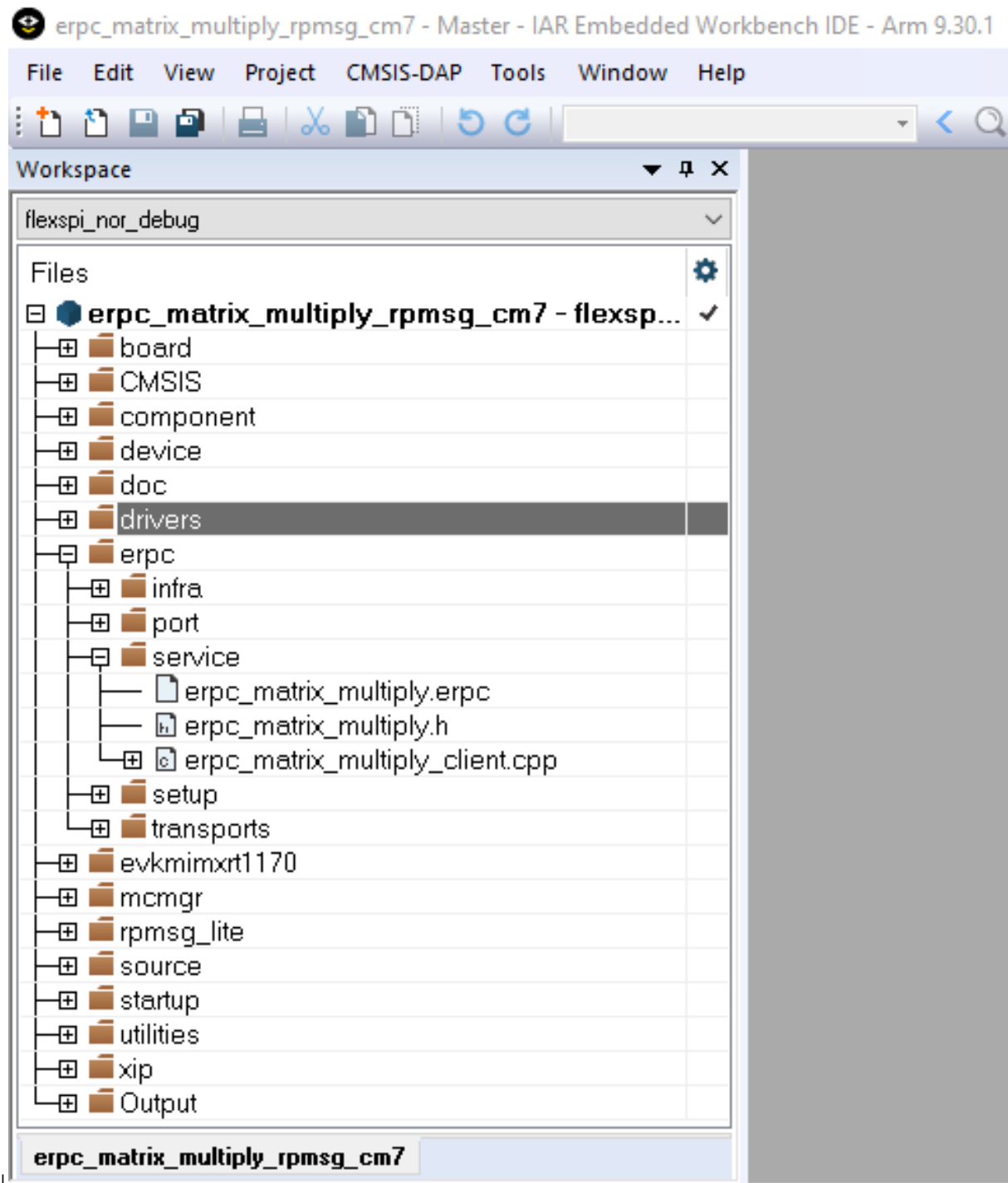
|

**Parent topic:**Multicore client application

**Client-related generated files** The client-related generated files are:

- erpc\_matric\_multiply.h
- erpc\_matrix\_multiply\_client.cpp

These files contain the shim code for the functions and data types declared in the IDL file. These functions also call methods for codec initialization, data serialization, performing eRPC requests, and de-serializing outputs into expected data structures (if return values are expected). These shim code files can be found in the `<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/boards/evkmimxrt1170/multicore_examples/erpc_common/erpc_matrix_multiply/service/` folder.



**Parent topic:**Multicore client application

**Client infrastructure files** The eRPC infrastructure files are located in the following folder:

`<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/middleware/multicore/erpc/erpc_c`

The **erpc\_c** folder contains files for creating eRPC client and server applications in the C/C++ language. These files are distributed into subfolders.

- The **infra** subfolder contains C++ infrastructure code used to build server and client applications.

- Two files, `erpc_client_manager.h` and `erpc_client_manager.cpp`, are used for managing the client-side application. The main purpose of the client files is to create, perform, and release eRPC requests.
- Three files (`erpc_codec.hpp`, `erpc_basic_codec.hpp`, and `erpc_basic_codec.cpp`) are used for codecs. Currently, the basic codec is the initial and only implementation of the codecs.
- `erpc_common.h` file is used for common eRPC definitions, typedefs, and enums.
- `erpc_manually_constructed.hpp` file is used for allocating static storage for the used objects.
- Message buffer files are used for storing serialized data: `erpc_message_buffer.hpp` and `erpc_message_buffer.cpp`.
- `erpc_transport.hpp` file defines the abstract interface for transport layer.

The **port** subfolder contains the eRPC porting layer to adapt to different environments.

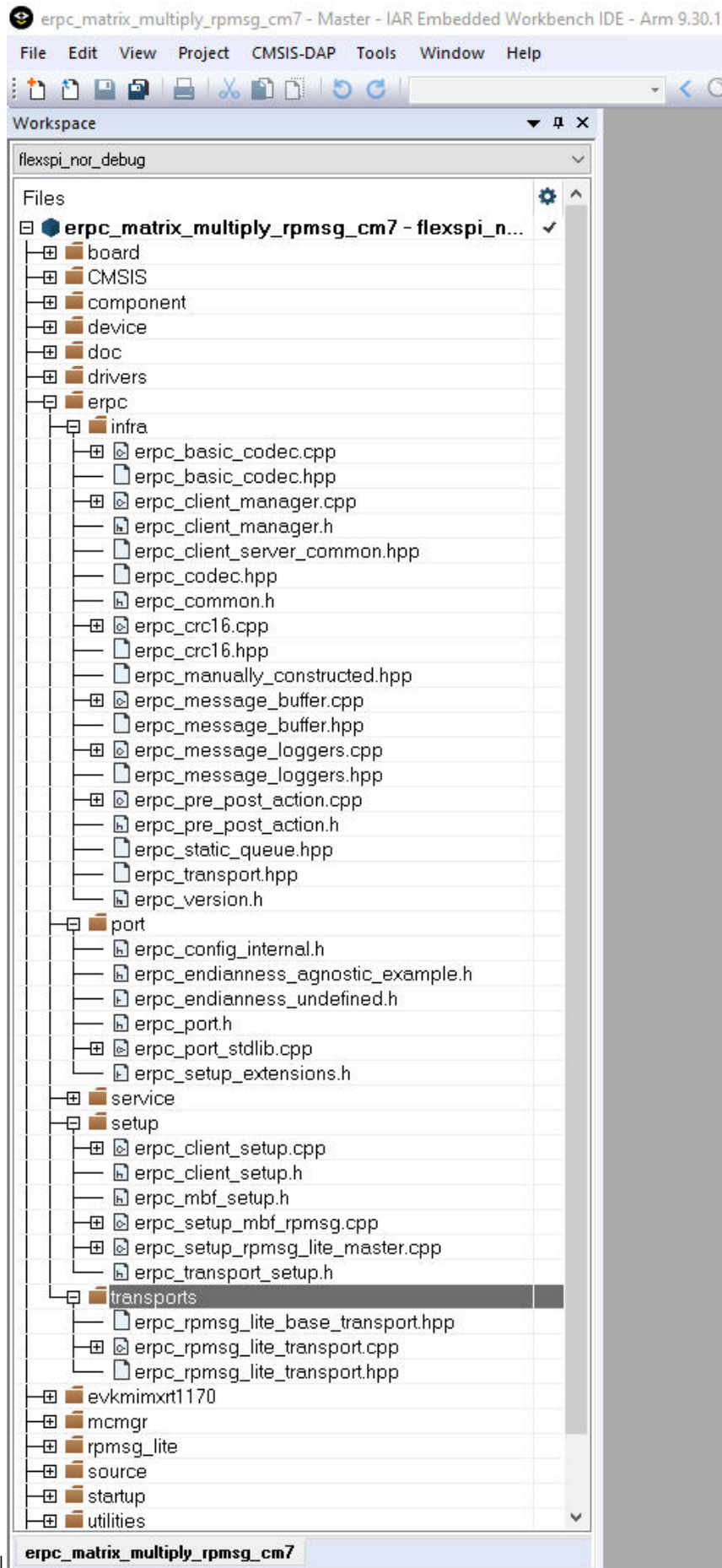
- `erpc_port.h` file contains definition of `erpc_malloc()` and `erpc_free()` functions.
- `erpc_port_stdlib.cpp` file ensures adaptation to `stdlib`.
- `erpc_config_internal.h` internal eRPC configuration file.

The **setup** subfolder contains a set of plain C APIs that wrap the C++ infrastructure, providing client and server init and deinit routines that greatly simplify eRPC usage in C-based projects. No knowledge of C++ is required to use these APIs.

- `erpc_client_setup.h` and `erpc_client_setup.cpp` files needs to be added into the “Matrix multiply” example project to demonstrate the use of C-wrapped functions in this example.
- `erpc_transport_setup.h` and `erpc_setup_rpmsg_lite_master.cpp` files needs to be added into the project in order to allow C-wrapped function for transport layer setup.
- `erpc_mbf_setup.h` and `erpc_setup_mbf_rpmsg.cpp` files needs to be added into the project in order to allow message buffer factory usage.

The **transports** subfolder contains transport classes for the different methods of communication supported by eRPC. Some transports are applicable only to host PCs, while others are applicable only to embedded or multicore systems. Most transports have corresponding client and server setup functions, in the setup folder.

- RPMsg-Lite is used as the transport layer for the communication between cores, `erpc_rpmsg_lite_base_transport.hpp`, `erpc_rpmsg_lite_transport.hpp`, and `erpc_rpmsg_lite_transport.cpp` files needs to be added into the client project.



|

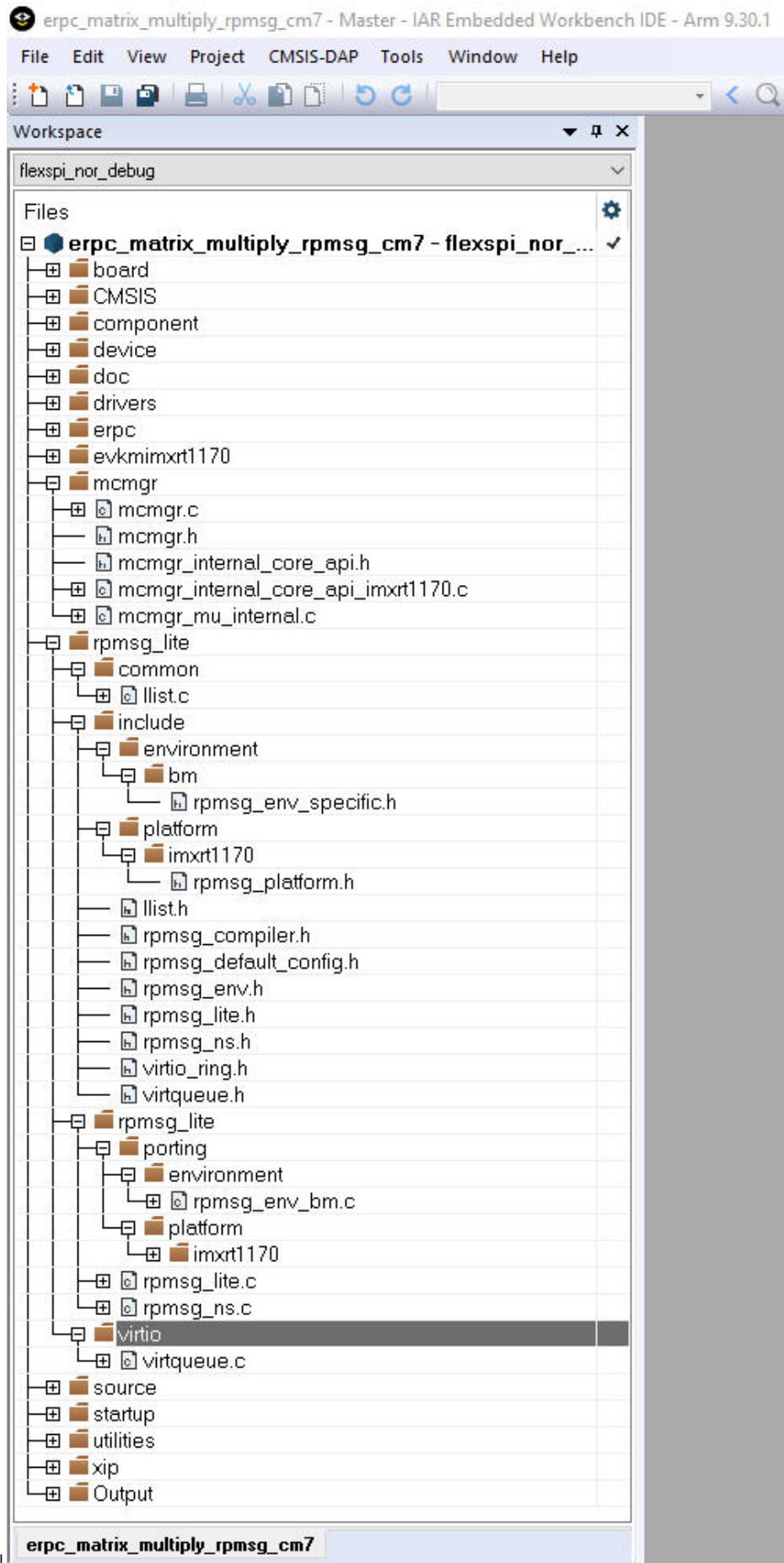
**Parent topic:**Multicore client application

**Client multicore infrastructure files** Because of the RPSMsg-Lite (transport layer), it is also necessary to include RPSMsg-Lite related files, which are in the following folder:

*<MCUXpressoSDK\_install\_dir>/middleware/multicore/rpsmsg\_lite/*

The multicore example applications also use the Multicore Manager software library to control the secondary core startup and shutdown. These source files are located in the following folder:

*<MCUXpressoSDK\_install\_dir>/middleware/multicore/mcmgr/*



|

**Parent topic:**Multicore client application

**Client user code** The client's user code is stored in the main\_core0.c file, located in the following folder:

<MCUXpressoSDK\_install\_dir>/boards/evkmimxrt1170/multicore\_example/erpc\_matrix\_multiply\_rpmsg/cm7

The main\_core0.c file contains the code for target board and eRPC initialization.

- After initialization, the secondary core is released from reset.
- When the secondary core is ready, the primary core initializes two matrix variables.
- The erpcMatrixMultiply eRPC function is called to issue the eRPC request and get the result.

It is possible to write the application-specific eRPC error handler. The eRPC error handler of the matrix multiply application is implemented in erpc\_error\_handler.h and erpc\_error\_handler.cpp files.

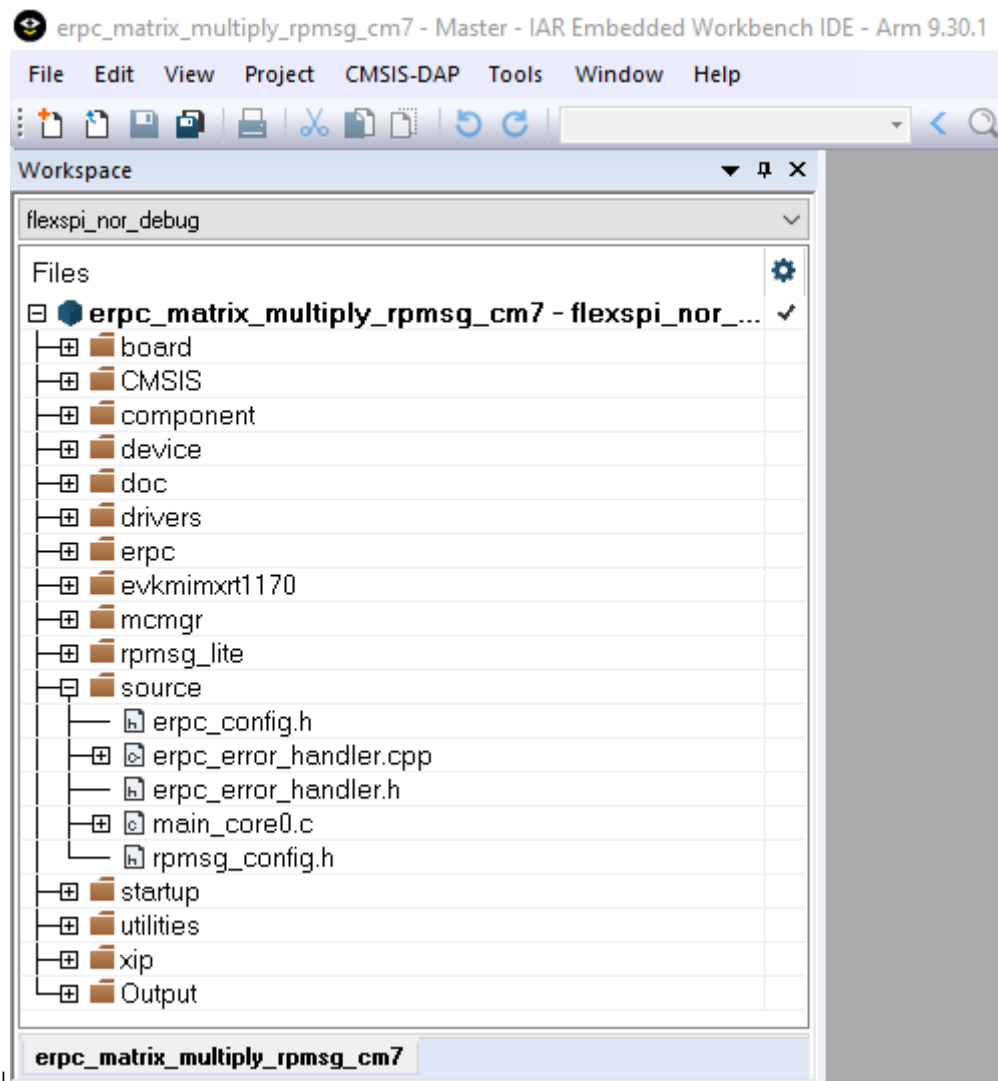
The matrix multiplication can be issued repeatedly, when pressing a software board button.

The eRPC-relevant code is captured in the following code snippet:

```
...
extern bool g_erpc_error_occurred;
...
/* Declare matrix arrays */
Matrix matrix1 = {0}, matrix2 = {0}, result_matrix = {0};
...
/* RPSMsg-Lite transport layer initialization */
erpc_transport_t transport;
transport = erpc_transport_rpmsg_lite_master_init(src, dst,
ERPC_TRANSPORT_RPMSG_LITE_LINK_ID);
...
/* MessageBufferFactory initialization */
erpc_mbf_t message_buffer_factory;
message_buffer_factory = erpc_mbf_rpmsg_init(transport);
...
/* eRPC client side initialization */
erpc_client_t client;
client = erpc_client_init(transport, message_buffer_factory);
...
/* Set default error handler */
erpc_client_set_error_handler(client, erpc_error_handler);
...
while (1)
{
/* Invoke the erpcMatrixMultiply function */
erpcMatrixMultiply(matrix1, matrix2, result_matrix);
...
/* Check if some error occurred in eRPC */
if (g_erpc_error_occurred)
{
/* Exit program loop */
break;
}
...
}
```

Except for the application main file, there are configuration files for the RPSMsg-Lite (rpmsg\_config.h) and eRPC (erpc\_config.h), located in the following folder:

<MCUXpressoSDK\_install\_dir>/boards/evkmimxrt1170/multicore\_examples/erpc\_matrix\_multiply\_rpmsg



Parent topic: Multicore client application

Parent topic: [Create an eRPC application](#)

**Multiprocessor server application** The “Matrix multiply” eRPC server project for multiprocessor applications is located in the `<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/boards/<board_name>/multiprocessor_examples/erpc_server_matrix_multiply_<transport_layer>` folder.

Most of the multiprocessor application setup is the same as for the multicore application. The multiprocessor server application requires server-related generated files (server shim code), server infrastructure files, and the server user code. There is no need for server multicore infrastructure files (MCMGR and RPSMsg-Lite). The RPSMsg-Lite transport layer is replaced either by SPI or UART transports. The following table shows the required transport-related files per each transport type.

SPI	<eRPC base directory>/erpc_c/setup/erpc_setup_(d)spi_slave.cpp
	<eRPC base directory>/erpc_c/transports/erpc_(d)spi_slave_transport.hpp
	<eRPC base directory>/erpc_c/transports/erpc_(d)spi_slave_transport.cpp
UART	<eRPC base directory>/erpc_c/setup/erpc_setup_uart_cmsis.cpp

<eRPC base directory>/erpc\_c/transport/erpc\_uart\_cmsis\_transport.hpp

<eRPC base directory>/erpc\_c/transport/erpc\_uart\_cmsis\_transport.cpp

|

**Server user code** The server's user code is stored in the main\_server.c file, located in the <MCUXpressoSDK\_install\_dir>/boards/<board\_name>/multiprocessor\_examples/erpc\_server\_matrix\_multiply\_<transport\_layer>/ folder.

The eRPC-relevant code with UART as a transport is captured in the following code snippet:

```

/* erpcMatrixMultiply function user implementation */
void erpcMatrixMultiply(Matrix matrix1, Matrix matrix2, Matrix result_matrix)
{
 ...
}
int main()
{
 ...
 /* UART transport layer initialization, ERPC_DEMO_UART is the structure of CMSIS UART driver
 ↪operations */
 erpc_transport_t transport;
 transport = erpc_transport_cmsis_uart_init((void *)&ERPC_DEMO_UART);
 ...
 /* MessageBufferFactory initialization */
 erpc_mbf_t message_buffer_factory;
 message_buffer_factory = erpc_mbf_dynamic_init();
 ...
 /* eRPC server side initialization */
 erpc_server_t server;
 server = erpc_server_init(transport, message_buffer_factory);
 ...
 /* Adding the service to the server */
 erpc_service_t service = create_MatrixMultiplyService_service();
 erpc_add_service_to_server(server, service);
 ...
 while (1)
 {
 /* Process eRPC requests */
 erpc_status_t status = erpc_server_poll(server)
 /* handle error status */
 if (status != kErpcStatus_Success)
 {
 /* print error description */
 erpc_error_handler(status, 0);
 ...
 }
 ...
 }
}

```

**Parent topic:**Multiprocessor server application

**Multiprocessor client application** The “Matrix multiply” eRPC client project for multiprocessor applications is located in the <MCUXpressoSDK\_install\_dir>/boards/<board\_name>/multiprocessor\_examples/erpc\_client\_matrix\_multiply\_<transport\_layer>/iar/ folder.

Most of the multiprocessor application setup is the same as for the multicore application. The multiprocessor server application requires client-related generated files (server shim code),

client infrastructure files, and the client user code. There is no need for client multicore infrastructure files (MCMGR and RMPMsg-Lite). The RMPMsg-Lite transport layer is replaced either by SPI or UART transports. The following table shows the required transport-related files per each transport type.

```
|SPI| <eRPC base directory>/erpc_c/setup/erpc_setup_(d)spi_master.cpp
<eRPC base directory>/erpc_c/transports/ erpc_(d)spi_master_transport.hpp
<eRPC base directory>/erpc_c/transports/ erpc_(d)spi_master_transport.cpp
| |UART| <eRPC base directory>/erpc_c/setup/erpc_setup_uart_cmsis.cpp
<eRPC base directory>/erpc_c/transports/erpc_uart_cmsis_transport.hpp
<eRPC base directory>/erpc_c/transports/erpc_uart_cmsis_transport.cpp
|
```

**Client user code** The client's user code is stored in the `main_client.c` file, located in the `<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/boards/<board_name>/multiprocessor_examples/erpc_client_matrix_multiply_<transport_layer>/` folder.

The eRPC-relevant code with UART as a transport is captured in the following code snippet:

```
...
extern bool g_erpc_error_occurred;
...
/* Declare matrix arrays */
Matrix matrix1 = {0}, matrix2 = {0}, result_matrix = {0};
...
/* UART transport layer initialization, ERPC_DEMO_UART is the structure of CMSIS UART driver_
↳operations */
erpc_transport_t transport;
transport = erpc_transport_cmsis_uart_init((void *)&ERPC_DEMO_UART);
...
/* MessageBufferFactory initialization */
erpc_mbf_t message_buffer_factory;
message_buffer_factory = erpc_mbf_dynamic_init();
...
/* eRPC client side initialization */
erpc_client_t client;
client = erpc_client_init(transport,message_buffer_factory);
...
/* Set default error handler */
erpc_client_set_error_handler(client, erpc_error_handler);
...
while (1)
{
/* Invoke the erpcMatrixMultiply function */
erpcMatrixMultiply(matrix1, matrix2, result_matrix);
...
/* Check if some error occurred in eRPC */
if (g_erpc_error_occurred)
{
/* Exit program loop */
break;
}
...
}
```

**Parent topic:**Multiprocessor client application

**Parent topic:**Multiprocessor server application

Parent topic:[Create an eRPC application](#)

**Running the eRPC application** Follow the instructions in *Getting Started with MCUXpresso SDK* (document MCUXSDKGSUG) (located in the <MCUXpressoSDK\_install\_dir>/docs folder), to load both the primary and the secondary core images into the on-chip memory, and then effectively debug the dual-core application. After the application is running, the serial console should look like:

```

COM49:115200baud - Tera Term VT
File Edit Setup Control Window KanjiCode Help

Primary core started

Matrix #1
=====
 21 33 37 37 9
 23 45 43 0 32
 38 44 8 15 36
 18 18 38 44 16
 22 23 0 38 7

Matrix #2
=====
 11 23 27 45 11
 7 19 23 24 6
 32 26 49 43 16
 22 48 36 34 41
 27 20 32 31 11

eRPC request is sent to the server

Secondary core is running

Result matrix
=====
2703 4028 4759 4865 2637
2808 3142 4787 4956 1563
2284 3358 4122 4736 1821
2940 4176 4858 4868 2894
1428 2907 2715 3051 2015

Press the SW2 button to initiate the next matrix multiplication

```

For multiprocessor applications that are running between PC and the target evaluation board or between two boards, follow the instructions in the accompanied example readme files that provide details about the proper board setup and the PC side setup (Python).

Parent topic:[Create an eRPC application](#)

Parent topic:[eRPC example](#)

**Other uses for an eRPC implementation** The eRPC implementation is generic, and its use is not limited to just embedded applications. When creating an eRPC application outside the embedded world, the same principles apply. For example, this manual can be used to create an eRPC application for a PC running the Linux operating system. Based on the used type of transport medium, existing transport layers can be used, or new transport layers can be implemented.

For more information and erpc updates see the [github.com/EmbeddedRPC](https://github.com/EmbeddedRPC).

**Note about the source code in the document** Example code shown in this document has the following copyright and BSD-3-Clause license:

Copyright 2024 NXP Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
3. Neither the name of the copyright holder nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS “AS IS” AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT HOLDER OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

**Changelog eRPC** All notable changes to this project will be documented in this file.

The format is based on [Keep a Changelog](#), and this project adheres to [Semantic Versioning](#).

## Unreleased

### Added

### Updated

- eRPC Zephyr module port updated for Zephyr version 4.4

### Fixed

- Python code of the eRPC infrastructure was updated to match the proper python code style, add type annotations and improve readability.
- eRPC: Several MISRA violations addressed.

## 1.14.0

### Added

- Added Cmake/Kconfig support.
- Made java code jdk11 compliant, GitHub PR #432.
- Added imxrt1186 support into mu transport layer.
- erpcgen: Added assert for listType before usage, GitHub PR #406.

**Fixed**

- eRPC: Sources reformatted.
- erpc: Fixed typo in semaphore get (mutex -> semaphore), and write it can fail in case of timeout, GitHub PR #446.
- erpc: Free the arbitrated client token from client manager, GitHub PR #444.
- erpc: Fixed Makefile, install the erpc\_simple\_server header, GitHub PR #447.
- erpc\_python: Fixed possible AttributeError and OSError on calling TCPTransport.close(), GitHub PR #438.
- Examples and tests consolidated.

**1.13.0****Added**

- erpc: Add BSD-3 license to endianness agnostic files, GitHub PR #417.
- eRPC: Add new Zephyr-related transports (zephyr\_uart, zephyr\_mbox).
- eRPC: Add new Zephyr-related examples.

**Fixed**

- eRPC,erpcgen: Fixing/improving markdown files, GitHub PR #395.
- eRPC: Fix Python client TCPTransports not being able to close, GitHub PR #390.
- eRPC,erpcgen: Align switch brackets, GitHub PR #396.
- erpc: Fix zephyr uart transport, GitHub PR #410.
- erpc: UART ZEPHYR Transport stop to work after a few transactions when using USB-CDC resolved, GitHub PR #420.

**Removed**

- eRPC,erpcgen: Remove cstbool library, GitHub PR #403.

**1.12.0****Added**

- eRPC: Add dynamic/static option for transport init, GitHub PR #361.
- eRPC,erpcgen: Winsock2 support, GitHub PR #365.
- eRPC,erpcgen: Feature/support multiple clients, GitHub PR #271.
- eRPC,erpcgen: Feature/buffer head - Framed transport header data stored in Message-Buffer, GitHub PR #378.
- eRPC,erpcgen: Add experimental Java support.

## Fixed

- eRPC: Fix receive error value for spidev, GitHub PR #363.
- eRPC: UartTransport::init adaptation to changed driver.
- eRPC: Fix typo in assert, GitHub PR #371.
- eRPC,erpcgen: Move enums to enum classes, GitHub PR #379.
- eRPC: Fixed rpmsg tty transport to work with serial transport, GitHub PR #373.

## 1.11.0

### Fixed

- eRPC: Makefiles update, GitHub PR #301.
- eRPC: Resolving warnings in Python, GitHub PR #325.
- eRPC: Python3.8 is not ready for usage of typing.Any type, GitHub PR #325.
- eRPC: Improved codec function to use reference instead of address, GitHub PR #324.
- eRPC: Fix NULL check for pending client creation, GitHub PR #341.
- eRPC: Replace sprintf with snprintf, GitHub PR #343.
- eRPC: Use MU\_SendMsg blocking call in MU transport.
- eRPC: New LPSPI and LPI2C transport layers.
- eRPC: Freeing static objects, GitHub PR #353.
- eRPC: Fixed casting in deinit functions, GitHub PR #354.
- eRPC: Align LIBUSBSIO.GetNumPorts API use with libusbsio python module v. 2.1.11.
- erpcgen: Renamed temp variable to more generic one, GitHub PR #321.
- erpcgen: Add check that string read is not more than max length, GitHub PR #328.
- erpcgen: Move to g++ in pytest, GitHub PR #335.
- erpcgen: Use build=release for make, GitHub PR #334.
- erpcgen: Removed boost dependency, GitHub PR #346.
- erpcgen: Mingw support, GitHub PR #344.
- erpcgen: VS build update, GitHub PR #347.
- erpcgen: Modified name for common types macro scope, GitHub PR #337.
- erpcgen: Fixed memcpy for template, GitHub PR #352.
- eRPC,erpcgen: Change default build target to release + adding artefacts, GitHub PR #334.
- eRPC,erpcgen: Remove redundant includes, GitHub PR #338.
- eRPC,erpcgen: Many minor code improvements, GitHub PR #323.

## 1.10.0

### Fixed

- eRPC: MU transport layer switched to blocking MU\_SendMsg() API use.

### 1.10.0

#### Added

- eRPC: Add TCP\_NODELAY option to python, GitHub PR #298.

#### Fixed

- eRPC: MUPort adaptation to new supported SoCs.
- eRPC: Simplifying CI with installing dependencies using shell script, GitHub PR #267.
- eRPC: Using event for waiting for sock connection in TCP python server, formatting python code, C specific includes, GitHub PR #269.
- eRPC: Endianness agnostic update, GitHub PR #276.
- eRPC: Assertion added for functions which are returning status on freeing memory, GitHub PR #277.
- eRPC: Fixed closing arbitrator server in unit tests, GitHub PR #293.
- eRPC: Makefile updated to reflect the correct header names, GitHub PR #295.
- eRPC: Compare value length to used length() in reading data from message buffer, GitHub PR #297.
- eRPC: Replace EXPECT\_TRUE with EXPECT\_EQ in unit tests, GitHub PR #318.
- eRPC: Adapt rpmsg\_lite based transports to changed rpmsg\_lite\_wait\_for\_link\_up() API parameters.
- eRPC, erpcgen: Better distinguish which file can and cannot be linked by C linker, GitHub PR #266.
- eRPC, erpcgen: Stop checking if pointer is NULL before sending it to the erpc\_free function, GitHub PR #275.
- eRPC, erpcgen: Changed api to count with more interfaces, GitHub PR #304.
- erpcgen: Check before reading from heap the buffer boundaries, GitHub PR #287.
- erpcgen: Several fixes for tests and CI, GitHub PR #289.
- erpcgen: Refactoring erpcgen code, GitHub PR #302.
- erpcgen: Fixed assigning const value to enum, GitHub PR #309.
- erpcgen: Enable runTesttest\_enumErrorCode\_allDirection, serialize enums as int32 instead of uint32.

### 1.9.1

#### Fixed

- eRPC: Construct the USB CDC transport, rather than a client, GitHub PR #220.
- eRPC: Fix premature import of package, causing failure when attempting installation of Python library in a clean environment, GitHub PR #38, #226.
- eRPC: Improve python detection in make, GitHub PR #225.
- eRPC: Fix several warnings with deprecated call in pytest, GitHub PR #227.
- eRPC: Fix freeing union members when only default need be freed, GitHub PR #228.
- eRPC: Fix making test under Linux, GitHub PR #229.

- eRPC: Assert costumizing, GitHub PR #148.
- eRPC: Fix corrupt clientList bug in TransportArbitrator, GitHub PR #199.
- eRPC: Fix build issue when invoking g++ with -Wno-error=free-nonheap-object, GitHub PR #233.
- eRPC: Fix inout cases, GitHub PR #237.
- eRPC: Remove ERPC\_PRE\_POST\_ACTION dependency on return type, GitHub PR #238.
- eRPC: Adding NULL to ptr when codec function failed, fixing memcopy when fail is present during deserialization, GitHub PR #253.
- eRPC: MessageBuffer usage improvement, GitHub PR #258.
- eRPC: Get rid for serial and enum34 dependency (enum34 is in python3 since 3.4 (from 2014)), GitHub PR #247.
- eRPC: Several MISRA violations addressed.
- eRPC: Fix timeout for Freertos semaphore, GitHub PR #251.
- eRPC: Use of rpmsg\_lite\_wait\_for\_link\_up() in rpmsg\_lite based transports, GitHub PR #223.
- eRPC: Fix codec nullptr dereferencing, GitHub PR #264.
- erpcgen: Fix two syntax errors in erpcgen Python output related to non-encapsulated unions, improved test for union, GitHub PR #206, #224.
- erpcgen: Fix serialization of list/binary types, GitHub PR #240.
- erpcgen: Fix empty list parsing, GitHub PR #72.
- erpcgen: Fix templates for malloc errors, GitHub PR #110.
- erpcgen: Get rid of encapsulated union declarations in global scale, improve enum usage in unions, GitHub PR #249, #250.
- erpcgen: Fix compile error:UniqueIdChecker.cpp:156:104:'sort' was not declared, GitHub PR #265.

## 1.9.0

### Added

- eRPC: Allow used LIBUSB\_SIO device index being specified from the Python command line argument.

### Fixed

- eRPC: Improving template usage, GitHub PR #153.
- eRPC: run\_clang\_format.py cleanup, GitHub PR #177.
- eRPC: Build TCP transport setup code into liberpc, GitHub PR #179.
- eRPC: Fix multiple definitions of g\_client error, GitHub PR #180.
- eRPC: Fix memset past end of buffer in erpc\_setup\_mbf\_static.cpp, GitHub PR #184.
- eRPC: Fix deprecated error with newer pytest version, GitHub PR #203.
- eRPC, erpcgen: Static allocation support and usage of rpmsg static FreeRTOSs related API, GitHub PR #168, #169.
- erpcgen: Remove redundant module imports in erpcgen, GitHub PR #196.

### 1.8.1

#### Added

- eRPC: New i2c\_slave\_transport transport introduced.

#### Fixed

- eRPC: Fix misra erpc c, GitHub PR #158.
- eRPC: Allow conditional compilation of message\_loggers and pre\_post\_action.
- eRPC: (D)SPI slave transports updated to avoid busy loops in rtos environments.
- erpcgen: Re-implement EnumMember::hasValue(), GitHub PR #159.
- erpcgen: Fixing several misra issues in shim code, erpcgen and unit tests updated, GitHub PR #156.
- erpcgen: Fix bison file, GitHub PR #156.

### 1.8.0

#### Added

- eRPC: Support win32 thread, GitHub PR #108.
- eRPC: Add mbed support for malloc() and free(), GitHub PR #92.
- eRPC: Introduced pre and post callbacks for eRPC call, GitHub PR #131.
- eRPC: Introduced new USB CDC transport.
- eRPC: Introduced new Linux spidev-based transport.
- eRPC: Added formatting extension for VSC, GitHub PR #134.
- erpcgen: Introduce ustring type for unsigned char and force cast to char\*, GitHub PR #125.

#### Fixed

- eRPC: Update makefile.
- eRPC: Fixed warnings and error with using MessageLoggers, GitHub PR #127.
- eRPC: Extend error msg for python server service handle function, GitHub PR #132.
- eRPC: Update CMSIS UART transport layer to avoid busy loops in rtos environments, introduce semaphores.
- eRPC: SPI transport update to allow usage without handshaking GPIO.
- eRPC: Native \_WIN32 erpc serial transport and threading.
- eRPC: Arbitrator deadlock fix, TCP transport updated, TCP setup functions introduced, GitHub PR #121.
- eRPC: Update of matrix\_multiply.py example: Add -serial and -baud argument, GitHub PR #137.
- eRPC: Update of .clang-format, GitHub PR #140.
- eRPC: Update of erpc\_framed\_transport.cpp: return error if received message has zero length, GitHub PR #141.

- eRPC, erpcgen: Fixed error messages produced by -Wall -Wextra -Wshadow -pedantic-errors compiler flags, GitHub PR #136, #139.
- eRPC, erpcgen: Core re-formatted using Clang version 10.
- erpcgen: Enable deallocation in server shim code when callback/function pointer used as out parameter in IDL.
- erpcgen: Removed '\$' character from generated symbol name in '\_\$union' suffix, GitHub PR #103.
- erpcgen: Resolved mismatch between C++ and Python for callback index type, GitHub PR #111.
- erpcgen: Python generator improvements, GitHub PR #100, #118.
- erpcgen: Fixed error messages produced by -Wall -Wextra -Wshadow -pedantic-errors compiler flags, GitHub PR #136.

#### 1.7.4

##### Added

- eRPC: Support MU transport unit testing.
- eRPC: Adding mbed os support.

##### Fixed

- eRPC: Unit test code updated to handle service add and remove operations.
- eRPC: Several MISRA issues in rpmsg-based transports addressed.
- eRPC: Fixed Linux/TCP acceptance tests in release target.
- eRPC: Minor documentation updates, code formatting.
- erpcgen: Whitespace removed from C common header template.

#### 1.7.3

##### Fixed

- eRPC: Improved the test\_callbacks logic to be more understandable and to allow requested callback execution on the server side.
- eRPC: TransportArbitrator::prepareClientReceive modified to avoid incorrect return value type.
- eRPC: The ClientManager and the ArbitratedClientManager updated to avoid performing client requests when the previous serialization phase fails.
- erpcgen: Generate the shim code for destroy of statically allocated services.

#### 1.7.2

##### Added

- eRPC: Add missing doxygen comments for transports.

### Fixed

- eRPC: Improved support of const types.
- eRPC: Fixed Mac build.
- eRPC: Fixed serializing python list.
- eRPC: Documentation update.

### 1.7.1

### Fixed

- eRPC: Fixed semaphore in static message buffer factory.
- erpcgen: Fixed MU received error flag.
- erpcgen: Fixed tcp transport.

### 1.7.0

### Added

- eRPC: List names are based on their types. Names are more deterministic.
- eRPC: Service objects are as a default created as global static objects.
- eRPC: Added missing doxygen comments.
- eRPC: Added support for 64bit numbers.
- eRPC: Added support of program language specific annotations.

### Fixed

- eRPC: Improved code size of generated code.
- eRPC: Generating crc value is optional.
- eRPC: Fixed CMSIS Uart driver. Removed dependency on KSDK.
- eRPC: Forbid users use reserved words.
- eRPC: Removed outByref for function parameters.
- eRPC: Optimized code style of callback functions.

### 1.6.0

### Added

- eRPC: Added @nullable support for scalar types.

### Fixed

- eRPC: Improved code size of generated code.
- eRPC: Improved eRPC nested calls.
- eRPC: Improved eRPC list length variable serialization.

## 1.5.0

### Added

- eRPC: Added support for unions type non-wrapped by structure.
- eRPC: Added callbacks support.
- eRPC: Added support @external annotation for functions.
- eRPC: Added support @name annotation.
- eRPC: Added Messaging Unit transport layer.
- eRPC: Added RPMSG Lite RTOS TTY transport layer.
- eRPC: Added version verification and IDL version verification between eRPC code and eRPC generated shim code.
- eRPC: Added support of shared memory pointer.
- eRPC: Added annotation to forbid generating const keyword for function parameters.
- eRPC: Added python matrix multiply example.
- eRPC: Added nested call support.
- eRPC: Added struct member “byref” option support.
- eRPC: Added support of forward declarations of structures
- eRPC: Added Python RPMsg Multiendpoint kernel module support
- eRPC: Added eRPC sniffer tool

## 1.4.0

### Added

- eRPC: New RPMsg-Lite Zero Copy (RPMsgZC) transport layer.

### Fixed

- eRPC: win\_flex\_bison.zip for windows updated.
- eRPC: Use one codec (instead of inCodec outCodec).

## [1.3.0]

### Added

- eRPC: New annotation types introduced (@length, @max\_length, ...).
- eRPC: Support for running both erpc client and erpc server on one side.
- eRPC: New transport layers for (LP)UART, (D)SPI.
- eRPC: Error handling support.

## [1.2.0]

#### Added

- eRPC source directory organization changed.
- Many eRPC improvements.

#### [1.1.0]

#### Added

- Multicore SDK 1.1.0 ported to KSDK 2.0.0.

#### [1.0.0]

#### Added

- Initial Release

## 1.7 Wireless

### 1.7.1 NXP Wireless Framework and Stacks

#### Wi-Fi, Bluetooth, 802.15.4

##### Application notes

- [Link AN12918-Wi-Fi-Tx-Power-Table-and-Channel-Scan-Management-for-i.MX-RT-SDK.pdf](#)
- [Link TN00066-WFA-Derivative-Certification-Process.pdf](#)

##### User manuals

- [Link UM11441-Getting-Started-with-NXP-based-Wireless-Modules-and-i.MX-RT-Platforms.pdf](#)
- [UM11442-NXP-Wi-Fi-and-Bluetooth-Demo-Applications-for-i.MX-RT-Platforms.pdf](#)
- [Link UM11443-NXP-Wi-Fi-and-Bluetooth-Debug-Feature-Configuration-Guide-for-i.MX-RT-Platforms.pdf](#)
- [Link UM11567-WFA-Certification-Guide-for-NXP-based-Wireless-Modules-on-i.MX-RT-Platform-Running-RTOS.pdf](#)

##### Release notes

#### Wireless SoC features and release notes for FreeRTOS

**About this document** This document provides information about the supported features, release versions, fixed and/or known issues, performance of the Wi-Fi, Bluetooth/802.15.4 radios, including the coexistence.

The SDK release version 25.12.00 has been tested for the wireless SoCs listed in Supported products.

## Supported products

- 88W8987
- IW416
- IW6111
- IW6122
- AW6113
- RW610
- RW612

**Parent topic:** [About this document](#)

[1]: The support of IW611 is enabled in i.MX RT1170 EVKB and i.MX RT1060 EVKC. [2]: The support of IW612 is enabled in i.MX RT1170 EVKB and i.MX RT1060 EVKC. [3]: AW611 module support is available only in i.MX RT1180 EVKA

## Features

### Wi-Fi radio

#### Client mode

Features	Sub features
802.11n - High throughput	2.4 GHz band operation supported channel bandwidth: 20 MHz
802.11n - High throughput	2.4 GHz band supported channel bandwidth: 40 MHz
802.11n - High throughput	5 GHz band supported channel bandwidth: 20 MHz
802.11n - High throughput	5 GHz band supported channel bandwidth: 40 MHz
802.11n - High throughput	Short/long guard interval (400 ns/800 ns)
802.11n - High throughput	Data rates up to 72 Mbit/s (MCS 0 to MCS 7)
802.11n - High throughput	Data rates up to 150 Mbit/s (MCS 0 to MCS 7)
802.11n - High throughput	1 spatial stream (1x1)
802.11n - High throughput	HT protection mechanisms
802.11n - High throughput	Aggregated MAC protocol data unit (AMPDU) TX and RX support
802.11n - High throughput	Aggregated MAC service data unit (AMSDU) 4k TX and RX support
802.11n - High throughput	TX MCS rate adaptation (BGN)
802.11n - High throughput	RX low density parity check (LDPC) 1x1 20 MHz and 40 MHz
802.11n - High throughput	HT Beamformee (explicit)
802.11ac - Very high throughput	2.4 GHz band supported channel bandwidth: 20MHz
802.11ac - Very high throughput	5 GHz band supported channel bandwidth: 20 MHz
802.11ac - Very high throughput	5 GHz band supported channel bandwidth: 40 MHz
802.11ac - Very high throughput	5 GHz band supported channel bandwidth: 80 MHz
802.11ac - Very high throughput	Data rates up to 86.7 Mbps (MCS0 to MCS 8)
802.11ac - Very high throughput	Data rates up to 433.3 Mbps (MCS 0 to MCS 9) - 1x1
802.11ac - Very high throughput	MU-MIMO Beamformee (Explicit and Implicit)
802.11ac - Very high throughput	RTS/CTS with BW signaling
802.11ac - Very high throughput	Operation mode notification
802.11ac - Very high throughput	Backward compatibility with non-VHT devices
802.11ac - Very high throughput	TX VHT MCS rate adaptation
802.11ac - Very high throughput	Low density parity check (LDPC)
802.11ax - High efficiency	2.4 GHz band supported channel bandwidth: 20MHz
802.11ax - High efficiency	5 GHz band supported channel bandwidth: 20 MHz
802.11ax - High efficiency	5 GHz band supported channel bandwidth: 40 MHz

Table 1 – continued from p

Features	Sub features
802.11ax - High efficiency	5 GHz band supported channel bandwidths: 80 MHz
802.11ax - High efficiency	OFDMA (UL/DL, 106 RU)
802.11ax - High efficiency	OFDMA (UL/DL, 484 RU)
802.11ax - High efficiency	1024 QAM
802.11ax - High efficiency	Target wake time (TWT)
802.11ax - High efficiency	256 QAM modulation – MCS8 and MCS9
802.11ax - High efficiency	1024 QAM modulation – MCS10 and MCS11, 2.4 GHz
802.11ax - High efficiency	1024 QAM modulation – MCS10 and MCS11, 5 GHz
802.11ax - High efficiency	DCM
802.11ax - High efficiency	DCM
802.11ax - High efficiency	ER (extended range)
802.11ax - High efficiency	SU Beamforming
802.11ax - High efficiency	OMI (operating mode indication)
802.11a/b/g features	802.11b/g data rates up to 54 Mbit/s
802.11a/b/g features	802.11a data rates up to 54 Mbit/s
802.11a/b/g features	TX rate adaptation (BG)
802.11a/b/g features	Fragmentation/defragmentation
802.11a/b/g features	ERP protection, slot time, preamble
802.11d	802.11d - Regulatory domain/operating class/country info
802.11e QoS	EDCA [enhanced distributed channel access] / WMM (wireless
802.11i security	Opensource WPA Supplicant Support
802.11i security	WPA2-PSK AES   WPA Supplicant
802.11i security	WPA3-SAE (Simultaneous Authentication of Equals)   WPA
802.11i security	WPA2+WPA3 PSK Mixed Mode (WPA3 Transition Mode)   W
802.11i security	Wi-Fi Enhanced Open - OWE (Opportunistic Wireless Encry
802.11i security	802.1x EAP Authentication Methods3   WPA Supplicant
802.11i security	WPA2-Enterprise Mixed Mode3   WPA Supplicant
802.11i security	WPA3-Enterprise3 (Suite-B)   National Security Algorithm (C
802.11i security	802.11w - PMF (Protected Management Frames)   WPA Supp
802.11i security	Embedded Supplicant Support
802.11i security	WPA2-PSK AES   Embedded Supplicant
802.11i security	WPA+WPA2 PSK Mixed Mode   Embedded Supplicant
802.11i security	WPA3-SAE (Simultaneous Authentication of Equals)   Embe
802.11i security	802.11w - PMF (Protected Management Frames)   Embedde
802.11i security	Wi-Fi Roaming
802.11i security	WPA3 Enterprise3
Power save mode	Deep sleep
Power save mode	IEEE power save
Power save mode	Host sleep/WoWLAN (inband)3
Power save mode	Host sleep/WoWLAN (outband)3
Power save mode	U-APSD
802.11w - PMF (protected management frames)	PMF require and capable
802.11w - PMF (protected management frames)	Unicast management frames - Encryption/decryption - using
802.11w - PMF (protected management frames)	Broadcast management frames - Encryption/decryption - us
802.11w - PMF (protected management frames)	SA query request/response
802.11w - PMF (protected management frames)	PMF support using embedded supplicant
DPP functionality	Wi-Fi easy connect3
General features	Embedded supplicant
General features	Host sleep packet filtering
General features	Host-based supplicant
General features	Embedded MLME
General features	EDMAC - EU adaptivity support (ETSI certification)
General features	External coexistence
General features	IPv6 NS offload
General features	FIPS

Features	Sub features
General features	TKIP1
General features	RF test mode
General features	802.11k
General features	802.11v
General features	DFS radar detection in peripheral mode (follow AP)5
General features	Embedded roaming based on RSSI threshold beacon loss
General features	ARP offload
General features	Cloud keep alive
General features	UNII-4 channel support
General features	ClockSync using TSF
General features	Auto reconnect
General features	CSI (channel state information)3
General features	Ambient Motion Index (AMI)3
General features	Independent reset (in-band)3
General features	Independent reset (out-band)3
General features	Wi-Fi agile multiband
General features	Network co-processor (NCP) mode
General features	802.11mc - WLS (Wi-Fi location service)3
General features	802.11az3

**Parent topic:**Wi-Fi radio

[1] As per Wi-Fi specification, connecting in TKIP security in non 802.11n mode is allowed.

[2] Support available in host-base supplicant.

[3] Feature not enabled by default in the SDK. Refer to [Feature enable and memory impact](#) for the macro to enable the feature and the impact on the memory when enabling the feature.

[4] Read more about NCP feature in [References](#). [5] To enable the feature, CONFIG\_ECDSA = 1 must be defined in wifi\_config.h (does not apply to RW610 and RW612).

**AP mode**

Features	Sub features
802.11n - High throughput	2.4 GHz band operation supported channel bandwidth: 20 MHz
802.11n - High throughput	2.4 GHz band supported channel bandwidth: 40 MHz
802.11n - High throughput	5 GHz band supported channel bandwidth: 20 MHz
802.11n - High throughput	5 GHz band supported channel bandwidth: 40 MHz
802.11n - High throughput	Short/long guard interval (400 ns/800 ns)
802.11n - High throughput	Data rates up to 72 Mbit/s (MCS 0 to MCS 7)
802.11n - High throughput	Data rates up to 150 Mbit/s (MCS 0 to MCS 7)
802.11n - High throughput	1 spatial stream (1x1)
802.11n - High throughput	HT protection mechanisms
802.11n - High throughput	Aggregated MAC protocol data unit (AMPDU) Rx support
802.11n - High throughput	Aggregated MAC service data unit (AMSDU) -4k RX support
802.11n - High throughput	Max client support (up to 8 devices)
802.11n - High throughput	TX MCS rate adaptation (BGN)
802.11n - High throughput	RX low density parity check (LDPC)
802.11ac – Very high throughput	5 GHz band supported channel bandwidth: 20 MHz
802.11ac – Very high throughput	5 GHz band supported channel bandwidth: 40 MHz
802.11ac – Very high throughput	5 GHz band supported channel bandwidth: 80MHz
802.11ac – Very high throughput	Short/long guard interval (400ns/800ns)
802.11ac – Very high throughput	Data rates up to 86.7 Mbps (MCS0 to MCS 8)

Table 2 – continued from prev

Features	Sub features
802.11ac – Very high throughput	Data rates up to 433.3 Mbps (MCS 0 to MCS 9)
802.11ac – Very high throughput	Single user- Aggregated MAC protocol data unit (SU-AMPDU)
802.11ac – Very high throughput	RTS/CTS with BW signaling
802.11ac – Very high throughput	Backward compatibility with non-VHT devices
802.11ac – Very high throughput	TX VHT MCS rate adaptation
802.11ac – Very high throughput	MU-MIMO Beamformee (explicit and implicit)
802.11ac – Very high throughput	Operation mode notification
802.11ax – High efficiency	2.4 GHz band operation (20 MHz channel bandwidth)
802.11ax – High efficiency	2.4 GHz band operation (40 MHz channel bandwidth)
802.11ax – High efficiency	5 GHz band operation (20MHz channel bandwidth)
802.11ax – High efficiency	5 GHz band operation (40MHz channel bandwidth)
802.11ax – High efficiency	5 GHz band operation (80 MHz channel bandwidth)
802.11d	802.11d - Regulatory domain/operating class/country info
802.11e -QoS	EDCA [enhanced distributed channel access] / WMM (wireless
802.11i security	Hostapd Support
802.11i security	WPA2-PSK AES   hostapd
802.11i security	WPA3-SAE (Simultaneous Authentication of Equals)   Hosta
802.11i security	WPA2+WPA3 PSK Mixed Mode (WPA3 Transition Mode)   H
802.11i security	Wi-Fi Enhanced Open - OWE (Opportunistic Wireless Encry
802.11i security	802.1x EAP Authentication Methods   Hostapd
802.11i security	WPA2-Enterprise Mixed Mode1   Hostapd
802.11i security	WPA3-Enterprise (Suite-B)1   National Security Algorithm (C
802.11i security	802.11w - PMF (Protected Management Frames)   Hostapd
802.11i security	Embedded Authenticator
802.11i security	WPA2-PSK AES   Embedded Supplicant
802.11i security	WPA+WPA2 PSK Mixed Mode   Embedded Supplicant
802.11i security	WPA3-SAE (Simultaneous Authentication of Equals)   Embe
802.11i security	802.11w - PMF (Protected Management Frames)   Embedde
802.11y	Extended channel switch announcement (ECSA)
802.11w - protected management frames (PMF)	PMF require and capable
802.11w - protected management frames (PMF)	Unicast management frames -Encryption/decryption - using
802.11w - protected management frames (PMF)	Broadcast management frames -encryption/decryption - usi
802.11w - protected management frames (PMF)	SA query request/response
General features	Embedded authenticator
General features	Embedded MLME
General features	EU adaptivity support
General features	Automatic channel selection (ACS)
General features	External coexistence (software interface)
General features	Independent reset (in-band)1
General features	Network co-processor (NCP) mode2
General features	Vendor specific IE (custom IE)
General features	Hidden SSID (broadcast SSID disabled)
General features	MAC address filter
General features	Multiple external STA support

**Parent topic:**Wi-Fi radio

[1] Feature not enabled by default in the SDK. Refer to [Feature enable and memory impact](#) for the macro to enable the feature and the impact on the memory. [2] Read more about NCP feature in [References](#).

**AP-STA mode**

Features	Sub features		88W89	IW41	IW611/IW	RW610/R	IW61	AW611
Simultaneous AP-STA operation (same channel)	AP-STA functionality		Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y
SAD	Software antenna diversity <sup>1</sup>		Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y

**Parent topic:**Wi-Fi radio

[1] Feature not enabled by default in the SDK. Refer to [Feature enable and memory impact](#) for the macro to enable the feature and the impact on the memory when enabling the feature.

**Parent topic:**[Features](#)

### Wi-Fi Generic features

Features	Sub features		88W89	IW41	IW611/IW	RW610/RW	IW61	AW611
Generic	Firmware download (parallel) <sup>1</sup>		Y	Y	Y	N	N	Y
Generic	Secure boot		N	N	Y	Y	Y	Y
Generic	Kconfig memory optimizer <sup>3</sup>		Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y
Generic	Firmware Compression <sup>2</sup>		N	Y	N	N	N	N
Generic	u-AP intra-BSS		Y	N	Y	Y	Y	Y
Generic	Net Monitor Mode		N	N	N	Y	Y	N
Generic	Net Monitor Mode with packet transmission		N	N	N	Y	Y	N
Generic	In-Channel Net Monitor mode		N	N	N	N	N	N

**Parent topic:**Wi-Fi radio

[1] Feature not enabled by default in the SDK. Refer to [Feature enable and memory impact](#) for the macro to enable the feature and the impact on the memory when enabling the feature. [2] The feature is used to compress the Wi-Fi Bluetooth firmware and optimize the flashing of the host [3] Refer to 10.

### Wi-Fi direct/P2P

Features	Sub features	88W898	IW416	IW611/IW6	RW610/RW6	IW610	AW6113
P2P basic functionality1	P2P Auto GO	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y
P2P basic functionality1	P2P GO	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y
P2P basic functionality1	P2P GC	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y
P2P basic functionality1	P2P Persistent Group	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y
P2P basic functionality1	P2P Invitation	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y
P2P basic functionality1	P2P Device Discovery	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y
P2P basic functionality1	P2P Provision Discovery	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y
P2P basic functionality1	P2P simultaneous GO + STA	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y
P2P basic functionality1	P2P simultaneous GC + uAP	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y

**Parent topic:**Wi-Fi radio

[1] Feature not enabled by default in the SDK. Refer to *Feature enable and memory impact* for the macro to enable the feature and the impact on the memory when enabling the feature. [2] This is an experimental software release for this feature for IW416. [3] Contact your support representative to use this feature for.

**Bluetooth radio**

**Bluetooth classic**

Feature	Sub feature	88W8	IW4'	IW611/	RW610/	IW6'	AW611
General features	Bluetooth Class 1.5 and Class 2 support	Y	Y	Y	N	N	Y
General features	Scatternet support	Y	Y	Y	N	N	Y
General features	Maximum of seven simultaneous ACL connections – Central links	Y	Y	Y	N	N	Y
General features	Automatic packet type selection	Y	Y	Y	N	N	Y
General features	Bluetooth - 2.1 to 5.0 specification support	Y	Y	Y	N	N	Y
General features	Low power sniff	Y	Y	Y	N	N	Y
General features	Deep sleep using out-of-band	Y	Y	N	N	N	N
General features	Wake on Bluetooth (SoC to host)	Y	Y	Y	N	N	Y
General features	Independent reset (in-band) <sup>1</sup>	Y	Y	Y	Y	N	Y
General features	Independent reset (out-band) <sup>1</sup>	Y	Y	N	N	N	N
General features	Firmware download (parallel) <sup>1</sup>	Y	Y	N	N	N	N
General features	RF test mode	Y	Y	Y	N	N	Y
Bluetooth packet type supported	ACL (DM1, DH1, DM3, DH3, DM5, DH5, 2-DH1, 2-DH3, 2-DH5, 3-DH1, 3-DH3, 3-DH5)	Y	Y	Y	N	N	Y
Bluetooth packet type supported	SCO (HV1, HV3)	Y	Y	Y	N	N	Y
Bluetooth packet type supported	eSCO (EV3, EV4, EV5, 2EV3, 3EV3, 2EV5, 3EV5)	Y	Y	Y	N	N	Y
Bluetooth profiles supported	A2DP source/sink	Y	Y	Y	N	N	Y
Bluetooth profiles supported	AVRCP target/controller	Y	Y	Y	N	N	Y
Bluetooth profiles supported	HFP Dev/AG	Y	Y	Y	N	N	Y
Bluetooth profiles supported	OPP server/client	Y	Y	Y	N	N	Y
Bluetooth profiles supported	SPP server/client	Y	Y	Y	N	N	Y
Bluetooth profiles supported	HID target/device	Y	Y	Y	N	N	Y
Bluetooth audio features	PCM NBS central/peripheral	Y	Y	Y	N	N	Y
Bluetooth audio features	PCM WBS central/peripheral	Y	Y	Y	N	N	Y

**Parent topic:**Bluetooth radio

[1] Experimental feature intended for evaluation/early development only and not production. Incomplete mandatory certification.

**Bluetooth LE**

Features	Sub features
Generic features	Maximum 16 Bluetooth LE connections (central role)
Generic features	Deep sleep using out-of-band
Generic features	Wake on Bluetooth LE (SoC to Host)
Generic features	RF Test mode
Bluetooth profile support	Bluetooth LE GATT
Bluetooth profile support	Bluetooth LE HID over GATT
Bluetooth profile support	Bluetooth LE GAP
Bluetooth LE 4.0 support	Low Energy physical layer
Bluetooth LE 4.0 support	Low Energy link layer
Bluetooth LE 4.0 support	Enhancements to HCI for Low Energy
Bluetooth LE 4.0 support	Low energy direct test mode
Bluetooth 4.1 support	Low duty cycle directed advertising
Bluetooth 4.1 support	Bluetooth LE dual mode topology
Bluetooth 4.1 support	Bluetooth LE privacy v1.1
Bluetooth 4.1 support	Bluetooth LE link layer topology
Bluetooth 4.2 support	Bluetooth LE secure connection
Bluetooth 4.2 support	Bluetooth LE link layer privacy v1.2
Bluetooth 4.2 support	Bluetooth LE data length extension
Bluetooth 4.2 support	Link layer extended scanner filter policies
Bluetooth 5.0 support	Bluetooth LE 2 Mbps support
Bluetooth 5.0 support	High duty cycle directed advertising
Bluetooth 5.0 support	Low Energy advertising extension
Bluetooth 5.0 support	Low Energy long range
Bluetooth 5.0 support	Low Energy periodic advertisement
Bluetooth 5.2 support	Low Energy power control
Bluetooth LE audio support1 2	Isochronous channel
Bluetooth LE audio support1 2	Broadcast LE Audio BIS source
Bluetooth LE audio support1 2	Broadcast LE Audio BIS sink
Bluetooth LE audio support1 2	Broadcast LE Audio BIG Validation
Bluetooth LE audio support1 2	Broadcast LE Audio Phy: 1M/2M/ coded
Bluetooth LE audio support1 2	Broadcast LE Audio framed mode
Bluetooth LE audio support1 2	Broadcast LE Audio unframed mode
Bluetooth LE audio support1 2	Broadcast LE Audio sequential packing
Bluetooth LE audio support1 2	Broadcast LE Audio: Mono and Stereo
Bluetooth LE audio support1 2	Broadcast LE Audio BIS encrypted audio
Bluetooth LE audio support1 2	Broadcast LE Audio BIS unencrypted audio
Bluetooth LE audio support1 2	Unicast LE Audio CIS source
Bluetooth LE audio support1 2	Unicast LE Audio CIS sink
Bluetooth LE audio support1 2	Unicast LE Audio CIG validation
Bluetooth LE audio support1 2	Unicast LE Audio CIS synchronization
Bluetooth LE audio support1 2	Unicast LE Audio Phy: 1M/2M/ coded
Bluetooth LE audio support1 2	Unicast LE Audio framed mode
Bluetooth LE audio support1 2	Unicast LE Audio unframed mode
Bluetooth LE audio support1 2	Unicast LE Audio sequential packing
Bluetooth LE audio support1 2	Unicast LE Audio: mono and stereo
Bluetooth LE audio support1 2	Unicast LE Audio CIS encrypted audio
Bluetooth LE audio support1 2	Unicast LE Audio CIS unencrypted audio
Bluetooth LE audio support1 2	Unicast LE Audio TX/RX and bidirectional traffic

Table 3 – continued from prev

Features	Sub features
Bluetooth LE audio support1 2	ISO interval for LE Audio: 7.5ms 10ms 20ms 30ms
Bluetooth LE audio support1 2	Sampling frequency for LE Audio: 8kHz 16kHz 24kHz, 32kHz
Bluetooth LE audio support1 2	LE Audio Auracast use cases: Auracast streaming 2 BISes
Bluetooth LE audio support1 2	LE Audio Unicast use cases: Unicast streaming 2 CISes
Bluetooth LE audio support1 2	LE Audio Unicast Use cases: Unicast streaming 4 CISes
Bluetooth LE audio support1 2	A2DP + Auracast/Unicast Bridge use cases – CIS/BIS
BCA TDM Coexistence mode (shared antenna)	STA + Bluetooth coexistence
BCA TDM Coexistence mode (shared antenna)	STA + Bluetooth LE coexistence
BCA TDM Coexistence mode (shared antenna)	STA + Bluetooth + Bluetooth LE coexistence
BCA TDM Coexistence mode (shared antenna)	AP + Bluetooth coexistence
BCA TDM Coexistence mode (shared antenna)	AP + Bluetooth LE coexistence
BCA TDM Coexistence mode (shared antenna)	AP + Bluetooth + Bluetooth LE coexistence
BCA TDM coexistence mode (separate antenna)	STA + Bluetooth coexistence
BCA TDM coexistence mode (separate antenna)	STA + Bluetooth LE coexistence
BCA TDM coexistence mode (separate antenna)	STA + Bluetooth + Bluetooth LE coexistence
BCA TDM coexistence mode (separate antenna)	AP + Bluetooth coexistence
BCA TDM coexistence mode (separate antenna)	AP + Bluetooth LE coexistence
BCA TDM coexistence mode (separate antenna)	AP + Bluetooth + Bluetooth LE coexistence

**Note:** Details of the tested Bluetooth LE Audio use cases:

- Number of streams:
  - 1-CIG | upto 4-CIS with 1 LE ACL (for 4-CIS: execute only mono UCs, SDU Int: 10ms)
  - 1-CIG | upto 4-CIS with 4 separate LE ACL (for 4-CIS: SDU Size= Max 100 Oct, PHY=2M, RTN=1, SDU Int: 10ms only) (execute only mono UCs for 4-CIS)
  - 1-BIG | upto 4-BIS (for 4-BIS: execute only mono UCs, SDU Int: 10ms only)
- PHY: 2M and 1M
- Audio mode: mono (for 1 to 4 streams) and stereo (for 1 stream)
- Packing: sequential and interleaved
- Bit rate: maximum 96kbps
  - For 1-CIG with upto 3-CIS: maximum bit rate 96kbps
  - For 1-CIG with 4-CIS: maximum bit rate 80kbps
  - For 1-BIG with 4-BIS: maximum bit rate 80kbps
  - For 2-CIG cases: maximum bit rate 80kbps
- Mode: unframed mode
- 48\_5 and 48\_6 mono and stereo configurations are not supported.

Details of the tested Bluetooth coexistence (Bluetooth + Bluetooth LE Audio) use cases:

- Bluetooth + Bluetooth LE Audio
- A2DP + Bluetooth LE Audio bridging support
- A2DP sink link (central) -> LEA 2-CIS (SDU Int: 10ms only | A2DP only with SBC Codec | PHY: 2M)

**Parent topic:**Bluetooth radio

[1] Experimental feature intended for evaluation/early development only and not production. Incomplete mandatory certification.

[2] LE audio feature is supported for standalone scenarios only and not for BR/EDR and Wi-Fi co-existence scenarios such as LE audio + BR/EDR link or LE audio + Wi-Fi link. From the perspective

of NXP Edgefast Bluetooth host stack, LE audio feature can be disabled by the CONFIG\_BT\_AUDIO macro without impact on any other features. LE audio feature can be tested by the user, using their own supported host stack.

Parent topic:[Features](#)

### 802.15.4 radio

Features	Sub features	IW612	IW610	RW612
General features	fea- Spinel over SPI	Y	N	N
General features	fea- OpenThread RCP Mode implementing Thread1.3	Y	N	N
General features	fea- 802.15.4-2015 MAC/PHY as required by Thread 1.3	Y	Y	Y
General features	fea- OpenThread Border Router (OTBR) v1.1	Y	Y	Y
General features	fea- Direct/indirect transmission with/without ACK	Y	Y	Y
General features	fea- 802.15.4 CSL parent feature implementation	Y	Y	Y
General features	fea- Enhanced Frame Pending	Y	Y	Y
General features	fea- Enhanced keep alive	Y	Y	Y
General features	fea- Router	Y	Y	Y
General features	fea- Leader	Y	Y	Y
General features	fea- Router Eligible End Device (REED)	Y	Y	Y
General features	fea- End Device (FED, MED)	Y	Y	Y
Zigbee features	Coordinator	N	N	Y
Zigbee features	Router	N	N	Y
Zigbee features	End Device (RX ON)	N	N	Y
Zigbee features	R23	N	N	Y
Zigbee features	OTA Client	N	N	Y
Zigbee features	OTA server	N	N	Y
Matter features	Matter over Wi-Fi	Y	N	N
Matter features	Matter over Thread	Y	N	Y

Parent topic:[Features](#)

### Coexistence

**Wi-Fi and Bluetooth/802.15.4 coexistence**

Features	Sub features	IW6'	IW6'	RW612
BCA_TDM separate antenna1 (lower and higher isolation) 1x1 Wi-Fi, (Bluetooth and 802.15.4 shared)	STA + Bluetooth	Y	N	N
BCA_TDM separate antenna1 (lower and higher isolation) 1x1 Wi-Fi, (Bluetooth and 802.15.4 shared)	Mobile AP + Bluetooth	Y	N	N
BCA_TDM separate antenna1 (lower and higher isolation) 1x1 Wi-Fi, (Bluetooth and 802.15.4 shared)	Bluetooth LE + Wi-Fi	Y	Y	Y
BCA_TDM separate antenna1 (lower and higher isolation) 1x1 Wi-Fi, (Bluetooth and 802.15.4 shared)	Bluetooth + Bluetooth LE + Wi-Fi	Y	N	N
BCA_TDM separate antenna1 (lower and higher isolation) 1x1 Wi-Fi, (Bluetooth and 802.15.4 shared)	OpenThread + Bluetooth	Y	N	N
BCA_TDM separate antenna1 (lower and higher isolation) 1x1 Wi-Fi, (Bluetooth and 802.15.4 shared)	OpenThread + Bluetooth LE2	Y	Y	Y
BCA_TDM separate antenna1 (lower and higher isolation) 1x1 Wi-Fi, (Bluetooth and 802.15.4 shared)	OpenThread + Bluetooth + Bluetooth LE	Y	N	N
BCA_TDM separate antenna1 (lower and higher isolation) 1x1 Wi-Fi, (Bluetooth and 802.15.4 shared)	OpenThread + Wi-Fi	Y	Y	Y
BCA_TDM separate antenna1 (lower and higher isolation) 1x1 Wi-Fi, (Bluetooth and 802.15.4 shared)	Bluetooth + OpenThread + Wi-Fi	Y	N	N
BCA_TDM separate antenna1 (lower and higher isolation) 1x1 Wi-Fi, (Bluetooth and 802.15.4 shared)	Bluetooth LE + OpenThread + Wi-Fi	Y	Y	Y
BCA_TDM separate antenna1 (lower and higher isolation) 1x1 Wi-Fi, (Bluetooth and 802.15.4 shared)	Bluetooth + Bluetooth LE + OpenThread + Wi-Fi	Y	N	N
BCA_TDM separate antenna1 (lower and higher isolation) 1x1 Wi-Fi, (Bluetooth and 802.15.4 shared)	Single antenna configuration	Y	Y	Y
BCA_TDM separate antenna1 (lower and higher isolation) 1x1 Wi-Fi, (Bluetooth and 802.15.4 shared)	External Coexistence PTA	N	Y	Y

**Parent topic:**Coexistence

[1] Experimental feature intended for evaluation/early development only and not production. Incomplete mandatory certification.

[2] The narrow-band radio can be configured to support Bluetooth LE, 802.15.4, and to time-slice between Bluetooth LE and 802.15.4.

**Parent topic:**[Features](#)

**Feature enable and memory impact**

Features	Macros to enable the feature	Memory impact
CSI	CONFIG_CSI	Flash - 60K, RAM - 4K
AMI	CONFIG_CSI_AMI3	Flash - 2032K, RAM - 772K
DPP	CONFIG_WPA_SUPP_DPP	Flash - 240K, RAM - 12K
Independent reset	CONFIG_WIFI_IND_DNLDCONFIG_WIFI_IND_RESET	Minimal
Parallel firmware download Wi-Fi	CONFIG_WIFI_IND_DNLD	Minimal
Parallel firmware download Bluetooth	CONFIG_BT_IND_DNLD	Minimal
WPA3 enterprise	CONFIG_WPA_SUPP_CRYPT0_ENTERPRISE [Macros specific to EAP-methods included] CONFIG_EAP_TLS CONFIG_EAP_PEAP CONFIG_EAP_TTLS CONFIG_EAP_FAST CONFIG_EAP_SIM CONFIG_EAP_AKA CONFIG_EAP_AKA_PRIME	Flash - 165K, RAM - 18K
WPA2 enterprise	CONFIG_WPA_SUPP_CRYPT0_ENTERPRISE [Macros specific to EAP-methods included] CONFIG_EAP_TLS CONFIG_EAP_PEAP CONFIG_EAP_TTLS CONFIG_EAP_FAST CONFIG_EAP_SIM CONFIG_EAP_AKA CONFIG_EAP_AKA_PRIME	Flash - 165K, RAM - 18K
Host sleep WMM	CONFIG_HOST_SLEEP CONFIG_WMM1	Minimal Flash - 10K, RAM - 57K
802.11mc	CONFIG_11MC CONFIG_CSI CONFIG_WLS_CSI_PROC2 CONFIG_11AZ	Flash: 52.78KB, RAM : 121.1KB
802.11az	CONFIG_11MC CONFIG_CSI[2] CONFIG_WLS_CSI_PROC2 CONFIG_11AZ	Flash: 52.78KB, RAM : 121.1KB
Non-blocking firmware download mechanism	CONFIG_FW_DNLD_ASYNC	—
Antenna diversity	CONFIG_WLAN_CALDATA_2ANT_DIVERSITY	-
P2P	CONFIG_WPA_SUPP_P2P	-

**Note:**

- For Wi-Fi, the macros are set with the value “0” by default in the file wifi\_config\_default.h

located in <SDK\_PATH>/middleware/wifi\_nxp/incl/ directory.

To enable the features, set the value of the macros to “1” in the file wifi\_config.h located in\*<SDK\_Wi-Fi\_Example\_PATH>/ directory\*\*\*.\*\*\*

- Bluetooth

To enable the features, set the value of the macros to “1” in the file app\_bluetooth\_config.h located in <SDK\_Bluetooth\_Example\_PATH>/ directory.

[1] The macro is not used for IW416.

[2] Prerequisite macros for 802.11mc and 802.11az features

[3] Enable PRINTF\_FLOAT\_ENABLE only for MCUXpresso IDE and specifically for the RT1060-EVKC and RT1170-EVKB platforms

- Go to project properties > C/C++ Build > Settings > Preprocessor.
- Add PRINTF\_FLOAT\_ENABLE=1

## 88W8987 release notes

### Package information

- SDK version: 25.12.00

Parent topic:[88W8987 release notes](#)

### Version information

- Wireless SoC: 88W8987
- Wi-Fi and Bluetooth/Bluetooth LE firmware version: 16.92.21.p153.9
  - 16 - Major revision
  - 92 - Feature pack
  - 21 - Release version
  - p153.9 - Patch number

Parent topic:[88W8987 release notes](#)

### Host platform

- All i.MX RT platforms running FreeRTOS.
- Host interfaces
  - Wi-Fi over SDIO (SDIO 2.0 support, SDIO clock frequency: 50 MHz)
  - Bluetooth/Bluetooth LE over UART
- Test tools
  - iPerf (version 2.1.9)

Parent topic:[88W8987 release notes](#)

**Wi-Fi and Bluetooth certification** The Wi-Fi and Bluetooth certification is obtained with the following combinations.

## WFA certifications

- STA | 802.11n
- STA | 802.11ac
- STA | PMF
- STA | FFD
- STA | SVD
- STA | WPA3 SAE (R3)
- STA | QTT

Refer to 6.

**Note:** This release supports STAUT only certifications.

**Parent topic:** Wi-Fi and Bluetooth certification

**Bluetooth controller certification** QDID: refer to 4.

**Parent topic:** Wi-Fi and Bluetooth certification

**Parent topic:** [88W8987 release notes](#)

## Wi-Fi throughput

### Throughput test setup

- Environment: Shield Room - Over the Air
- External Access Point: ASUS AX88U
- DUT: W8987 Murata (Module: **1ZM M.2**) with EVK-MIMXRT1060 EVKC platform
- DUT Power Source: External power supply
- External Client: Apple MacBook Air
- Channel: 6 | 36
- Wi-Fi application: wifi\_wpa\_supPLICANT
- Compiler used to build application: armgcc
- Compiler Version: gcc-arm-none-eabi-13.2
- iPerf commands used in test:

TCP TX

```
iperf -c <remote_ip> -t 60
```

TCP RX

```
iperf -s
```

UDP TX

```
iperf -c <remote_ip> -t 60 -u -B <local_ip> -b 120
```

**Note:** The default rate is 100 Mbps.

UDP RX

```
iperf -s -u -B <local_ip>
```

**Note:** Read more about the throughput test setup and topology in 2.

**Parent topic:** Wi-Fi throughput

**STA throughput** External APs: ASUS AX88U

**STA mode throughput - BGN Mode | 2.4 GHz Band | 20 MHz**

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
Open security	52	52	60	63
WPA2-AES	50	51	60	62
WPA3-SAE	50	51	60	62

**STA mode throughput - BGN Mode | 2.4 GHz Band | 40 MHz**

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	62	83	121	124
WPA2-AES	61	82	120	126
WPA3-SAE	60	82	120	126

**STA mode throughput - AN Mode | 5 GHz Band | 20 MHz**

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	43	52	60	64
WPA2-AES	43	52	61	64
WPA3-SAE	43	52	60	65

**STA mode throughput - AN Mode | 5 GHz Band | 40 MHz**

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	64	87	126	125
WPA2-AES	63	85	125	120
WPA3-SAE	63	80	125	123

**STA mode throughput - AC Mode | 5 GHz Band | 20 MHz (VHT)**

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	48	60	73	78
WPA2-AES	47	60	73	77
WPA3-SAE	47	60	73	77

**STA mode throughput - AC Mode | 5 GHz Band | 40 MHz (VHT)**

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	68	96	161	157
WPA2-AES	69	92	160	155
WPA3-SAE	70	94	160	155

**STA mode throughput - AC Mode | 5 GHz Band | 80 MHz (VHT)**

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
Open security	124	119	228	235
WPA2-AES	118	107	228	204
WPA3-SAE	114	107	229	203

Parent topic:Wi-Fi throughput

**Mobile AP throughput** External client: Apple Macbook Air

**Mobile AP Mode Throughput - BGN Mode | 2.4 GHz Band | 20 MHz**

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
Open security	47	48	57	60
WPA2-AES	46	49	57	60
WPA3-SAE	47	49	57	60

**Mobile AP Mode Throughput - BGN Mode | 2.4 GHz Band | 40 MHz**

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	66	81	107	121
WPA2-AES	65	80	107	120
WPA3-SAE	65	80	108	120

**Mobile AP Mode Throughput - AN Mode | 5 GHz Band | 20 MHz**

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	44	52	60	61
WPA2-AES	44	51	60	61
WPA3-SAE	44	51	60	61

**Mobile AP Mode Throughput - AN Mode | 5 GHz Band | 40 MHz**

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	70	89	126	103
WPA2-AES	70	87	124	102
WPA3-SAE	70	88	125	103

**Mobile AP Mode Throughput - AC Mode | 5 GHz Band | 20 MHz**

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	49	60	73	76
WPA2-AES	48	59	73	76
WPA3-SAE	48	60	73	76

**Mobile AP Mode Throughput - AC Mode | 5 GHz Band | 40 MHz**

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	77	106	161	102
WPA2-AES	77	104	160	102
WPA3-SAE	77	104	160	111

**Mobile AP Mode Throughput - AC Mode | 5 GHz Band | 80 MHz**

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
Open security	127	141	227	217
WPA2-AES	124	127	227	198
WPA3-SAE	125	127	227	173

**Parent topic:**Wi-Fi throughput

**Parent topic:**[88W8987 release notes](#)

**EU conformance tests**

- EU Adaptivity test - EN 300 328 v2.1.1 (for 2.4 GHz)
- EU Adaptivity test - EN 301 893 v2.1.1 (for 5 GHz)

**Parent topic:**[88W8987 release notes](#)

**Bug fixes and/or feature enhancements**

**Firmware version: From 16.91.21.p64.1 to 16.91.21.p82**

Com- po- nent	Description
Wi-Fi	WPA3-R3 enabled APUT beacons does not have RSNXE when configured in H2E mode- Associated event is received even when connecting using wrong password WFA APUT Low iperf TCP/UDP Tx throughput with Realtek station

**Parent topic:**Bug fixes and/or feature enhancements

**Firmware version: From 16.91.21.p82 to 16.91.21.p91.6**

Component	Description
Wi-Fi	In wrong password scenario, After updating new password the phone is not able to connect with DUTAP

**Parent topic:**Bug fixes and/or feature enhancements

**Firmware version: From 16.91.21.p91.6 to 16.91.21.p124**

Component	Description
Wi-Fi	Cloud keep alive packets not seen after DUT enters host sleep. DUT is sending QOS null packets even in host sleep

**Parent topic:**Bug fixes and/or feature enhancements

**Firmware version: From 16.91.21.p124 to 16.91.21.p133**

Component	Description
Wi-Fi	Samsung S24 Ultra and Google Pixel 7 mobiles having Android 14 are not able connect to the DUTAP with WPA3 SAE security.

**Parent topic:**Bug fixes and/or feature enhancements

**Firmware version: From 16.91.21.p133 to 16.91.21.p142.5**

Component	Description
Wi-Fi	Fails to encrypt and decrypt data with ccmp 128 and 256 using CLI crypto commands.

**Parent topic:**Bug fixes and/or feature enhancements

**Firmware version: From 16.91.21.p142.5 to 16.91.21.p149.2**

Component	Description
Wi-Fi	DUTSTA does not associate to hidden SSID beaconing in DFS channel.

**Parent topic:**Bug fixes and/or feature enhancements

**Firmware version: From 16.91.21.p149.2 to 16.92.21.p151.7**

Component	Description
Wi-Fi	Getting low TCP/UDP TP in DUT-AP 11ac-vht80 mode after hard-reset or wlan-reset.

**Parent topic:**Bug fixes and/or feature enhancements

**Firmware version: From 16.91.21.p149.2 to 16.92.21.p151.7**

Component	Description
Wi-Fi	Getting low TCP/UDP TP in DUT-AP 11ac-vht80 mode after hard-reset or wlan-reset.

**Parent topic:**Bug fixes and/or feature enhancements

**Firmware version: From 16.92.21.p151.7 to 16.92.21.p153.5**

Component	Description
Wi-Fi	Added P2P Persistence and P2P Invitation

**Parent topic:**Bug fixes and/or feature enhancements

**Firmware version: From 16.92.21.p153.5 to 16.92.21.p153.6**

Component	Description
Wi-Fi	Enabled mbedtls 3.x

**Parent topic:**Bug fixes and/or feature enhancements

**Parent topic:**[88W8987 release notes](#)

**Known issues**

Component	Description
NA	

**Parent topic:**[88W8987 release notes](#)

**IW416 release notes**

**Package information**

- SDK version: 25.12.00

**Parent topic:**[IW416 release notes](#)

**Version information**

- Wireless SoC: IW416
- Wi-Fi and Bluetooth/Bluetooth LE firmware version: 16.92.21.p153.9
  - 16 - Major revision
  - 92 - Feature pack

- 21 - Release version
- p153.9 - Patch number

**Parent topic:**[IW416 release notes](#)

### Host platform

- All i.MX RT platforms running FreeRTOS.
- Host interfaces
  - Wi-Fi over SDIO (SDIO 2.0 Support, SDIO clock frequency: 50 MHz)
  - Bluetooth/Bluetooth LE over UART
- Test tools
  - iPerf (version 2.1.9)

**Parent topic:**[IW416 release notes](#)

**Wi-Fi and Bluetooth certification** The Wi-Fi and Bluetooth certification is obtained with the following combinations.

### WFA certifications

- STA | 802.11n
- STA | PMF
- STA | FFD
- STA | SVD
- STA | WPA3 SAE (R3)
- STA | QTT

Refer to 6.

**Note:** This release supports STAUT only certifications.

**Parent topic:**Wi-Fi and Bluetooth certification

**Bluetooth controller certification** QDID: refer to 4.

**Note:** QDID upgrade to Bluetooth Core Specification Version 5.4 is in progress.

**Parent topic:**Wi-Fi and Bluetooth certification

**Parent topic:**[IW416 release notes](#)

### Wi-Fi throughput

#### Throughput test setup

- Environment: Shield Room - Over the Air
- Access Point: Asus AX88u
- DUT: IW416 Murata (Module: 1XK M.2) with EVK-MIMXRT1060 EVKC platform
- DUT Power Source: External power supply

- Client: Apple MacBook Air
- Channel: 6 | 36
- Wi-Fi application: wifi\_wpa\_supplicant
- Compiler used to build application: armgcc
- Compiler Version: gcc-arm-none-eabi-13.2
- iPerf commands used in test:

TCP TX

```
iperf -c <remote_ip> -t 60
```

TCP RX

```
iperf -s
```

UDP TX

```
iperf -c <remote_ip> -t 60 -u -B <local_ip> -b 120
```

**Note:** The default rate is 100 Mbps.

UDP RX

```
iperf -s -u -B <local_ip>
```

**Note:** Read more about the throughput test setup and topology in 2.

**Parent topic:**Wi-Fi throughput

**STA throughput** External AP: Asus AX88u

**STA mode throughput - BGN Mode | 2.4 GHz Band | 20 MHz**

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
Open security	44	47	59	59
WPA2-AES	39	43	58	55
WPA3-SAE	39	45	57	53

**STA mode throughput - BGN Mode | 2.4 GHz Band | 40 MHz**

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
Open security	72	59	95	87
WPA2-AES	69	58	116	92
WPA3-SAE	57	58	115	91

**STA mode throughput - AN Mode | 5 GHz Band | 20 MHz (HT)**

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
Open security	43	48	59	59
WPA2-AES	42	48	56	60
WPA3-SAE	42	47	57	58

**STA mode throughput - AN Mode | 5 GHz Band | 40 MHz (HT)**

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
Open security	68	64	118	96
WPA2-AES	65	59	117	96
WPA3-SAE	69	59	118	96

Parent topic:Wi-Fi throughput

**Mobile AP throughput** External client: Apple MacBook Air**Mobile AP mode throughput - BGN Mode | 2.4 GHz Band | 20 MHz**

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
Open security	41	45	52	54
WPA2-AES	42	45	53	53
WPA3-SAE	45	42	53	53

**Mobile AP mode throughput - BGN Mode | 2.4 GHz Band | 40 MHz**

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
Open security	62	70	123	90
WPA2-AES	61	65	117	90
WPA3-SAE	61	65	118	87

**Mobile AP mode throughput - AN Mode | 5 GHz Band | 20 MHz**

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
Open security	44	45	58	57
WPA2-AES	42	45	55	56
WPA3-SAE	43	45	57	56

**Mobile AP mode throughput - AN Mode | 5 GHz Band | 40 MHz**

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
Open security	75	85	118	100
WPA2-AES	77	68	118	100
WPA3-SAE	77	69	118	100

Parent topic:Wi-Fi throughput

Parent topic:[IW416 release notes](#)

**EU conformance tests**

- EU Adaptivity test - EN 300 328 v2.1.1 (for 2.4 GHz)
- EU Adaptivity test - EN 301 893 v2.1.1 (for 5 GHz)

**Parent topic:**[IW416 release notes](#)

**Bug fixes and/or feature enhancements**

**Firmware version: From 16.91.21.p64.1 to 16.91.21.p82**

Component	Description
Wi-Fi	WPA3-R3 enabled APUT beacons does not have RSNXE when configured in H2E mode

**Parent topic:**Bug fixes and/or feature enhancements

**Firmware version: From 16.91.21.p82 to 16.91.21.p91.6**

Component	Description
Wi-Fi	NA

**Parent topic:**Bug fixes and/or feature enhancements

**Firmware version: From 16.91.21.p91.6 to 16.91.21.p124**

Component	Description
Wi-Fi	Cloud keep alive packets not seen after DUT enters host sleep. DUT is sending QOS null packets even in host sleep

**Parent topic:**Bug fixes and/or feature enhancements

**Firmware version: From 16.91.21.p124 to 16.91.21.p133**

Component	Description
Wi-Fi	NA

**Parent topic:**Bug fixes and/or feature enhancements

**Firmware version: From 16.91.21.p133 to 16.91.21.p133.2**

Component	Description
Wi-Fi	DUT STA getting rebooted after 15~20 iterations of 11R-Command based roaming0xa4 command timeout after several hours of stress test

**Parent topic:**Bug fixes and/or feature enhancements

**Firmware version: From 16.91.21.p133.2 to 16.91.21.p142.5**

Component	Description
Wi-Fi	DUT fails to reconnect after the configured auto-reconnect time interval.
Coex	During HFP call, TX side noise is observed with coex CLI

**Parent topic:**Bug fixes and/or feature enhancements

**Firmware version: From 16.91.21.p142.5 to 16.91.21.p149.4**

Component	Description
-	NA

**Parent topic:**Bug fixes and/or feature enhancements

**Firmware version: From 16.91.21.p149.4 to 16.92.21.p151.7**

Component	Description
Wi-Fi	Samsung S24 Ultra and Google Pixel 7 mobiles having Android 14 are not able connect to the DUTAP with WPA3 SAE security.

**Parent topic:**Bug fixes and/or feature enhancements

**Firmware version: From 16.92.21.p151.7 to 16.92.21.p153.5**

Component	Description
Wi-Fi	The DUT encounters a command response timeout during the execution of the wlan-info command following UDP traffic tests.
Wi-Fi	Random hang issue seen when using wlan-p2p-find/stop in succession

**Parent topic:**Bug fixes and/or feature enhancements

**Firmware version: From 16.92.21.p153.5 to 16.92.21.p153.6**

Component	Description
Wi-Fi	Enabled mbedtls 3.x

**Parent topic:**Bug fixes and/or feature enhancements

**Parent topic:**[IW416 release notes](#)

**Known issues**

Component	Description
Coex	Wi-Fi connection in 2.4GHz is not stable, observed deauthentication within 10sec.

**Parent topic:**[IW416 release notes](#)

**IW611/IW612 release notes** **Note:** The IW611/IW612 support is enabled in i.MX RT1170 EVKB and i.MX RT1060 EVKC.

### Package information

- SDK version: 25.12.00

**Parent topic:**[IW611/IW612 release notes](#)

### Version information

- Wireless SoC: IW611/IW612
- Wi-Fi and Bluetooth/Bluetooth LE firmware version: 18.99.3.p27.10
  - 18 - Major revision
  - 99 - Feature pack
  - 3 - Release version
  - p27.10 - Patch number

**Parent topic:**[IW611/IW612 release notes](#)

### Host platform

- i.MX RT1170 EVKB and i.MX RT1060 EVKC Platforms running FreeRTOS
- Host interfaces
  - Wi-Fi over SDIO (SDIO 2.0 support, SDIO clock frequency: 50 MHz)
  - Bluetooth/Bluetooth LE over UART
  - 802.15.4 over SPI (IW612 only)
- Test tools
  - iPerf (version 2.1.9)

**Parent topic:**[IW611/IW612 release notes](#)

**Wi-Fi and Bluetooth certification** The Wi-Fi and Bluetooth certification is obtained with the following combinations.

### WFA certifications

- STA | 802.11n
- STA | PMF
- STA | FFD
- STA | SVD
- STA | WPA3 SAE (R3)
- STA | 802.11ac
- STA | 802.11ax
- STA | QTT

Refer to 6.

**Note:** This release supports STAUT only certifications.

**Parent topic:** Wi-Fi and Bluetooth certification

**Bluetooth controller certification** QDID: refer to 4.

**Note:** QDID upgrade to Bluetooth Core Specification Version 5.4 is in progress.

**Parent topic:** Wi-Fi and Bluetooth certification

**Parent topic:** [IW611/IW612 release notes](#)

## Wi-Fi throughput

### Throughput test setup

- Environment: Shield Room - Over the Air
- Access Point: Asus AX88u
- DUT: IW612 Murata (Module: 2EL M.2) with EVK-MIMXRT1060 EVKC platform
- DUT Power Source: External power supply
- Client: Apple MacBook Air
- Channel: 6 | 36
- Wi-Fi application: `wifi_wpa_supplicant`
- Compiler used to build application: `armgcc`
- Compiler Version `gcc-arm-none-eabi-13.2`
- iPerf commands used in test:

#### TCP TX

```
iperf -c <remote_ip> -t 60
```

#### TCP RX

```
iperf -s
```

#### UDP TX

```
iperf -c <remote_ip> -t 60 -u -B <local_ip> -b 120
```

**Note:** The default rate is 100 Mbps.

#### UDP RX

```
iperf -s -u -B <local_ip>
```

**Note:** Read more about the throughput test setup and topology in 2

The throughput numbers are captured with default configurations using `wifi_wpa_supplicant` sample application.

**Parent topic:** Wi-Fi throughput

**iPerf host configuration and impact on throughput**

To get the highest throughput, the throughput values shown in STA throughput and Mobile AP throughput are measured with the maximum values of the default host configuration macros. STA and AP throughput captured with the minimum values of the host configuration macros shows the throughput numbers obtained when using the minimum values of the host configuration macros. The macro values are defined in *lwipopts.h* file.

The table below lists the minimum and maximum values of the host configuration macros.

**Values of the host configuration macros**

Parameter	Maximum value	Minimum value
TCP_IP_MBOX_SIZE	96	32
DEFAULT_RAW_RECV_MBOX_SIZE	32	12
DEFAULT_UDP_RECV_MBOX_SIZE	64	12
DEFAULT_TCP_RECV_MBOX_SIZE	64	12
TCP_MSS	1460	536
TCP_SND_BUF	24 * TCP_MSS	2 * TCP_MSS
MEM_SIZE	319160	41,080
TCP_WND	15 * TCP_MSS	10 * TCP_MSS
MEM_NUM_PBUF	20	10
MEM_NUM_TCP_SEG	96	12
MEM_NUM_TCP_IP_MSG_INPKT	80	16
MEM_NUM_TCP_IP_MSG_API	80	8
MEM_NUM_NETBUF	32	16

**STA and AP throughput captured with the minimum values of the host configuration macros**

**STA mode throughput - HE Mode | 5 GHz Band | 80 MHz**

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
Open Security	7	18	111	124
WPA2-AES	7	18	110	124
WPA3-SAE	6	18	110	124

**Mobile AP mode throughput - HE Mode | 5 GHz Band | 80 MHz**

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
Open Security	2	19	93	127
WPA2-AES	2	19	105	126
WPA3-SAE	2	19	104	132

**Parent topic:** iPerf host configuration and impact on throughput

**Parent topic:** Wi-Fi throughput

**STA throughput** External AP: Asus AX88u

**STA mode throughput - BGN Mode | 2.4 GHz Band | 20 MHz**

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
Open security	52	51	64	63
WPA2-AES	51	50	62	62
WPA3-SAE	51	50	63	61

**STA mode throughput - BGN Mode | 2.4 GHz Band | 40 MHz**

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
Open security	79	85	118	131
WPA2-AES	78	84	118	129
WPA3-SAE	78	83	118	130

**STA mode throughput - AN Mode | 5 GHz Band | 20 MHz (HT)**

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
Open security	50	52	63	64
WPA2-AES	49	51	63	63
WPA3-SAE	49	51	63	63

**STA mode throughput - AN Mode | 5 GHz Band | 40 MHz (HT)**

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
Open security	77	86	118	133
WPA2-AES	76	86	118	132
WPA3-SAE	79	86	118	132

**STA mode throughput - VHT Mode | 2.4 GHz Band | 20 MHz (VHT)**

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
Open security	56	59	76	76
WPA2-AES	56	59	74	75
WPA3-SAE	56	59	76	75

**STA mode throughput - VHT Mode | 2.4 GHz Band | 40 MHz (VHT)**

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	74	92	162	170
WPA2-AES	74	90	160	169
WPA3-SAE	71	91	161	171

**STA mode throughput - VHT Mode | 5 GHz Band | 20 MHz (VHT)**

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	43	57	76	78
WPA2-AES	42	57	75	77
WPA3-SAE	43	57	75	77

**STA mode throughput - VHT Mode | 5 GHz Band | 40 MHz (VHT)**

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
Open security	88	95	118	177
WPA2-AES	87	94	118	175
WPA3-SAE	91	94	118	175

**STA mode throughput - VHT Mode | 5 GHz Band | 80 MHz (VHT)**

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
Open security	121	102	118	200
WPA2-AES	121	103	118	200
WPA3-SAE	121	103	118	200

**STA mode throughput - HE Mode | 2.4 GHz Band | 20 MHz (HE)**

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
Open security	78	64	117	105
WPA2-AES	78	67	117	104
WPA3-SAE	79	65	117	97

**STA mode throughput - HE Mode | 2.4 GHz Band | 40 MHz (HE)**

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
Open security	95	91	118	199
WPA2-AES	93	90	118	200
WPA3-SAE	91	87	118	199

**STA mode throughput - HE Mode | 5 GHz Band | 20 MHz (HE)**

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
Open security	76	66	118	127
WPA2-AES	75	68	118	125
WPA3-SAE	75	68	118	126

**STA mode throughput - HE Mode | 5 GHz Band | 40 MHz (HE)**

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
Open security	105	69	118	200
WPA2-AES	104	70	118	200
WPA3-SAE	104	70	118	200

**STA mode throughput - HE Mode | 5 GHz Band | 80 MHz (HE)**

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
Open security	125	73	118	200
WPA2-AES	123	76	118	200
WPA3-SAE	123	76	118	200

Parent topic:Wi-Fi throughput

**Mobile AP throughput** External client: Apple MacBook Air

**Mobile AP mode throughput - BGN Mode | 2.4 GHz Band | 20 MHz**

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
Open security	51	54	61	60
WPA2-AES	50	55	61	60
WPA3-SAE	51	54	61	60

**Mobile AP mode throughput - BGN Mode | 2.4 GHz Band | 40 MHz**

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
Open security	85	107	118	124
WPA2-AES	86	101	118	126
WPA3-SAE	84	102	118	126

**Mobile AP mode throughput - AN Mode | 5 GHz Band | 20 MHz**

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
Open security	51	43	63	60
WPA2-AES	50	43	62	60
WPA3-SAE	50	43	63	60

**Mobile AP mode throughput - AN Mode | 5 GHz Band | 40 MHz**

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
Open security	89	115	118	128
WPA2-AES	88	110	118	128
WPA3-SAE	88	115	118	128

**Mobile AP mode throughput - VHT Mode | 5 GHz Band | 20 MHz**

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
Open security	58	66	76	72
WPA2-AES	58	65	75	72
WPA3-SAE	58	65	75	72

**Mobile AP mode throughput - VHT Mode | 5 GHz Band | 40 MHz**

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
Open security	103	141	135	168
WPA2-AES	102	134	137	167
WPA3-SAE	102	134	139	167

**Mobile AP mode throughput - VHT Mode | 5 GHz Band | 80 MHz**

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
Open security	137	180	182	218
WPA2-AES	130	174	181	218
WPA3-SAE	136	175	182	218

**Mobile AP mode throughput - HE Mode | 2.4 GHz Band | 20 MHz**

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
Open security	53	66	85	120
WPA2-AES	52	65	83	116
WPA3-SAE	52	65	83	118

**Mobile AP mode throughput - HE Mode | 2.4 GHz Band | 40 MHz**

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
Open security	86	100	133	132
WPA2-AES	83	100	135	134
WPA3-SAE	86	100	136	134

**Mobile AP mode throughput - HE Mode | 5 GHz Band | 20 MHz**

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
Open security	54	65	82	83
WPA2-AES	58	65	82	82
WPA3-SAE	58	65	81	81

**Mobile AP mode throughput - HE Mode | 5 GHz Band | 40 MHz**

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
Open security	104	141	151	170
WPA2-AES	102	137	151	170
WPA3-SAE	103	136	150	170

### Mobile AP mode throughput - HE Mode | 5 GHz Band | 80 MHz

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
Open security	138	180	189	219
WPA2-AES	135	175	190	218
WPA3-SAE	135	175	192	218

**Parent topic:**Wi-Fi throughput

**Parent topic:**[IW611/IW612 release notes](#)

### EU conformance tests

- EU Adaptivity test - EN 300 328 v2.1.1 (for 2.4 GHz)
- EU Adaptivity test - EN 301 893 v2.1.1 (for 5 GHz)

**Parent topic:**[IW611/IW612 release notes](#)

### Bug fixes and/or feature enhancements

**Firmware version: 18.99.2.p7.19**

Component	Description
-	NA

**Parent topic:**Bug fixes and/or feature enhancements

**Firmware version: 18.99.2.p7.19 to 18.99.2.p49.9**

Component	Description
-	NA

**Parent topic:**Bug fixes and/or feature enhancements

**Firmware version: 18.99.2.p49.9 to 18.99.2.p155**

Component	Description
Bluetooth	Audio lost occurs due to periodic adv sync lost, during 2 BIS 44.1kHz unencrypted streams with 1M PHY configuration.BIS sync loss may occur in long audio streaming sessions.

**Parent topic:**Bug fixes and/or feature enhancements

**Firmware version: 18.99.2.p155 to 18.99.2.p66.30**

Component	Description
Wi-Fi Blue-tooth	802.11R Fast BSS roaming works only with hostapd and does not work with standard APs (supporting 11R) DUT is not able to sustain a connection with the remote device that does extended advertisement with coded PHY configuration. When 2 CIS streams are active, after the first device disconnects followed by the second device disconnecting, the second peripheral device hangs. Audio Play/Pause does not work in BIS case.

**Parent topic:**Bug fixes and/or feature enhancements

**Firmware version: 18.99.2.p66.30 to 18.99.3.p10.5**

Component	Description
Wi-Fi Blue-tooth	STAUT not sending Neighbor Advertisement packet after receiving Neighbor Solicitation packet from Ex-AP. Antenna selection time exceeds configured evaluation time When DUT works as CIS source and CIS Offset is 612us, high packet drops observed which affects the audio streaming. For BIS Source Use Cases, Periodic Interval and ISO Interval should be multiple of each other value. In 1-CIS and 2-CIS, Continuous Audio Glitches are observed with 96 kbps bit rate.

**Parent topic:**Bug fixes and/or feature enhancements

**Firmware version: 18.99.3.p10.5 to 18.99.3.p17.9**

Component	Description
Wi-Fi Blue-tooth	After performing independent reset (out-of-band mode), the STAUT fails to connect to the external AP via wlan-connect command, observed command timeout 0x107 error. Audio glitches observed with Google Pixel 7 Pro streaming audio after CIS is established with DUT. During Call Gateway (CG) / Call Terminal (CT) Use Case, the firmware periodically sends NULL PDU, which results in frequent Audio Glitch on both CG and CT sides. Heavy audio glitches observed with CIS SRC Google Pixel 7 Pro. Continuous audio glitches observed in 1 CIS and 2 CIS for 48_3 and 48_4 config.

**Parent topic:**Bug fixes and/or feature enhancements

**Firmware version: 18.99.3.p17.9 to 18.99.3.p21.154**

Component	Description
Wi-Fi	STAUT fail to ping AP backend machine when connected with DFS channel and DUT STA went in bad state.
Blue-tooth	CIS Sink frequently fails to acknowledge CIS Source TX PDU.

**Parent topic:**Bug fixes and/or feature enhancements

**Firmware version: 18.99.3.p21.154 to 18.99.3.p23.16**

Component	Description
-	NA

**Parent topic:**Bug fixes and/or feature enhancements

**Firmware version: 18.99.3.p23.16 to 18.99.3.p25.11**

Component	Description
Bluetooth	Packet lost observed in CIS case, which causes audio noise.

**Parent topic:**Bug fixes and/or feature enhancements

**Firmware version: 18.99.3.p25.11 to 18.99.3.p26.10**

Component	Description
Wi-Fi	During legacy roaming when the “Link Lost” observed the DUTSTA fails to roam
Wi-Fi	During the automated testing of the channel performance, a system hang can occur, with the error message “.sdio_drv_write failed”.

**Parent topic:**Bug fixes and/or feature enhancements

**Firmware version: 18.99.3.p26.10 to 18.99.3.p27.1**

Component	Description
Wi-Fi	Enabled mbedtls 3.x

**Parent topic:**Bug fixes and/or feature enhancements

**Parent topic:**[IW611/IW612 release notes](#)

### Known issues

Component	Description
Bluetooth	Sequential Removal of CIS Handles as per current Controller implementation i.e CIS Disconnection sequence should be in sequence => CIS - 4,3,2,1While 4-CIS streaming, audio glitches observed on all CIS SINK with Samsung Galaxy budsWhile 4-CIS streaming, disconnection with connection timeout observed on first CIS SINK with Samsung Galaxy budsOnly two streams (CIS/BIS) with one channel is supported.

**Parent topic:**[IW611/IW612 release notes](#)

**RW610/RW612 release notes**

### Package information

- SDK version: 25.12.00

**Parent topic:**[RW610/RW612 release notes](#)

### Version information

- Wi-Fi firmware version: 18.99.6.p50
  - rw61x\_sb\_wifi\_a2.bin for A2
  - 18 - Major revision
  - 99 - Feature pack
  - 6 - Release version
  - p50 - Patch number
- Bluetooth LE firmware version: 18.25.6.p50
  - rw61x\_sb\_ble\_a2.bin for A2
  - 18 - Major revision
  - 25 - Feature pack
  - 6 - Release version
  - p50 - Patch number
- 802.15.4 and Bluetooth LE (up to core 4.1) firmware version: 18.34.6.p50
  - rw61x\_sb\_ble\_15d4\_combo\_a2.bin for A2
  - 18 - Major revision
  - 34 - Feature pack
  - 6 - Release version
  - p50 - Patch number

**Parent topic:**[RW610/RW612 release notes](#)

### Host platform

- RW610/RW612 platform running FreeRTOS
- Test tools
  - iPerf (version 2.1.9)

**Parent topic:**[RW610/RW612 release notes](#)

**Wireless certification** The Wi-Fi and Bluetooth certification is obtained with the following combinations.

### WFA certifications

- STA | 802.11n
- STA | PMF
- STA | FFD
- STA | SVD

- STA | WPA3 SAE (R3)
- STA | 802.11ac
- STA | 802.11ax
- STA | QTT

Refer to 1.

**Note:** This release supports STAUT only certifications.

**Parent topic:** Wireless certification

**Bluetooth LE controller certification** QDID: Refer to 4.

**Parent topic:** Wireless certification

**Thread** Thread group: refer to 7.

Product Name: NXP RW612 Wireless MCU with Integrated Tri-Radio

Thread version: V1.3.0

CID #: 13A109

**Parent topic:** Wireless certification

**Matter** RW612 certification: refer to 8.

Certificate ID: CSA23C36MAT41746-24

Device type: Root Node, Thermostat

Transport: Matter over Wi-Fi

RW610 certification: refer to 9.

Certificate ID: CSA23C43MAT41753-50

Device type: Root Node, Thermostat

Transport: Matter over Wi-Fi and Matter over Thread

**Parent topic:** Wireless certification

**Parent topic:** [RW610/RW612 release notes](#)

## Wi-Fi throughput

### Throughput test setup

- Environment: Shield Room - Over the Air
- Access Point: Asus AX88u
- DUT: RW610/RW612
- External Client: Intel AX210
- Channel: 6 | 36
- Wi-Fi application: wifi\_cli
- Compiler used to build application: armgcc
- Compiler version gcc-arm-none-eabi-13.2

- iPerf commands used in test:

TCP TX

```
iperf -c <remote_ip> -t 60
```

TCP RX

```
iperf -s
```

UDP TX

```
iperf -c <remote_ip> -t 60 -u -B <local_ip> -b 120
```

**Note:** The default rate is 100 Mbps.

UDP RX

```
iperf -s -u -B <local_ip>
```

**Note:** Read more about the throughput test setup and topology in 3.

**Parent topic:** Wi-Fi throughput

**STA throughput** External AP: Asus AX88u

**STA mode throughput - BGN Mode | 2.4 GHz Band | 20 MHz**

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	38	38	62	62
WPA2-AES	37	37	61	63
WPA3-SAE	37	37	60	61

**STA mode throughput - AN Mode | 5 GHz Band | 20 MHz**

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	39	39	64	64
WPA2-AES	37	38	62	64
WPA3-SAE	39	38	62	64

**STA mode throughput - VHT Mode | 2.4 GHz Band | 20 MHz (HT)**

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	41	41	75	74
WPA2-AES	41	41	73	74
WPA3-SAE	40	41	72	73

**STA mode throughput - VHT Mode | 5 GHz Band | 20 MHz**

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	42	42	76	76
WPA2-AES	42	41	75	75
WPA3-SAE	42	41	75	74

#### STA mode throughput - HE Mode | 2.4 GHz Band | 20 MHz

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	44	45	97	99
WPA2-AES	43	44	96	98
WPA3-SAE	42	44	97	98

#### STA mode throughput - HE Mode | 5 GHz Band | 20 MHz

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	47	47	100	103
WPA2-AES	45	46	100	101
WPA3-SAE	47	46	100	101

Parent topic: Wi-Fi throughput

**Mobile AP throughput** External client: Apple MacBook Air

#### Mobile AP throughput - BGN Mode | 2.4 GHz Band | 20 MHz

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	39	39	62	62
WPA2-AES	39	39	61	61
WPA3-SAE	38	39	61	61

#### Mobile AP throughput - AN Mode | 5 GHz Band | 20 MHz

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	40	40	63	63
WPA2-AES	39	39	62	61
WPA3-SAE	39	39	62	61

#### Mobile AP throughput - VHT Mode | 2.4 GHz Band | 20 MHz

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	43	43	73	73
WPA2-AES	43	42	72	72
WPA3-SAE	43	42	73	72

**Mobile AP throughput - VHT Mode | 5 GHz Band | 20 MHz**

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	44	44	74	74
WPA2-AES	43	43	74	74
WPA3-SAE	43	43	74	74

**Mobile AP throughput - HE Mode | 2.4 GHz Band | 20 MHz**

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	48	48	95	96
WPA2-AES	47	47	98	95
WPA3-SAE	47	47	97	95

**Mobile AP throughput - HE Mode | 5 GHz Band | 20 MHz**

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	49	49	96	97
WPA2-AES	48	48	101	97
WPA3-SAE	48	48	101	97

**Parent topic:**Wi-Fi throughput

**Parent topic:**[RW610/RW612 release notes](#)

**Bug fixes and/or feature enhancements**

**Firmware version: 18.99.6.p34 to 18.99.6.p40**

Component	Description
Zigbee	Zigbee Coordinator and Router are disconnected during BLE connection pairing and bonding with a mobile app for the first time.

**Parent topic:**Bug fixes and/or feature enhancements

**Firmware version: 18.99.6.p40 to 18.99.6.p46**

Component	Description
Wi-Fi	Fails to establish a persistent connection when the device attempts to reinvoke the second stored Persistent Group
Bluetooth	NCP cannot work after flash uart bins for both host and device side

**Parent topic:**Bug fixes and/or feature enhancements

**Firmware version: 18.99.6.p46 to 18.99.6.p47**

Component	Description
Wi-Fi	Enabled mbedtls 3.x

**Parent topic:** Bug fixes and/or feature enhancements

**Parent topic:** [RW610/RW612 release notes](#)

#### Known issues

Component	Description
Wi-Fi	—
Bluetooth LE	—
Zigbee	-
Coex	-

**Parent topic:** [RW610/RW612 release notes](#)

#### IW610 release notes

##### Package information

- SDK version: 25.12.00

**Parent topic:** [IW610 release notes](#)

##### Version information

- Wireless SoC: IW610
- Wi-Fi and Bluetooth/Bluetooth LE firmware version: 18.99.5.p86
  - 18 - Major revision
  - 99 - Feature pack
  - 5 - Release version
  - p86 - Patch number

**Parent topic:** [IW610 release notes](#)

##### Host platform

- IW610 platform running FreeRTOS
- Test tools
  - iPerf (version 2.1.9)

**Parent topic:** [IW610 release notes](#)

**Wi-Fi and Bluetooth certification** The Wi-Fi and Bluetooth certification is obtained with the following combinations.

**Bluetooth controller certification** QDID: Refer to 4.

**Note:** QDID upgrade to Bluetooth Core Specification Version 5.4 is in progress.

**Parent topic:** Wi-Fi and Bluetooth certification

**Parent topic:** [IW610 release notes](#)

## Wi-Fi throughput

### Throughput test setup

- Environment: Shield Room - Over the Air
- Access Point: Asus AX88u
- DUT: IW610
- External Client: Intel AX210
- Channel: 6 | 36
- Wi-Fi application: wifi\_cli
- Compiler used to build application: armgcc
- Compiler version gcc-arm-none-eabi-13.2
- iPerf commands used in test:

#### TCP TX

```
iperf -c <remote_ip> -t 60
```

#### TCP RX

```
iperf -s
```

#### UDP TX

```
iperf -c <remote_ip> -t 60 -u -B <local_ip> -b 120
```

**Note:** The default rate is 100 Mbps.

#### UDP RX

```
iperf -s -u -B <local_ip>
```

**Note:** Read more about the throughput test setup and topology in 3.

**Parent topic:** Wi-Fi throughput

**STA throughput** External AP: Asus AX88u

**STA mode throughput - BGN Mode | 2.4 GHz Band | 20 MHz**

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	37	37	60	62
WPA2-AES	36	37	59	61
WPA3-SAE	36	37	59	61

**STA mode throughput - AN Mode | 5 GHz Band | 20 MHz**

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	35	40	64	65
WPA2-AES	34	39	62	64
WPA3-SAE	35	39	77	76

**STA mode throughput - VHT Mode | 2.4 GHz Band | 20 MHz (HT)**

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	41	40	72	72
WPA2-AES	40	40	72	72
WPA3-SAE	40	40	72	71

**STA mode throughput - VHT Mode | 5 GHz Band | 20 MHz**

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	38	42	77	76
WPA2-AES	37	41	75	75
WPA3-SAE	37	40	75	75

**STA mode throughput - HE Mode | 2.4 GHz Band | 20 MHz**

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	45	44	93	96
WPA2-AES	43	43	93	95
WPA3-SAE	44	43	93	96

**STA mode throughput - HE Mode | 5 GHz Band | 20 MHz**

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	42	46	94	100
WPA2-AES	42	45	94	101
WPA3-SAE	41	45	94	101

**Parent topic:**Wi-Fi throughput

**Mobile AP throughput** External client: Apple MacBook Air

**Mobile AP mode throughput - BGN Mode | 2.4 GHz Band | 20 MHz**

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
Open security	48	44	61	61
WPA2-AES	47	43	59	59
WPA3-SAE	47	43	59	59

**Mobile AP mode throughput - AN Mode | 5 GHz Band | 20 MHz**

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
Open security	49	46	64	63
WPA2-AES	48	45	62	61
WPA3-SAE	48	45	62	61

**Mobile AP mode throughput - VHT Mode | 2.4 GHz Band | 20 MHz**

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
Open security	54	50	73	73
WPA2-AES	53	49	73	72
WPA3-SAE	52	49	73	72

**Mobile AP mode throughput - VHT Mode | 5 GHz Band | 20 MHz**

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
Open security	54	51	71	70
WPA2-AES	53	50	71	70
WPA3-SAE	52	50	71	70

**Mobile AP mode throughput - HE Mode | 2.4 GHz Band | 20 MHz**

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
Open security	59	56	93	90
WPA2-AES	57	53	94	84
WPA3-SAE	57	53	94	84

**Mobile AP mode throughput - HE Mode | 5 GHz Band | 20 MHz**

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
Open security	61	58	96	91
WPA2-AES	59	56	98	85
WPA3-SAE	59	55	98	85

Parent topic:Wi-Fi throughput

Parent topic:[IW610 release notes](#)

**Bug fixes and/or feature enhancements**

**Firmware version: 18.99.5.p66 to 18.99.5.p76**

Component	Description
Wi-Fi	The P2P client connection fails when an attempt is made to connect after the P2P Group Owner (P2P-GO) has been stopped.

**Parent topic:** Bug fixes and/or feature enhancements

**Firmware version: 18.99.5.p76 to 18.99.5.p79**

Component	Description
Wi-Fi	Enabled mbedtls 3.x

**Parent topic:** Bug fixes and/or feature enhancements

**Parent topic:** [IW610 release notes](#)

**Known issues**

Component	Description
NA	

**Parent topic:** [IW610 release notes](#)

**Abbreviations**

Abbreviation	Definition
A2DP	Advanced audio distribution profile
AMPDU	Aggregated MAC protocol data unit
AMSDU	Aggregated MAC service data unit
AP	Access point
BW	Bandwidth
CCMP	Counter mode CBC-MAC protocol
CSI	Channel state information
CTS	Clear To Send
DL	Down link
EDCA	Enhanced distributed channel access
ER	Extended range
ERP	Extended rate physical
GATT	Generic attribute profile
HFP	Hands free profile
HID	Human interface device
HT	High throughput
LDPC	Low density parity check
MCS	Modulation and coding scheme
MLME	Mac layer management entity
OMI	Operating mode indication
PMF	Protected management frames
RTS	Request to send
SAE	Simultaneous authentication of equals
STA	Station

continues on next page

Table 4 – continued from previous page

Abbreviation	Definition
TWT	Target wake time
UL	Up link
VHT	Very high throughput
WEP	Wired equivalent private
WFD	Wi-Fi direct
WMM	Wireless multi-media
WPA	Wi-Fi protected access
WPS	Wi-Fi protected setup
WSC	Wi-Fi Simple Configuration

## References

1. Application note - AN13681 – Wi-Fi Alliance (WFA) Derivative Certification Process (available in the SDK package)
2. User manual – UM11442 - NXP Wi-Fi and Bluetooth Demo Applications User Guide for i.MX RT Platforms (available in the SDK package)
3. User manual – UM11799 - NXP Wi-Fi and Bluetooth Demo Applications User Guide for RW61x (available in the SDK package)
4. Certification – Bluetooth controller - QDID ([link](#))
5. User manual - UM12133 - NXP NCP Application Guide for RW612 with MCU Host
6. Technical note - TN00066 – Wi-Fi Alliance (WFA) Derivative Certification Process (available in the SDK package)
7. Web page – Thread certified products ([link](#))
8. Web page – Connectivity standard alliance (csa) – NXP RW612 Tri-Radio Wireless MCU Development Platform ([link](#))
9. Web page – Connectivity standard alliance (csa) – NXP RW610 Wireless MCU Development Platform ([link](#))
10. Application note - AN14634 – Kconfig Memory Optimizer ([link](#))

### 1.7.2 EdgeFast Bluetooth

Currently we provide pdf version of those documentation, later release may convert the pdf documentation to markdown for better review and aligned format.

- [EdgeFast BT PAL API Reference Manual pdf](#).

## MCUXpressoSDK EdgeFast Bluetooth Protocol Abstraction

**Introduction** This document provides an overview of the EdgeFast Bluetooth Protocol Abstraction Layer stack software based on FreeRTOS OS on the NXP board with variant wireless module chipsets. This document covers hardware setup, build, and usage of the provided demo applications.

**Stack API Reference** EdgeFast Bluetooth Protocol Abstraction Layer is a wrapper layer on top of the bluetooth host stack. Zephyr Bluetooth host stack API is used as the basis of the EdgeFast Bluetooth Protocol Abstraction Layer with some enhancement on A2DP/SPP/HFP.

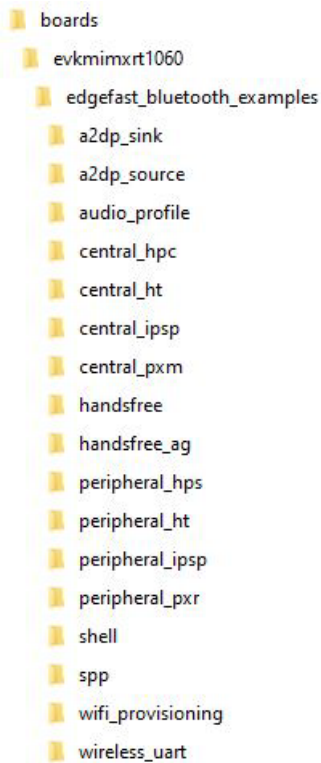
The APIs of the EdgeFast Bluetooth Protocol Abstraction Layer host stack are described in the EdgeFast Bluetooth Protocol Abstraction Layer RM document.

**Note:** The online document of the Zephyr Bluetooth Host stack is available here: <https://docs.zephyrproject.org/latest/reference/bluetooth/index.html>.

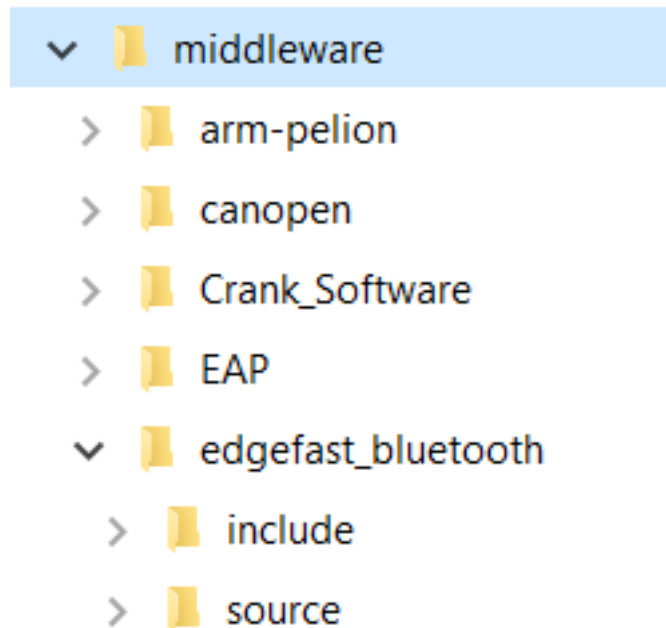
**Parent topic:** [Introduction](#)

**Overview** The EdgeFast Bluetooth Protocol Abstraction Layer host stack software is built based on MCUXpresso SDK. The following chapter uses RT1060 as an example, other boards have similar folder structure and corresponding document.

**Folder structure** The following figure shows the EdgeFast Bluetooth examples folder structure.



The following figure shows the EdgeFast Bluetooth Protocol Abstraction Layer host stack folder structure.



The following table provides information regarding the structure and description.

| **Folder**

| **Description**

| |—————|—————| |boards/

CMSIS/

devices/

docs/

middleware/

rtos/

tools/

| MCUXpresso SDK directory. Refer to Chapter 5

Release contents of MCUXpresso SDK Release Notes at *root/docs/MCUXpresso SDK Release Notes for EVK-MIMXRT1060.pdf* to know the details

| |boards/<board>/wireless/edgefast\_bluetooth\_examples

|EdgeFast Bluetooth Protocol Abstraction Layer host stack example projects| |middleware/wireless/edgefast\_bluetooth

|EdgeFast Bluetooth Protocol Abstraction Layer host stack source code

|

The EdgeFast Bluetooth folder includes two subfolders:

- **include:** This subfolder includes EdgeFast Bluetooth Protocol Abstraction Layer host stack headers.
- **source:** This subfolder includes EdgeFast Bluetooth Protocol Abstraction Layer host stack source code based on the Ethermind Bluetooth host stack APIs.

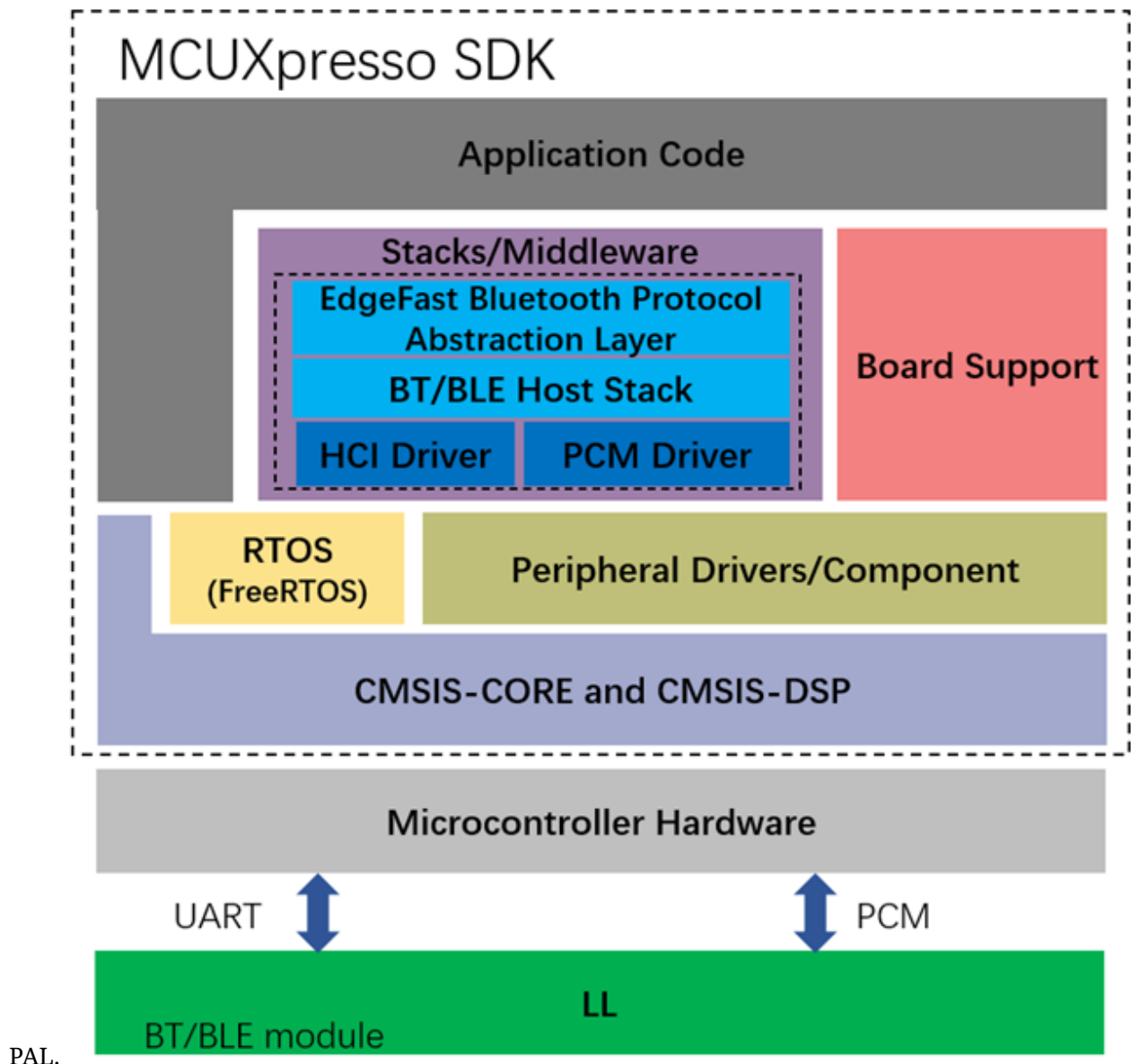
**Parent topic:** [Overview](#)

**Architecture** The figure Architecture of EdgeFast Bluetooth Protocol Abstraction Layer demo in MCUXpresso SDK below shows that the EdgeFast Bluetooth Protocol Abstraction Layer host stack is integrated into the MCUXpresso SDK as a middleware component. It leverages the RTOS, the board support, the peripheral driver/component, and other components in the MCUXpresso SDK. The Bluetooth application is built on top of the EdgeFast Bluetooth Protocol Abstraction Layer host stack and supports different peripheral features, Bluetooth features, and different RTOSes required by the user.

MCUXpresso SDK has the dual-chip architecture defined by EdgeFast Bluetooth Protocol Abstraction Layer project, the Bluetooth application code, and the EdgeFast Bluetooth Protocol Abstraction Layer host stack running on the reference board. For example, MIMXRT1060-EVK and the Linker Layer (LL) run on the Bluetooth modules like AW-AM457-USD, Murata Type 1XK, and Murata Type 1ZM and has single-chip architecture. Bluetooth Host stack and LL runs on the same chip, and communicate with Internal Communication Unit (IMU).

The communication between the host stack and the LL is implemented via the standard HCI UART interface and PCM interface for voice, or the IMU interface.

For details about the different components in MCUXpresso SDK, see *Getting Started with MCUXpresso SDK User's Guide* (document MCUXSDKGSUG) at `root/docs/Getting Started with MCUXpresso SDK.pdf`. For details on possible hardware rework requirements, see the hardware rework guide document of the relative board. For example, Hardware Rework Guide for EdgeFast BT



PAL.

**Parent topic:**[Overview](#)

**Features** This section provides an overview of Bluetooth features, toolchain support, and RTOS support.

### Bluetooth features

- Bluetooth 5.0 compliant
- Protocol support
  - L2CAP, GAP, GATT, RFCOMM, SDP, and SM

**Note:** The Enhanced Attribute (EATT) protocol is not supported in the current version. However, the support will be available in a future version.
- Classic profile
  - SPP, A2DP, and HFP
- LE profile
  - HTP, PXP, IPSP, HPS
- Integrated the Fatfs based on USB Host MSD in SDK
- Digital Audio Interface including PCM interface for HFP

**Parent topic:**Features

### Toolchain support

- IAR Embedded Workbench for ARM®
- MCUXpresso IDE
- Keil® MDK/μVision
- Makefiles support with GCC from Arm Embedded

**Note:** For details on IDE Development tools version details, see Section 3, Development tools in MCUXpresso SDK Release Notes (document MCUXSDKMIMXRT106XRN). The Release Notes document is available at *root/docs/MCUXpresso SDK Release Notes for EVK-MIMXRT1060.pdf*.

**Parent topic:**Features

### RTOS support

- FreeRTOSMOS

**Note:** The FreeRTOS static allocation feature is required by Edgefast Bluetooth. The macro `configSUPPORT_STATIC_ALLOCATION` needs to be set to enable this feature.

**Parent topic:**Features

**Parent topic:**[Overview](#)

### Examples list

- The following examples are provided. Not all the examples are implemented on all the boards. See the board package for a list of the implemented examples.

- **central\_hpc (central http proxy service client)**: Demonstrates a basic Bluetooth Low Energy Central role functionality. The application scans for other Bluetooth Low Energy devices and establishes a connection to the peripheral with the strongest signal. The application specifically looks for HPS Server and programs a set of characteristics that configures a Hyper Text Transfer Protocol (HTTP) request, initiates request, and reads the response once connected.
- **central\_ht (central health thermometer)**: Demonstrates a basic Bluetooth Low Energy Central role functionality. The application scans for other Bluetooth Low Energy devices and establishes a connection to the peripheral with the strongest signal. The application specifically looks for health thermometer sensor and reports the die temperature readings once connected.
- **central\_ipsp (central Internet protocol support profile)**: Demonstrates a basic Bluetooth Low Energy Central role functionality. The application scans for other Bluetooth Low Energy devices and establishes connection to the peripheral with the strongest signal. The application specifically looks for IPSP Service and communicates between the devices that support IPSP. Once connected, the communication is done using IPv6 packets over the Bluetooth Low Energy transport.
- **central\_pxm (central proximity monitor)**: Demonstrates a basic Bluetooth Low Energy Central role functionality. The application scans for other Bluetooth Low Energy devices and establishes a connection to the peripheral with the strongest signal. The application specifically looks for Proximity Reporter.
- **peripheral\_beacon**: Demonstrates the Bluetooth Low Energy Peripheral role, This application implements types of beacon applications.
  - \* **beacon**: Demonstrates the Bluetooth Low Energy Broadcaster role functionality by advertising Company Identifier, Beacon Identifier, UUID, A, B, C, RSSI.
  - \* **Eddystone**: The Eddystone Configuration Service runs as a GATT service on the beacon while it is connectable and allows configuration of the advertised data, the broadcast power levels, and the advertising intervals.
  - \* **iBeacon**: Demonstrates the Bluetooth Low Energy Broadcaster role functionality by advertising an Apple iBeacon.
- **peripheral\_hps (peripheral http proxy service)**: Demonstrates the Bluetooth Low Energy Peripheral role. The application specifically exposes the HTTP Proxy GATT Service.
- **peripheral\_ht (peripheral health thermometer)**: Demonstrates the Bluetooth Low Energy Peripheral role. The application specifically exposes the HT (Health Thermometer) GATT Service. Once a device connects, it generates dummy temperature values.
- **peripheral\_ipsp (peripheral Internet protocol support profile)**: Demonstrates the Bluetooth Low Energy Peripheral role. The application specifically exposes the Internet Protocol Support GATT Service.
- **peripheral\_pxr (peripheral proximity reporter)**: Demonstrates the Bluetooth Low Energy Peripheral role. The application specifically exposes the Proximity Reporter (including LLS, IAS, and TPS) GATT Service.
- **wireless\_uart**: The application automatically starts advertising the wireless uart service and connects to the wireless uart service after the role switch. The wireless UART service is a custom service that implements a custom writable ASCII Char characteristic (UUID: 01ff0101-ba5e-f4ee-5ca1-eb1e5e4b1ce0) that holds the character written by the peer device.
- **spp (serial prot profile)**: Application demonstrates the use of the SPP feature.
- **handsfree**: Application demonstrating usage of the Hands-free Profile (HFP) feature.

- **handsfree\_ag**: Application demonstrating usage of the Hands-free Profile Audio Gateway (HFP-AG) feature.
- **a2dp\_sink**: Application demonstrating how to use the a2dp sink feature.
- **a2dp\_source**: Application demonstrating how to use the a2dp source feature.
- **audio\_profile**: Demonstrates the following functions.
  - \* There are five parts working in the demo: AWS cloud, Android app, audio demo (running on RT1060), U-disk, and Bluetooth headset.
  - \* With an app running on the smartphone (Android phone), the end user connects to the AWS cloud and controls the audio demo running on the RT1060 EVK board through AWS cloud. Some operations like play, play next, and pause are used to control the media play functionalities.
  - \* Audio demo running on the RT1060 EVK board connects to the AWS through WiFi. A connection establishes between the RT1060 EVK board and a Bluetooth headset. To get the media resource (mp3 files) from the U-disk, an HS USB host is enabled, and a U-disk with mp3 files is connected to RT1060 EVK board via the USB port. The audio demo searches the root directory of the U-disk for the music files (only mp3 files are supported) and uploads the song file list to AWS. The song list is shown in the app running on the smartphone. The music can then be played out via the Bluetooth headset once end user controls the app to play the mp3 file.
- **wifi\_provisioning**: Demonstrates the WiFi provisioning service that safely sends credential from phone to device over Bluetooth low energy. By default, AWS Wi-Fi provisioning demo starts advertising if the Wi-Fi access point (AP) is not configured and waits for the Wi-Fi AP configuration. After connecting to the Android APK, the demo executes the request from cellphone and sends the response. When the Wi-Fi AP is configured, the Shadow demo connects to the AWS via Wi-Fi and publishes the configured Wi-Fi AP information.
- **shell**: Shell application demonstrating the shell mode of the simplified Adapter APIs.

Parent topic: [Overview](#)

**Hardware** For dual-chip implementation, the Bluetooth demo runs on a (reference board) along with the ported EdgeFast Bluetooth Protocol Abstraction Layer API host stack. The Linker Layer (LL) runs on a wireless module. A standard UART HCI and PCM is used to communicate between the two boards, the IMU is used to communicate in between. The Bluetooth host and controller stack run on different boards. The demo hardware requires two different boards; a development board for host stack and application and a wireless module adapter board for controller running. For example, the evkmimxrt1060 and uSD-15x15 Adapter Board for AW-AM457-uSD board, or any of the supported Murata modules with the Murata uSD-M.2 adapter. For details on the board hardware requirement and board setting, see the following documents. For one-chip implementation, the Bluetooth demo, EdgeFast Bluetooth Protocol Abstraction Layer API host stack, and LL run on one chip and they communicate with IMU.

- Hardware rework guide document of the relative board, Hardware Rework Guide for MIMXRT1060-EVK and AW-AM457-uSD, or Hardware Interconnection Guide for i.MX RT EVKs and Murata M.2 modules.
- Readme file of the examples.

#### Reference boards list

- MIMXRT1170: For details, see the quick start guide of this reference board ([MIMXRT1170](#)).
- MIMXRT685-EVK: For details, see the quick start guide of this reference board ([MIMXRT685-EVK](#)).

- MIMXRT595-EVK: For details, see the quick start guide of this reference board ([MIMXRT595-EVK](#)).
- MIMXRT1050-EVKB: For details, see the quick start guide of this reference board ([MIMXRT1050-EVKB](#)).

Parent topic:[Hardware](#)

### Dual-chip wireless module list

Module	HCI
uSD-15x15 Adapter Board for AW-AM457-uSD	UART
uSD-15x15 Adapter Board for AW-CM358-uSD	UART
uSD-15x15 Adapter Board for AW-AM510-uSD	UART
AW-CM358MA	UART
AW-CM510MA	UART
K32W061	UART
Murata uSD-M.2 Adapter (LBEE0ZZ1WE-uSD-M2) and Embedded Artists 1ZM M.2 Module (EAR00364)	UART
Murata uSD-M.2 Adapter (LBEE0ZZ1WE-uSD-M2) and Embedded Artists 1XK M.2 Module (EAR00385)	UART

For details on AzureWave module, see the quick start guide of this reference board [AW-AM457-uSD](#), [AW-CM358-uSD](#), [AW-CM358MA](#), [AW-AM510-uSD](#), [AW-CM510MA](#), and [K32W061](#).

For Murata documentation, refer to the Quick Start Guide and User Guide [here](#).

**Note:** The boards and wireless module lists are not random combination. For the wireless module support list of specific board, see the readme.txt of each example.

Parent topic:[Hardware](#)

**Demo** This topic lists the steps to run a demo application using IAR, steps to run a demo application using MCUXpresso IDE, and steps to download LL firmware from the reference board. The following chapter uses RT1060 and peripheral\_ht as an example.

Before you run the example, see the readme.txt in current the peripheral\_ht directory and the Hardware Rework Guide for EdgeFast BT PAL document to set the jumper and connect the wireless module with development board.

The uSD type wireless module is similar to the Development board connector in the Run an IAR example section. If the module is M2 type, connect the module to the onboard M2 interface.

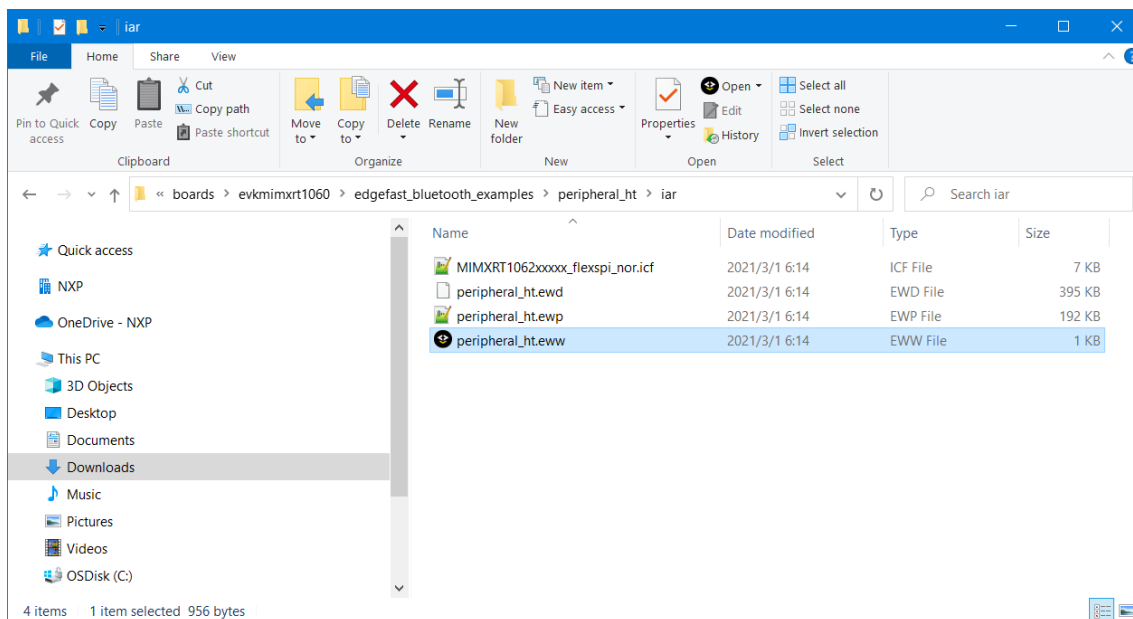
**Run a demo application using IAR** This document uses EVKRT1060 EdgeFast Bluetooth Protocol Abstraction Layer API example to describe the steps to open a project, build an example, and run a project. For details, see Section 3 in *Getting Started with MCUXpresso SDK User's Guide*(document MCUXSDKGSUG) at `root/docs/Getting Started with MCUXpresso SDK.pdf`.

**Open an IAR example** For the IAR Embedded Workbench, unpack the contents of the archive to a folder on a local drive.

1. The example projects are available at:

```
<root>/boards/evkmimxrt1060/edgefast__bluetooth__examples/peripheral__ht/iar
```

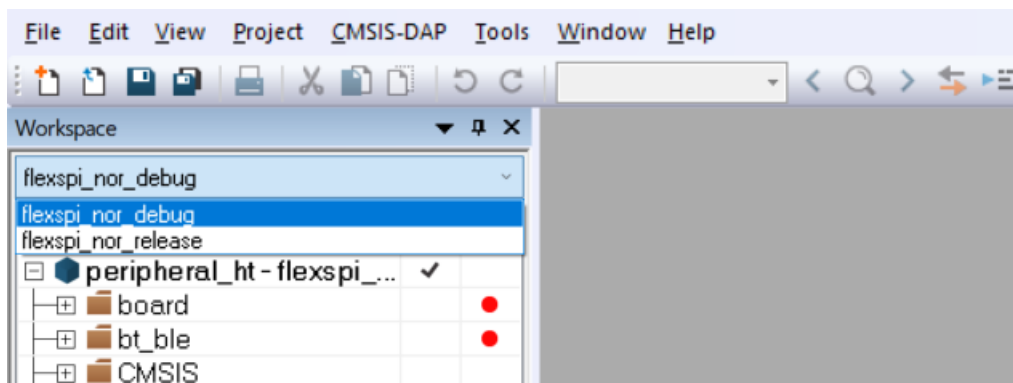
2. Open the IAR workspace file. For example, the highlighted \*.eww format file



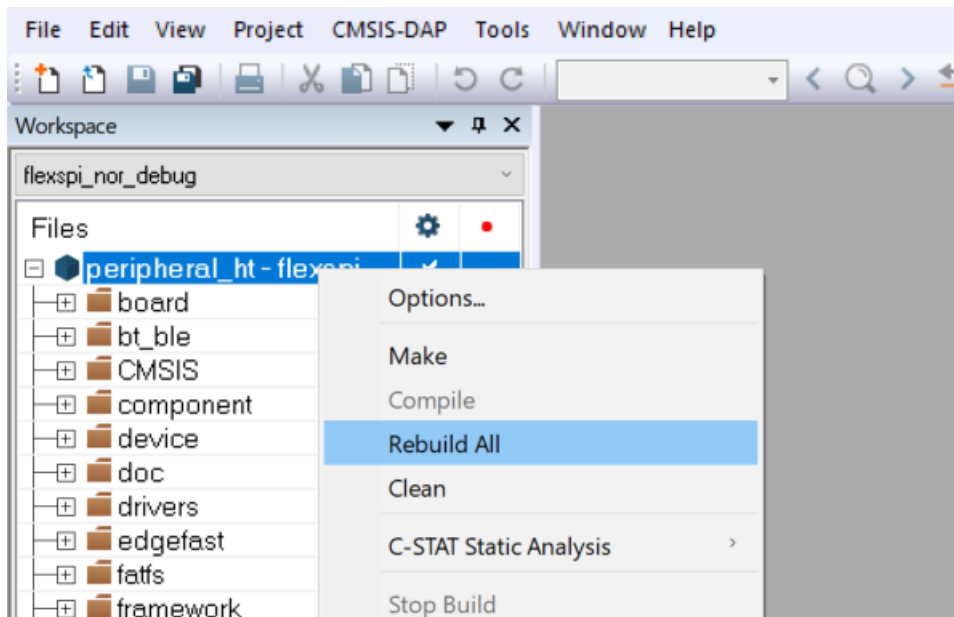
**Parent topic:**Run a demo application using IAR

### Build an IAR example

1. Select flexspi\_nor\_debug or flexspi\_nor\_release configurations from the drop-down selector above the project tree in the workspace.



2. Build the EdgeFast Bluetooth Protocol Abstraction Layer project.

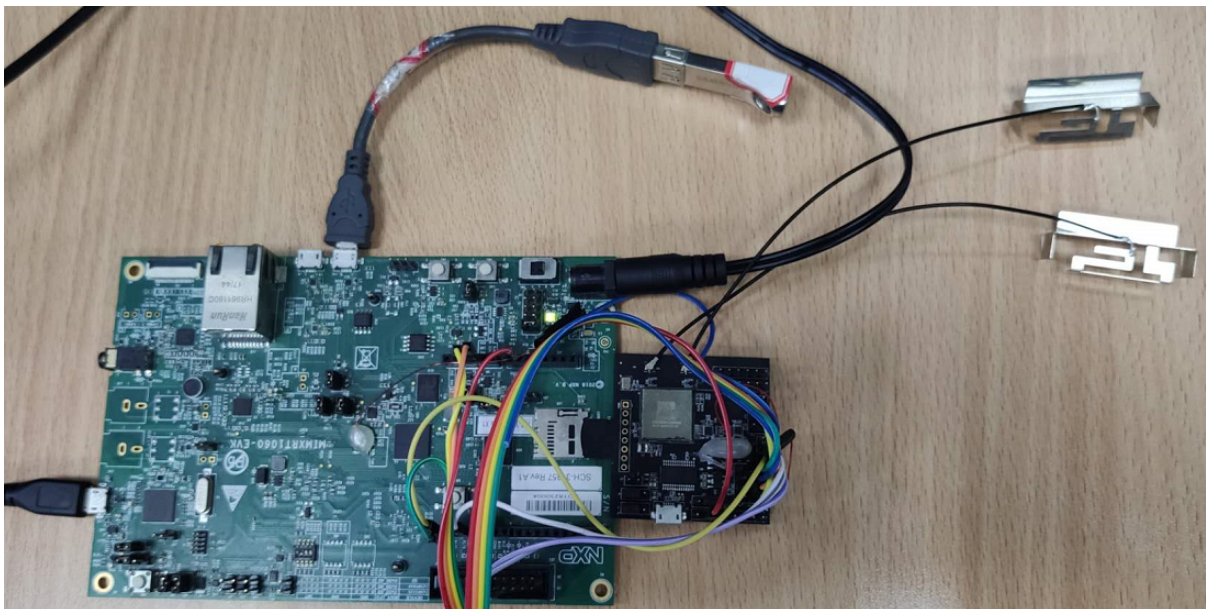


**Note:** Wireless module does not have flash hardware and requires 512 KB image loaded from board (such as RT1060) on system startup. The 512 KB image is kept on RT1060 side and only flexspi\_nor target is supported for Bluetooth examples. Other targets are not supported because memory size limit.

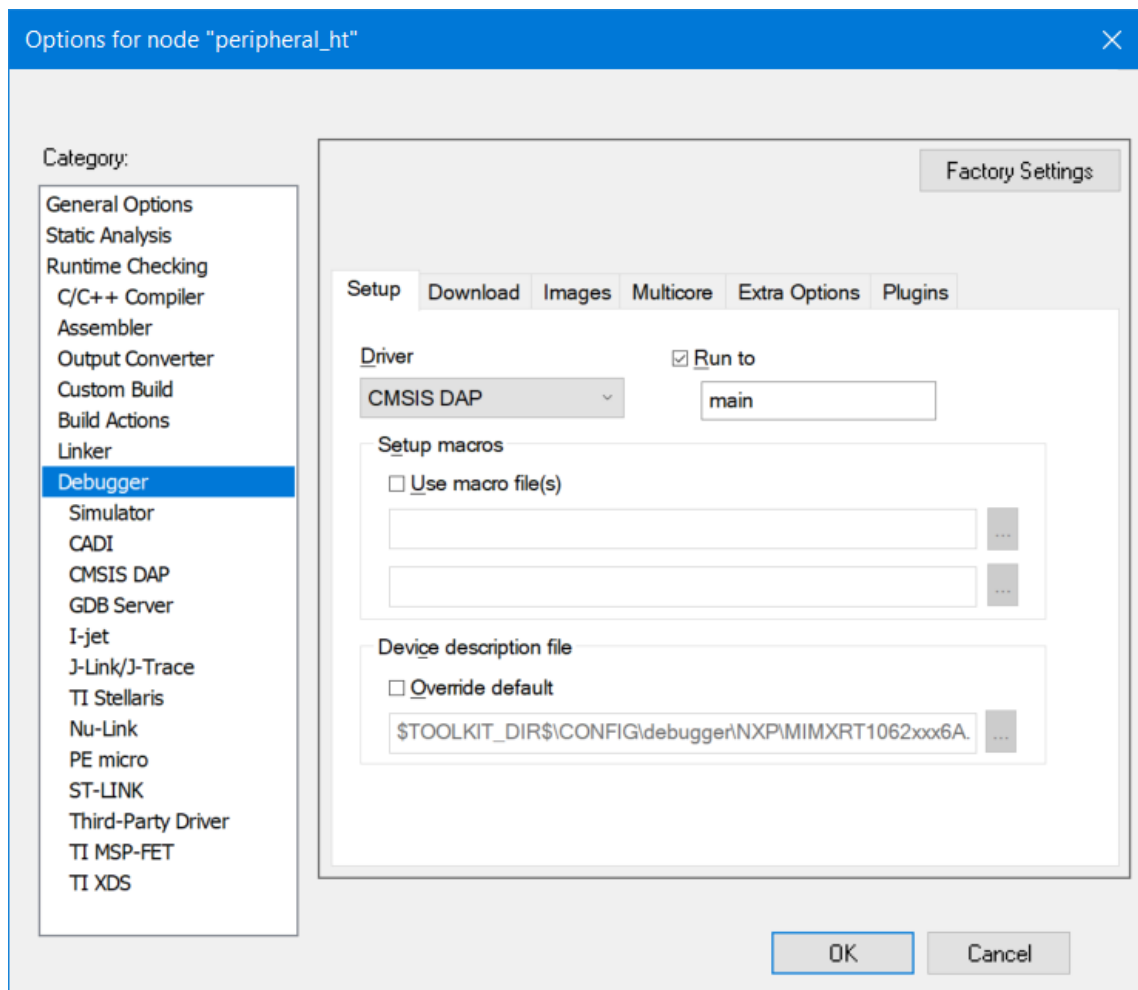
**Parent topic:**Run a demo application using IAR

**Run an IAR example** This document uses the peripheral\_ht as an example to describe the steps to run an example. For details on other projects and compilers, see the readme file in the corresponding example directory.

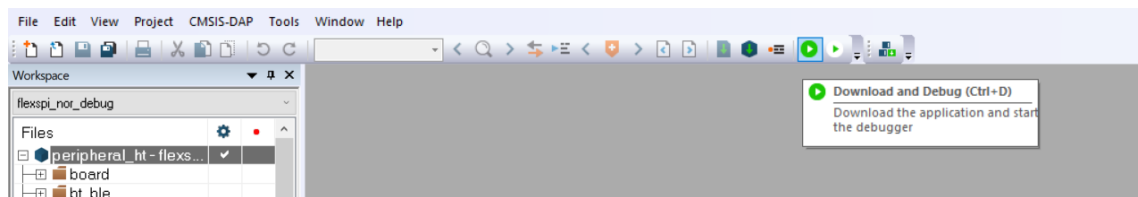
The following figure shows the connection of RT1060 and the uSD wireless module.



1. Connect the USB debug console port to PC. For example, connect J14 of EVKRT1060 to the PC.
2. Connect a 5 V power source to the J1 jack in the Wireless module board.
3. Make the appropriate debugger settings in the project options window, as shown in the figure below.



4. Click the **Download and Debug** button to flash the executable onto the board, as shown in the following figure. After the download is complete, if you must test the function of HFP, stop IAR debugging, and then connect the PCM interface. Reset the target board by manually.



5. Linker layer (LL) Firmware running in wireless module loads from EVKRT1060 by SDIO interface, so need take a bit time to download the LL firmware, “Initialize AW-AM457-uSD Driver” prints in the debug console. For example, it depends on the firmware. For details, see readme.txt.

**Note:** The projects are configured to use “CMSIS DAP” as the default debugger. Ensure that the OpenSDA chip of the board contains a CMSIS. DAP firmware or that the debugger selection corresponds to the physical interface used to interface to the board.

**Parent topic:**Run a demo application using IAR

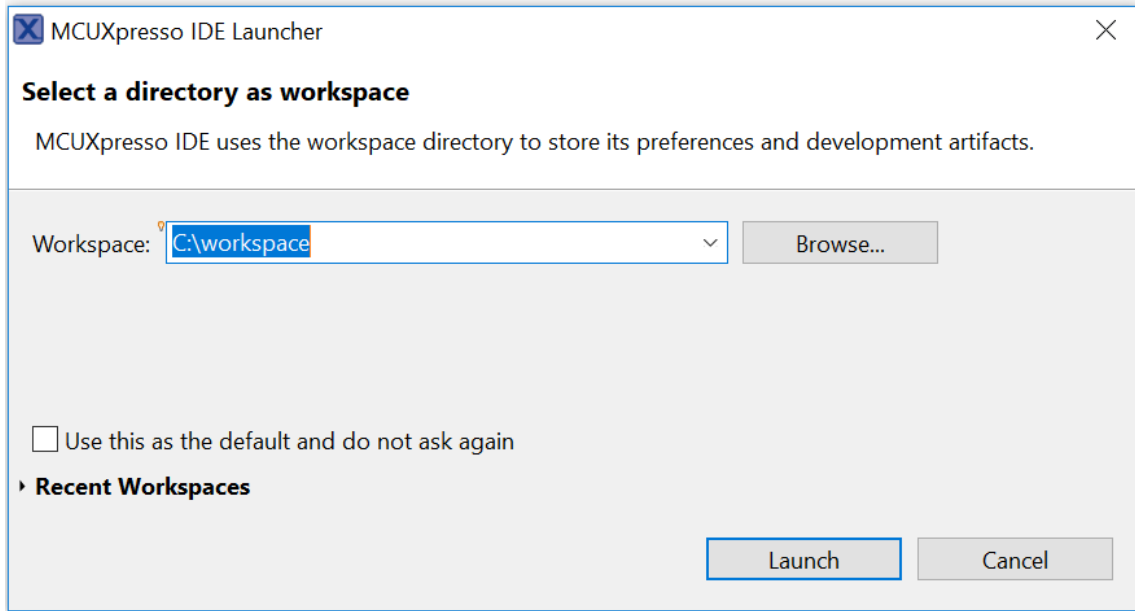
**Parent topic:**[Demo](#)

**Run a demo application using MCUXpresso IDE** This document uses peripheral\_ht example to describe the steps to open a project, build an example, and run a project on MCUXpresso IDE.

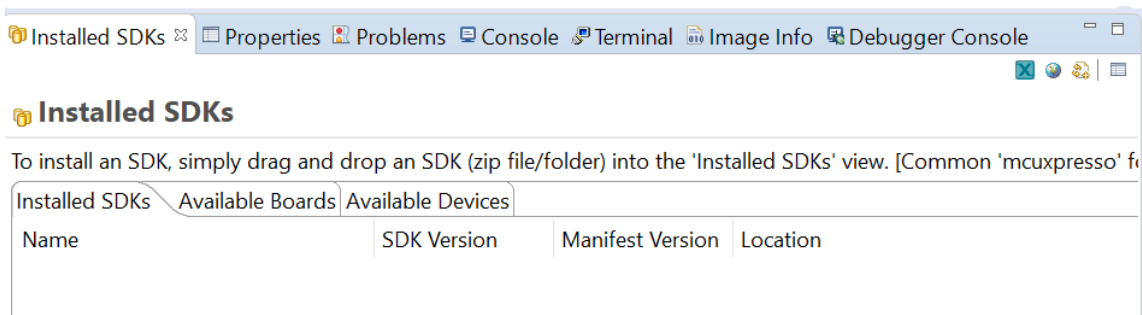
For details, see Section 3 in *Getting Started with MCUXpresso SDK User's Guide* (document MCUXS-DKGSUG) at *root/docs/Getting Started with MCUXpresso SDK.pdf* and refer to the readme file in the corresponding demo's directory.

## Open an MCUXpresso IDE example

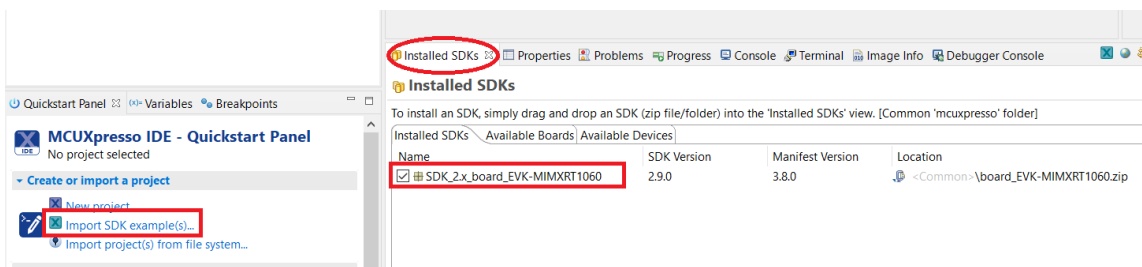
1. Open MCUXpresso IDE and open an existing or a new workspace location.



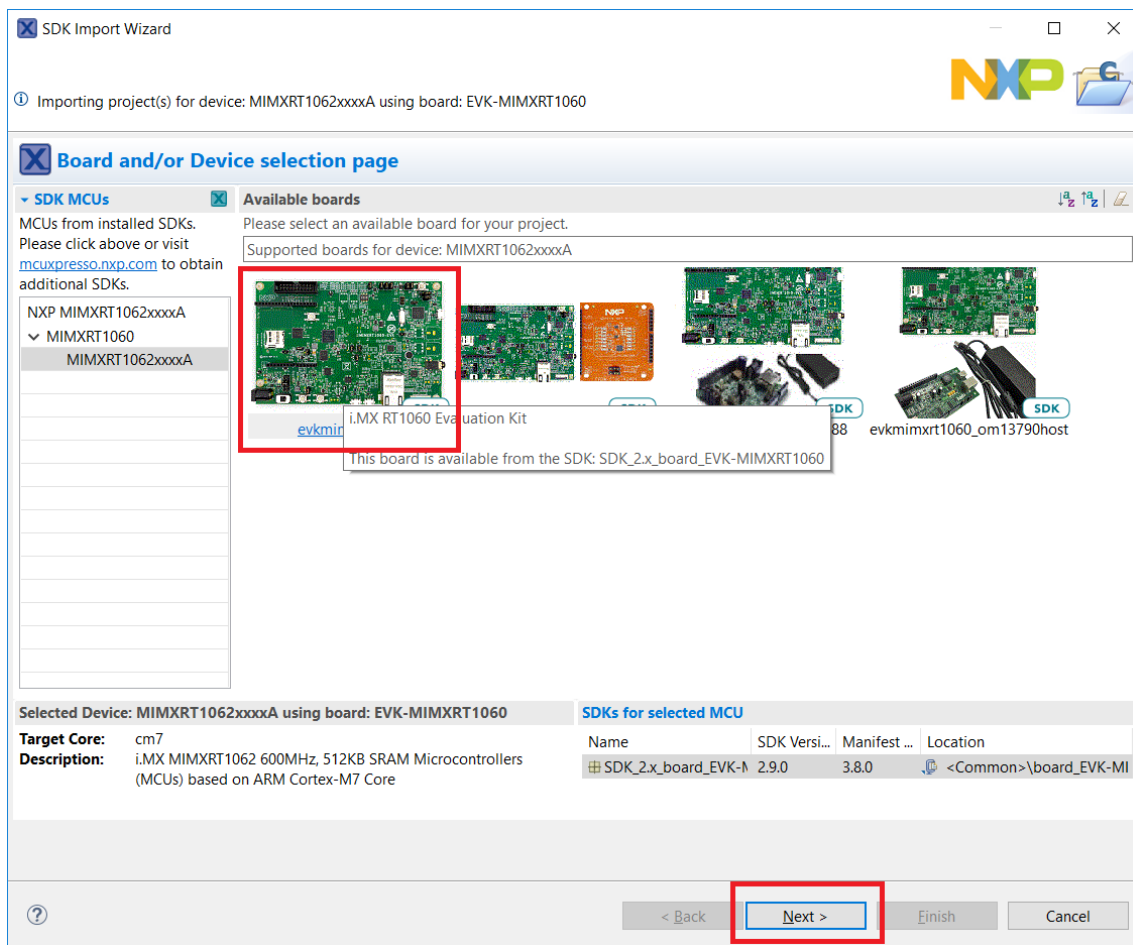
2. Drag and drop the package archive into the MCUXpresso Installed SDKs area in the lower right of the main window.



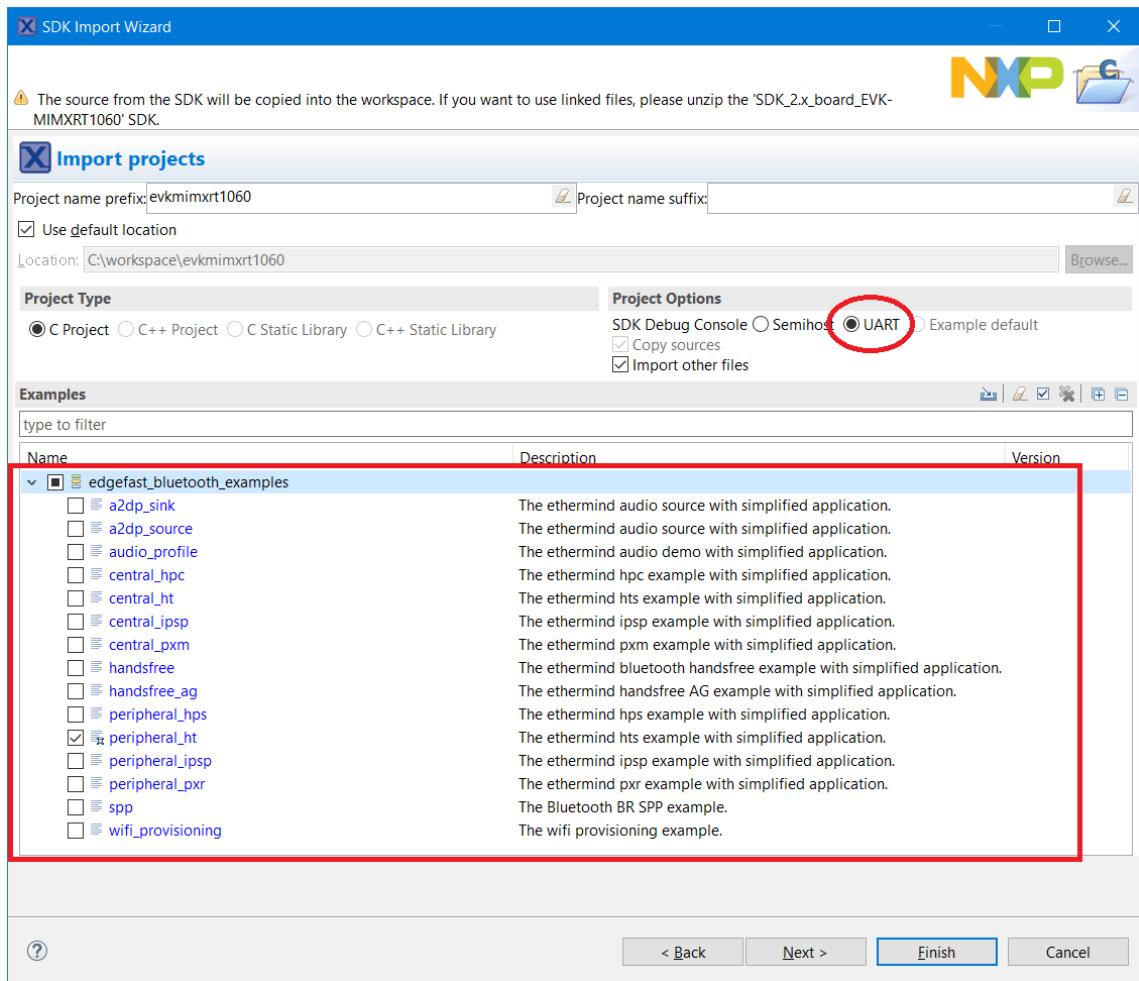
3. After the SDK is loaded successfully, select the **Import the SDK example(s)...** to add examples to your workspace.



4. Select the evkmimxrt1060 board and click the **Next** button to select the desired example(s).



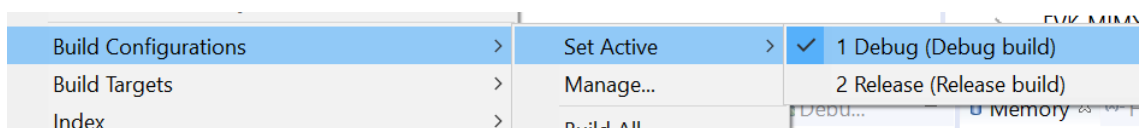
5. Select the evkmimxrt1060 board EdgeFast Bluetooth example. For example, peripheral\_ht.
6. Ensure to change SDK debug console from **Semihost** to **UART**.
7. Click **Finish**.



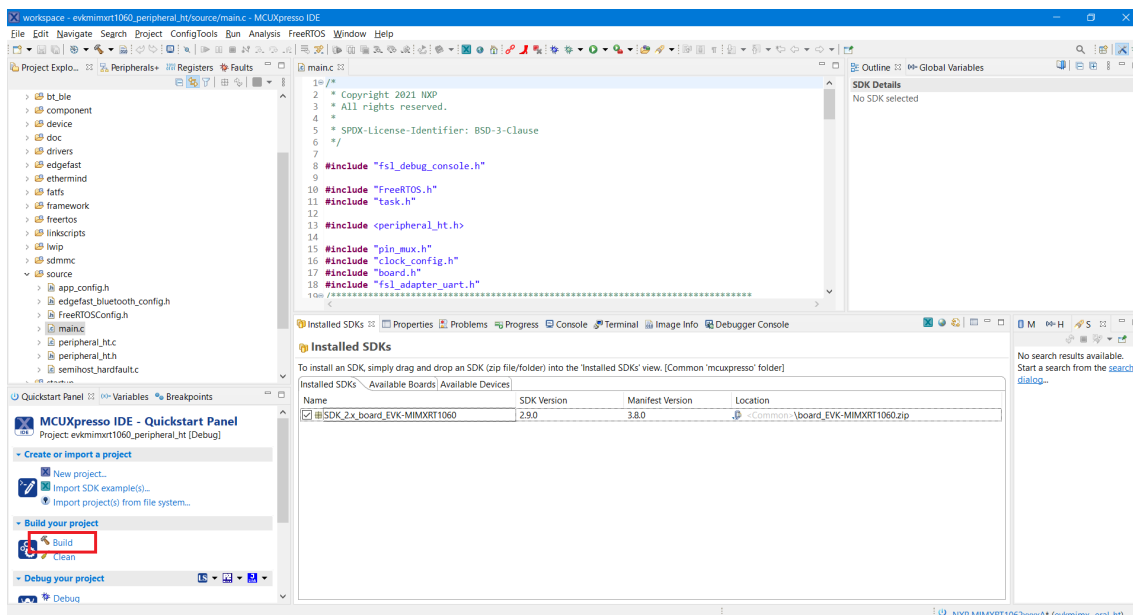
Parent topic:Run a demo application using MCUXpresso IDE

### Build an MCUXpresso IDE example

1. Select desired target for your project.



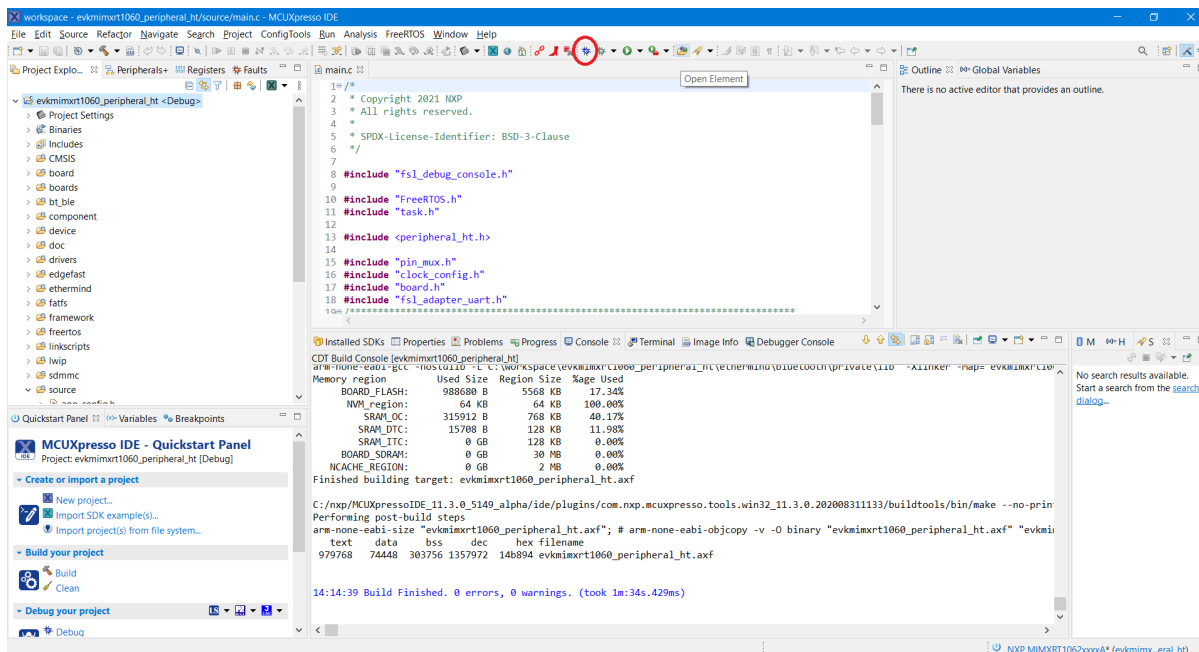
2. Build MCUXpresso IDE EdgeFast Bluetooth Protocol Abstraction Layer project.



Parent topic:Run a demo application using MCUXpresso IDE

**Run an MCUXpresso IDE example** For MCUXpresso IDE project running, all steps are similar to Run an IAR example except the steps of downloading image from compiler.

To download MCUXpresso IDE image to board, click the **Debug** button to download the executable file onto the board.



Parent topic:Run a demo application using MCUXpresso IDE

Parent topic:*Demo*

**Run a demo application using MDK** This document uses peripheral\_ht example to describe the steps to open a project, build an example, and run a project on MDK.

For details, see the related section in the Getting Started with MCUXpresso SDK User’s Guide (document: MCUXSDKGSUG) in the directory *root/docs/* and the readme file in the corresponding demo’s directory.

**Open an MDK project** For the IAR Embedded Workbench, unpack the contents of the archive to a folder on a local drive.

1. The example projects are available at: `<root>/boards/evkmimxrt1060/edgefast_bluetooth_examples/peripheral_ht/mdk`.
2. Open the mdk workspace file. For example, the highlighted \*.uvmpw format file.

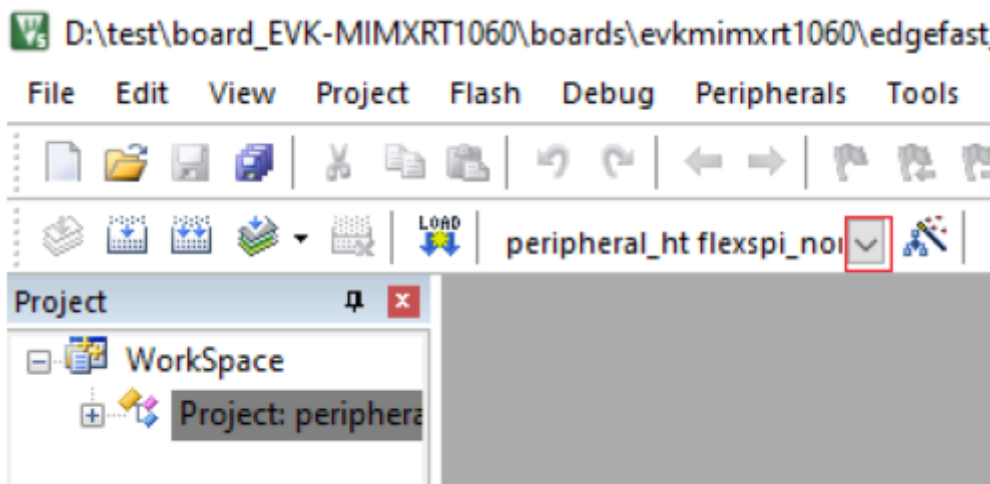
Volume (D:) > test > board\_EVK-MIMXRT1060 > boards > evkmimxrt1060 > edgefast\_bluetooth\_examples > peripheral\_ht > mdk

Name	Type	Size
evkmimxrt1060_flexspi_nor.ini	Configuration settings	3 KB
MIMXRT1062xxxxx_flexspi_nor	File Explorer Command	7 KB
peripheral_ht.uvmpw	Revision Multi-Project	1 KB
peripheral_ht.uvoptx	UVOPTX File	11 KB
peripheral_ht.uvprojx	Revision5 Project	313 KB

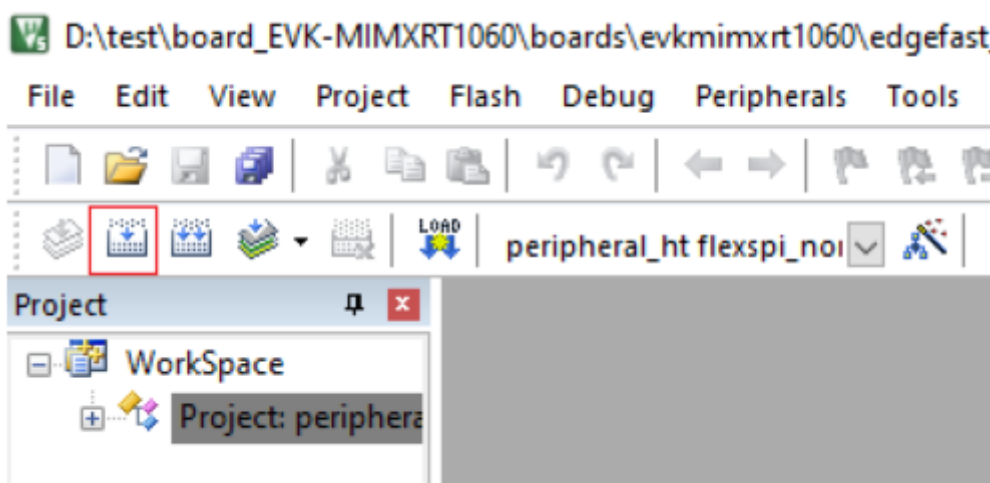
**Parent topic:**Run a demo application using MDK

**Build an MDK example** To build an MDK example:

1. Select *flexspi\_nor\_debug* or *flexspi\_nor\_release* configurations from the drop-down selector above the project tree in the workspace.



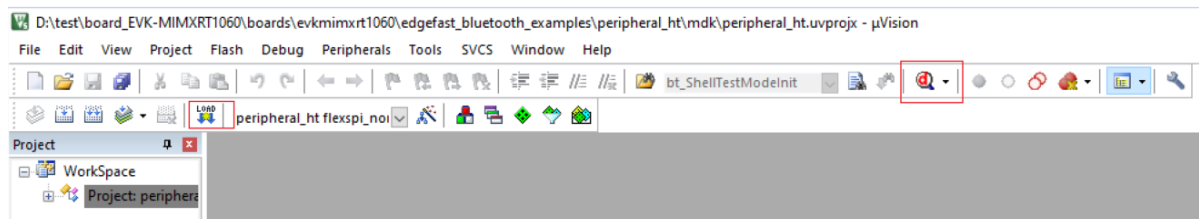
2. Click the highlighted icon to build the EdgeFast Bluetooth Protocol Abstraction Layer project.



**Parent topic:**Run a demo application using MDK

**Run an MDK example** For MDK project running, all steps are similar to Run an IAR example except the steps of downloading image from compiler.

To download the MDK image to the board, click the **Debug** button. The executable file downloads to the board.



**Parent topic:**Run a demo application using MDK

**Parent topic:**[Demo](#)

**Run a demo application using Arm GCC** This document uses peripheral\_ht example to describe the steps to open a project, build an example, and run a project on MDK.

For details, see the related section in *Getting Started with MCUXpresso SDK User's Guide* (document: MCUXSDKGSUG) at *root/docs/* and the readme file in the corresponding demo's directory.

**Setup tool chains** See the section “Run a demo using Arm GCC” of getting start document. For example, *Getting Started with MCUXpresso SDK for MIMXRT1160-EVK*.

**Parent topic:**Run a demo application using Arm GCC

**Build a GCC example** To build a GCC example:

1. Change the directory to the project directory: `<install_dir>\boards\evkmimxrt1060\edgefast_bluetooth_examples\peripheral_ht\armgcc.`
2. Run the build script.

For windows, the script is `build_flexspi_nor_debug.bat/ build_flexspi_nor_release.bat`.

The build output is shown in the following figure.

```
[95%] [96%] [96%] Building C object CMakeFiles/peripheral_ht.elf.dir/D:/test/board_EVK-MIMXRT1060/components/flash/mflash/mimxrt1062/mflash_drv.c.obj
Building C object CMakeFiles/peripheral_ht.elf.dir/D:/test/board_EVK-MIMXRT1060/components/internal_flash/fsl_adapter_flexspi_nor_flash.c.obj
Building C object CMakeFiles/peripheral_ht.elf.dir/D:/test/board_EVK-MIMXRT1060/components/flash/mflash/mflash_file.c.obj
[98%] [97%] Building C object CMakeFiles/peripheral_ht.elf.dir/D:/test/board_EVK-MIMXRT1060/devices/MIMXRT1062/utilities/fsl_shrk.c.obj
Building C object CMakeFiles/peripheral_ht.elf.dir/D:/test/board_EVK-MIMXRT1060/middleware/littlefs/lfs_util.c.obj
[98%] Building C object CMakeFiles/peripheral_ht.elf.dir/D:/test/board_EVK-MIMXRT1060/components/log/fsl_component_log_backend_debugconsole.c.obj
[99%] Building C object CMakeFiles/peripheral_ht.elf.dir/D:/test/board_EVK-MIMXRT1060/components/log/fsl_component_log.c.obj
[100%] Linking C executable flexspi_nor_debug\peripheral_ht.elf
Memory region Used Size Region Size Wrote Used
 m_flash_config: 512 B 4 KB 12.50%
 m_ivt: 48 B 4 KB 1.17%
 m_interrupts: 1 KB 1 KB 100.00%
 m_text: 810540 B 5559 KB 14.24%
 NVN_region: 64 KB 64 KB 100.00%
 m_data2: 2 KB 128 KB 1.56%
 m_data: 314984 B 768 KB 40.05%
[100%] Built target peripheral_ht.elf
PS D:\test\board_EVK-MIMXRT1060\boards\evkmimxrt1060\edgefast_bluetooth_examples\peripheral_ht\armgcc>
```

**Parent topic:**Run a demo application using Arm GCC

**Run a GCC example** Refer to the section “Run a demo using Arm GCC” of the getting start document. For example, see Getting Started with MCUXpresso SDK for MIMXRT1060-EVK. The peripheral\_ht.elf is the target to download.

**Parent topic:**Run a demo application using Arm GCC

**Parent topic:**[Demo](#)

**Download Linker Layer firmware from the reference board** Download the Linker Layer (LL) Firmware from Reference board EVKRT1060 by SDIO interface before running the Bluetooth Controller stack. The LL download is necessary because wireless module does not support flash.

**Parent topic:**[Demo](#)

**Change board-specific parameters** There are some board-specific parameters that can be changed in the application layer for EdgeFast BT PAL.

**Change HCI UART parameters** Since the controller can support different baud rates, the demo provides an interface with configurable baud rates. The function `controller_hci_uart_get_configuration` is used to get HCI UART parameters, including the instance, default baud rate, which depends on the controller, running baud rate which defined by macro `BOARD_BT_UART_BAUDRATE` and so on. If this function returns ‘0’ and the running baud rate is inconsistent with the default baud rate, EdgeFast BT PAL switches the baud rate of the controller to the running baud rate.

**Parent topic:**Change board-specific parameters

**Change USB Host stack parameters** Since the board supports multiple USB ports, the demo provides a configurable interface for USB Host stack. The function `USB_HostGetConfiguration` received the instance of USB for EdgeFast BT PAL. For the case where there is a USBPHY, the demo configures the properties of the PHY through `USB_HostPhyGetConfiguration`.

**Note:** There are series of hex bytes printed on the console after the wireless module resets. However, it does not impact the EdgeFast BT PAL application running.

**Parent topic:**Change board-specific parameters

**Parent topic:**[Demo](#)

**Known issues** This section provides a list of known issues in the release package.

**Notes** This section provides a list of notes to use EdgeFast Bluetooth stack

- the follow configuration items related to resource needs more attention
  - `CONFIG_BT_MAX_CONN` The max connections that can be created.
  - `CONFIG_BT_MAX_PAIRERD` The max supported paired devices.
  - `CONFIG_BT_BUF_EVT_RX_COUNT` The max received hci events and acl data packets at one time if the sys work queue task is blocked. One example is: when LE connection is created and `HCI_LE_Enhanced_Connection_Complete` is received, the sys work queue task is busy with processing the `HCI_LE_Enhanced_Connection_Complete`. If the received hci events exceed `CONFIG_BT_BUF_EVT_RX_COUNT`, it may leads potential issue, please increase value of the macro.
- All the EdgeFast Bluetooth API should be called only after EdgeFast Bluetooth is initialized.
- Don’t send HCI cmd from the sys work queue task or any stack’s callbacks.

## EdgeFast BT PAL configuration documentation `CONFIG_BT_BUF_RESERVE`

Buffer reserved length, suggested value is 8.

### `CONFIG_BT_SNOOP`

Whether enable bt snoop feature, 0 - disable, 1 - enable.

### `CONFIG_BT_HCI_CMD_COUNT`

Number of HCI command buffers, ranging from 2 to 64. Number of buffers available for HCI commands Range 2 to 64 is valid.

### `CONFIG_BT_RX_BUF_COUNT`

Number of HCI RX buffers, ranging from 2 to 255. Number of buffers available for incoming ACL packets or HCI events from the controller Range 2 to 255 is valid.

### `CONFIG_BT_RX_BUF_LEN`

Maximum supported HCI RX buffer length, ranging from 73 to 2000. Maximum data size for each HCI RX buffer. This size includes everything starting with the ACL or HCI event headers. Note that buffer sizes are always rounded up to the nearest multiple of 4, so if this Kconfig value is something else then there is some wasted space. The minimum of 73 has been taken for LE SC which has an L2CAP MTU of 65 bytes. On top of this, The L2CAP header (4 bytes) and the ACL header (also 4 bytes) which yields 73 bytes. Range is 73 to 2000.

### `CONFIG_BT_HCI_RESERVE`

Reserve buffer size for user. Headroom that the driver needs for sending and receiving buffers. Add a new 'default' entry for each new driver.

### `CONFIG_BT_DISCARDABLE_BUF_COUNT`

Number of discardable event buffers, if the macro is set to 0, disable this feature, if greater than 0, this feature is enabled. Number of buffers in a separate buffer pool for events which the HCI driver considers discardable. Examples of such events could be , for example, Advertising Reports. The benefit of having such a pool means that if there is a heavy inflow of such events it does not cause the allocation for other critical events to block and may even eliminate deadlocks in some cases.

### `CONFIG_BT_DISCARDABLE_BUF_SIZE`

Size of discardable event buffers, ranging from 45 to 257. Size of buffers in the separate discardable event buffer pool. The minimum size is set based on the Advertising Report. Setting the buffer can save memory if with size set differently from that of the `CONFIG_BT_RX_BUF_LEN`. range is 45 to 257.

### `CONFIG_BT_HCI_TX_STACK_SIZE`

HCI TX task stack size needed for executing `bt_send` with specified driver, should be no less than 512.

### `CONFIG_BT_HCI_TX_PRIO`

HCI TX task priority.

### `CONFIG_BT_RX_STACK_SIZE`

Size of the receiving thread stack. This is the context from which all event callbacks to the application occur. The default value is sufficient for basic operation, but if the application needs to do advanced things in its callbacks that require extra stack space, this value can be increased to accommodate for that.

### `CONFIG_BT_RX_PRIO`

RX task priority.

### `CONFIG_BT_PERIPHERAL`

Peripheral Role support, if the macro is set to 0, feature is disabled, if 1, feature is enabled. Select this for LE Peripheral role support.

#### **CONFIG\_BT\_BROADCASTER**

Broadcaster Role support, if the macro is set to 0, feature is disabled, if 1, feature is enabled. Select this for LE Broadcaster role support.

#### **CONFIG\_BT\_EXT\_ADV**

Extended Advertising and Scanning support [EXPERIMENTAL], if the macro is set to 0, feature is disabled, if 1, feature is enabled. Select this to enable Extended Advertising API support. This enables support for advertising with multiple advertising sets, extended advertising data, and advertising on LE Coded PHY. It enables support for receiving extended advertising data as a scanner, including support for advertising data over the LE coded PHY. It enables establishing connections over LE Coded PHY.

#### **CONFIG\_BT\_CENTRAL**

Central Role support, if the macro is set to 0, feature is disabled, if 1, feature is enabled. Select this for LE Central role support.

#### **CONFIG\_BT\_WHITELIST**

Enable whitelist support. This option enables the whitelist API. This takes advantage of the whitelisting feature of a Bluetooth LE controller. The whitelist is a global list and the same whitelist is used by both scanner and advertiser. The whitelist cannot be modified while it is in use. An Advertiser can whitelist which peers can connect or request scan response data. A scanner can whitelist advertiser for which it generates advertising reports. Connections can be established automatically for whitelisted peers.

This option deprecates the `bt_le_set_auto_conn` API in favor of the `bt_conn_create_aute_le` API.

#### **CONFIG\_BT\_DEVICE\_NAME**

Bluetooth device name. Name can be up to 248 bytes long (excluding NULL termination). Can be empty string.

#### **CONFIG\_BT\_DEVICE\_APPEARANCE**

Bluetooth device appearance. For the list of possible values, see the link: [www.bluetooth.com/specifications/assigned-numbers](http://www.bluetooth.com/specifications/assigned-numbers).

#### **CONFIG\_BT\_DEVICE\_NAME\_DYNAMIC**

Allow to set Bluetooth device name on runtime. Enabling this option allows for runtime configuration of Bluetooth device name.

#### **CONFIG\_BT\_ID\_MAX**

Maximum number of local identities, range 1 to 10 is valid. Maximum number of supported local identity addresses. For most products, this is safe to leave as the default value (1). Range 1 to 10 is valid.

#### **CONFIG\_BT\_CONN**

Connection enablement, if the macro is set to 0, feature is disabled, if 1, feature is enabled.

#### **CONFIG\_BT\_MAX\_CONN**

it is the max connection supported by host stack. Maximum number of simultaneous Bluetooth connections supported.

#### **CONFIG\_BT\_HCI\_ACL\_FLOW\_CONTROL**

Controller to host ACL flow control support. Enable support for throttling ACL buffers from the controller to the host. This is useful when the host and controller are on separate cores, since it ensures that we do not run out of incoming ACL buffers.

#### **CONFIG\_BT\_PHY\_UPDATE**

PHY Update, if the macro is set to 0, feature is disabled, if 1, feature is enabled. Enable support for Bluetooth 5.0 PHY Update Procedure.

#### **CONFIG\_BT\_DATA\_LEN\_UPDATE**

Data Length Update. If the macro is set to 0, feature is disabled, if 1, feature is enabled. Enable support for Bluetooth v4.2 LE Data Length Update procedure.

#### **CONFIG\_BT\_CREATE\_CONN\_TIMEOUT**

Timeout for pending LE Create Connection command in seconds.

#### **CONFIG\_BT\_CONN\_PARAM\_UPDATE\_TIMEOUT**

Peripheral connection parameter update timeout in milliseconds, range 1 to 65535 is valid. The value is a timeout used by peripheral device to wait until it starts the connection parameters update procedure to change default connection parameters. The default value is set to 5s, to comply with BT protocol specification: Core 4.2 Vol 3, Part C, 9.3.12.2 Range 1 to 65535 is valid.

#### **CONFIG\_BT\_CONN\_TX\_MAX**

Maximum number of pending TX buffers. Maximum number of pending TX buffers that have not yet been acknowledged by the controller.

#### **CONFIG\_BT\_REMOTE\_INFO**

Enable application access to remote information. Enable application access to the remote information available in the stack. The remote information is retrieved once a connection has been established and the application is notified when this information is available through the `remote_version_available` connection callback.

#### **CONFIG\_BT\_REMOTE\_VERSION**

Enable fetching of remote version. Enable this to get access to the remote version in the Controller and in the host through `bt_conn_get_info()`. The fields in question can be then found in the `bt_conn_info` struct.

#### **CONFIG\_BT\_SMP\_SC\_ONLY**

Secure Connections Only Mode. This option enables support for Secure Connection Only Mode. In this mode device shall only use Security Mode 1 Level 4 with exception for services that only require Security Mode 1 Level 1 (no security). Security Mode 1 Level 4 stands for authenticated LE Secure Connections pairing with encryption. Enabling this option disables legacy pairing.

#### **CONFIG\_BT\_SMP\_OOB\_LEGACY\_PAIR\_ONLY**

Force Out of Band Legacy pairing. This option disables Legacy and LE SC pairing and forces legacy OOB.

#### **CONFIG\_BT\_SMP\_DISABLE\_LEGACY\_JW\_PASSKEY**

Forbid usage of insecure legacy pairing methods. This option disables Just Works and Passkey legacy pairing methods to increase security.

#### **CONFIG\_BT\_PRIVACY**

Privacy Feature, if the macro is set to 0, feature is disabled, if 1, feature is enabled. Enable local Privacy Feature support. This makes it possible to use Resolvable Private Addresses (RPAs).

#### **CONFIG\_BT\_ECC**

Enable ECDH key generation support. This option adds support for ECDH HCI commands.

#### **CONFIG\_BT\_TINYCRYPT\_ECC**

Use TinyCrypt library for ECDH. If this option is used to set TinyCrypt library which is used for emulating the ECDH HCI commands and events needed by e.g. LE Secure Connections. In builds including the Bluetooth LE host, if don't set the controller crypto which is used for ECDH and if the controller doesn't support the required HCI commands the LE Secure Connections support will be disabled. In builds including the HCI Raw interface and the Bluetooth LE controller, this

option injects support for the 2 HCI commands required for LE Secure Connections so that hosts can make use of those. The option defaults to enabled for a combined build with Zephyr's own controller, since it does not have any special ECC support itself (at least not currently).

**CONFIG\_BT\_TINYCRYPT\_ECC\_PRIORITY**

Thread priority of ECC Task.

**CONFIG\_BT\_HCI\_ECC\_STACK\_SIZE**

Thread stack size of ECC Task.

**CONFIG\_BT\_RPA**

Bluetooth Resolvable Private Address (RPA)

**CONFIG\_BT\_RPA\_TIMEOUT**

Resolvable Private Address timeout, defaults to 900 seconds. This option defines how often resolvable private address is rotated. Value is provided in seconds and defaults to 900 seconds (15 minutes).

**CONFIG\_BT\_SIGNING**

Data signing support, if the macro is set to 0, feature is disabled, if 1, feature is enabled. This option enables data signing which is used for transferring authenticated data in an unencrypted connection.

**CONFIG\_BT\_SMP\_APP\_PAIRING\_ACCEPT**

Accept or reject pairing initiative. When receiving pairing request or pairing response queries, the application shall either accept proceeding with pairing or not. This is for pairing over SMP and does not affect SSP, which will continue pairing without querying the application. The application can return an error code, which is translated into an SMP return value if the pairing is not allowed.

**CONFIG\_BT\_SMP\_ALLOW\_UNAUTH\_OVERWRITE**

Allow unauthenticated pairing for paired device. This option allows all unauthenticated pairing attempts made by the peer where an unauthenticated bond already exists. This would enable cases where an attacker could copy the peer device address to connect and start an unauthenticated pairing procedure to replace the existing bond. When this option is disabled in order to create a new bond the old bond must be explicitly deleted with `bt_unpair`.

**CONFIG\_BT\_FIXED\_PASSKEY**

Use a fixed passkey for pairing, set passkey to fixed or not. With this option enabled, the application will be able to call the `bt_passkey_set()` API to set a fixed passkey. If set, the `pairing_confirm()` callback will be called for all incoming pairings.

**CONFIG\_BT\_BONDABLE**

Bondable Mode, if the macro is set to 0, feature is disabled, if 1, feature is enabled. This option enables support for Bondable Mode. In this mode, Bonding flag in AuthReq of SMP Pairing Request/Response is set indicating the support for this mode.

**CONFIG\_BT\_BONDING\_REQUIRED**

Always require bonding. When this option is enabled remote devices are required to always set the bondable flag in their pairing request. Any other kind of requests will be rejected.

**CONFIG\_BT\_SMP\_ENFORCE\_MITM**

Enforce MITM protection, if the macro is set to 0, feature is disabled, if 1, feature is enabled. With this option enabled, the Security Manager is set MITM option in the Authentication Requirements Flags whenever local IO Capabilities allow the generated key to be authenticated.

**CONFIG\_BT\_OOB\_DATA\_FIXED**

Use a fixed random number for LESC OOB pairing. With this option enabled, the application will be able to perform LESC pairing with OOB data that consists of fixed random number and confirm value. This option should only be enabled for debugging and should never be used in production.

#### **CONFIG\_BT\_KEYS\_OVERWRITE\_OLDEST**

Overwrite oldest keys with new ones if key storage is full. With this option enabled, if a pairing attempt occurs and the key storage is full, then the oldest keys in storage will be removed to free space for the new pairing keys.

#### **CONFIG\_BT\_HOST\_CCM**

Enable host side AES-CCM module. Enables the software-based AES-CCM engine in the host. Will use the controller's AES encryption functions if available, or BT\_HOST\_CRYPT0 otherwise.

#### **CONFIG\_BT\_L2CAP\_RX\_MTU**

Maximum supported L2CAP MTU for incoming data, if CONFIG\_BT\_SMP is set, range is 65 to 1300, otherwise range is 23 to 1300. Maximum size of each incoming L2CAP PDU. Range is 23 to 1300 range is 65 to 1300 for CONFIG\_BT\_SMP.

#### **CONFIG\_BT\_L2CAP\_TX\_BUF\_COUNT**

Number of buffers available for outgoing L2CAP packets, ranging from 2 to 255. Range is 2 to 255.

#### **CONFIG\_BT\_L2CAP\_TX\_FRAG\_COUNT**

Number of L2CAP TX fragment buffers, ranging from 0 to 255. Number of buffers available for fragments of TX buffers.

Warning: Setting this to 0 means that the application must ensure that queued TX buffers never need to be fragmented, that is the controller's buffer size is large enough. If this is not ensured, and there are no dedicated fragment buffers, a deadlock may occur. In most cases the default value of 2 is a safe bet. Range is 0 to 255.

#### **CONFIG\_BT\_L2CAP\_TX\_MTU**

Maximum supported L2CAP MTU for L2CAP TX buffers, if CONFIG\_BT\_SMP is set, the range is 65 to 2000. Otherwise, range is 23 to 2000. Range is 23 to 2000. Range is 65 to 2000 for CONFIG\_BT\_SMP.

#### **CONFIG\_BT\_L2CAP\_DYNAMIC\_CHANNEL**

L2CAP Dynamic Channel support. This option enables support for LE Connection oriented Channels, allowing the creation of dynamic L2CAP Channels.

#### **CONFIG\_BT\_L2CAP\_DYNAMIC\_CHANNEL**

L2CAP Dynamic Channel support. This option enables support for LE Connection oriented Channels, allowing the creation of dynamic L2CAP Channels.

Bluetooth BR/EDR support [EXPERIMENTAL] This option enables Bluetooth BR/EDR support.

#### **CONFIG\_BT\_ATT\_PREPARE\_COUNT**

Number of ATT prepares write buffers, if the macro is set to 0, feature is disabled, if greater than 1, feature is enabled. Number of buffers available for ATT prepares write, setting this to 0 disables GATT long/reliable writes.

#### **CONFIG\_BT\_ATT\_TX\_MAX**

Maximum number of queued outgoing ATT PDUs. Number of ATT PDUs that can be at a single moment queued for transmission. If the application tries to send more than this amount the calls blocks until an existing queued PDU gets sent. Range is 1 to CONFIG\_BT\_L2CAP\_TX\_BUF\_COUNT.

#### **CONFIG\_BT\_GATT\_SERVICE\_CHANGED**

GATT Service Changed support, if the macro is set to 0, feature is disabled, if 1, feature is enabled. This option enables support for the service changed characteristic.

#### **CONFIG\_BT\_GATT\_DYNAMIC\_DB**

GATT dynamic database support, if the macro is set to 0, feature is disabled, if 1, feature is enabled. This option enables registering/unregistering services at runtime.

#### **CONFIG\_BT\_GATT\_CACHING**

GATT Caching support, if the macro is set to 0, feature is disabled, if 1, feature is enabled. This option enables support for GATT Caching. When enabled the stack registers Client Supported Features and Database Hash characteristics which is used by clients to detect if anything has changed on the GATT database.

#### **CONFIG\_BT\_GATT\_CLIENT**

GATT client support, if the macro is set to 0, feature is disabled, if 1, feature is enabled. This option enables support for the GATT Client role.

#### **CONFIG\_BT\_GATT\_READ\_MULTIPLE**

GATT Read Multiple Characteristic. Values support, if the macro is set to 0, feature is disabled, if 1, feature is enabled. This option enables support for the GATT Read Multiple Characteristic Values procedure.

#### **CONFIG\_BT\_GAP\_AUTO\_UPDATE\_CONN\_PARAMS**

Automatic Update of Connection Parameters, if the macro is set to 0, feature is disabled, if 1, feature is enabled. This option, if enabled, allows automatically sending request for connection parameters update after GAP recommended 5 seconds of connection as peripheral.

#### **CONFIG\_BT\_GAP\_PERIPHERAL\_PREF\_PARAMS**

Configure peripheral preferred connection parameters. This configures peripheral preferred connection parameters. Enabling this option results in adding PPCP characteristic in GAP. If disabled it is up to application to set expected connection parameters.

#### **CONFIG\_BT\_MAX\_PAIRED**

Maximum number of paired devices. Maximum number of paired Bluetooth devices. The minimum (and default) number is 1.

#### **CONFIG\_BT\_MAX\_SCO\_CONN**

Maximum number of simultaneous SCO connections. Maximum number of simultaneous Bluetooth synchronous connections supported. The minimum (and default) number is 1. Range 1 to 3 is valid.

#### **CONFIG\_BT\_RFCOMM**

Bluetooth RFCOMM protocol support [EXPERIMENTAL], if the macro is set to 0, feature is disabled, if 1, feature is enabled. This option enables Bluetooth RFCOMM support.

#### **CONFIG\_BT\_RFCOMM\_L2CAP\_MTU**

L2CAP MTU for RFCOMM frames. Maximum size of L2CAP PDU for RFCOMM frames.

#### **CONFIG\_BT\_HFP\_HF**

Bluetooth Handsfree profile HF Role support [EXPERIMENTAL], if the macro is set to 0, feature is disabled, if 1, feature is enabled. This option enables Bluetooth HF support.

#### **CONFIG\_BT\_AVDTP**

Bluetooth AVDTP protocol support [EXPERIMENTAL], if the macro is set to 0, feature is disabled, if 1, feature is enabled. This option enables Bluetooth AVDTP support.

#### **CONFIG\_BT\_A2DP**

Bluetooth A2DP Profile [EXPERIMENTAL]. This option enables the A2DP profile.

#### **CONFIG\_BT\_A2DP\_SOURCE**

Bluetooth A2DP profile source function. This option enables the A2DP profile Source function.

#### **CONFIG\_BT\_A2DP\_SINK**

Bluetooth A2DP profile sink function. This option enables the A2DP profile Sink function.

#### **CONFIG\_BT\_A2DP\_TASK\_PRIORITY**

Bluetooth A2DP profile task priority. This option sets the task priority. The task is used to process the streamer data and retry command.

#### **CONFIG\_BT\_A2DP\_TASK\_STACK\_SIZE**

Bluetooth A2DP profile task stack size. This option sets the task stack size.

#### **CONFIG\_BT\_PAGE\_TIMEOUT**

Bluetooth Page Timeout. This option sets the page timeout value. Value is selected as  $(N * 0.625)$  ms.

#### **CONFIG\_BT\_DIS\_MODEL**

Model name. The device model inside Device Information Service.

#### **CONFIG\_BT\_DIS\_MANUF**

Manufacturer name. The device manufacturer inside Device Information Service.

#### **CONFIG\_BT\_DIS\_PNP**

Enable PnP\_ID characteristic. Enable PnP\_ID characteristic in Device Information Service.

#### **CONFIG\_BT\_DIS\_PNP\_VID\_SRC**

Vendor ID source, range 1 - 2. The Vendor ID Source field designates which organization assigned the value used in the Vendor ID field value. The possible values are:

- 1 Bluetooth SIG, the Vendor ID was assigned by the Bluetooth SIG
- 2 USB IF, the Vendor ID was assigned by the USB IF

#### **CONFIG\_BT\_DIS\_PNP\_VID**

Vendor ID, range 0 - 0xFFFF. The Vendor ID field is intended to uniquely identify the vendor of the device. This field is used in conjunction with Vendor ID Source field, which determines which organization assigned the Vendor ID field value. Note: The Bluetooth Special Interest Group assigns Device ID Vendor ID, and the USB Implementers Forum assigns Vendor IDs, either of which can be used for the Vendor ID field value. Device providers should procure the Vendor ID from the USB Implementers Forum or the Company Identifier from the Bluetooth SIG.

#### **CONFIG\_BT\_DIS\_PNP\_PID**

Product ID, range 0 - 0xFFFF. The Product ID field is intended to distinguish between different products made by the vendor identified with the Vendor ID field. The vendors themselves manage Product ID field values.

#### **CONFIG\_BT\_DIS\_PNP\_VER**

Product Version, range 0 - 0xFFFF. The Product Version field is a numeric expression identifying the device release number in Binary-Coded Decimal. This is a vendor-assigned value, which defines the version of the product identified by the Vendor ID and Product ID fields. This field is intended to differentiate between versions of products with identical Vendor IDs and Product IDs. The value of the field value is 0xJJMN for version JJ.M.N (JJ - major version number, M - minor version number, N - subminor version number); For example, version 2.1.3 is represented with value 0x0213 and version 2.0.0 is represented with a value of 0x0200. When upward-compatible changes are made to the device, it is recommended that the minor version number be incremented. If incompatible changes are made to the device. It is recommended that the major version number is incremented. The subminor version is incremented for bug fixes.

**CONFIG\_BT\_DIS\_SERIAL\_NUMBER**

Enable DIS Serial number characteristic, 1 - enable, 0 - disable. Enable Serial Number characteristic in Device Information Service.

**CONFIG\_BT\_DIS\_SERIAL\_NUMBER\_STR**

Serial Number. Serial Number characteristic string in Device Information Service.

**CONFIG\_BT\_DIS\_FW\_REV**

Enable DIS Firmware Revision characteristic, 1 - enable, 0 - disable. Enable Firmware Revision characteristic in Device Information Service.

**CONFIG\_BT\_DIS\_FW\_REV\_STR**

Firmware revision. Firmware Revision characteristic String in Device Information Service.

**CONFIG\_BT\_DIS\_HW\_REV**

Enable DIS Hardware Revision characteristic, 1 - enable, 0 - disable. Enable Hardware Revision characteristic in Device Information Service.

**CONFIG\_BT\_DIS\_HW\_REV\_STR**

Hardware revision. Hardware Revision characteristic String in Device Information Service.

**CONFIG\_BT\_DIS\_SW\_REV**

Enable DIS Software Revision characteristic, 1 - enable, 0 - disable. Enable Software Revision characteristic in Device Information Service.

**CONFIG\_BT\_DIS\_SW\_REV\_STR**

Software revision Software revision characteristic String in Device Information Service.

**CONFIG\_SYSTEM\_WORKQUEUE\_STACK\_SIZE**

System work queue stack size.

**CONFIG\_SYSTEM\_WORKQUEUE\_PRIORITY**

System work queue priority.

**CONFIG\_BT\_HCI\_TRANSPORT\_INTERFACE\_TYPE**

HCI transport interface type.

**CONFIG\_BT\_HCI\_TRANSPORT\_INTERFACE\_INSTANCE**

HCI transport interface instance number.

**CONFIG\_BT\_HCI\_TRANSPORT\_INTERFACE\_SPEED**

HCI transport interface rate. Configures the interface speed, for example, the default interface is h4, the speed to 115200

**CONFIG\_BT\_HCI\_TRANSPORT\_TX\_THREAD**

Whether enable HCI transport TX thread.

**CONFIG\_BT\_HCI\_TRANSPORT\_RX\_THREAD**

Whether enable HCI transport RX thread.

**CONFIG\_BT\_HCI\_TRANSPORT\_RX\_STACK\_SIZE**

HCI transport RX thread stack size.

**CONFIG\_BT\_HCI\_TRANSPORT\_TX\_STACK\_SIZE**

HCI transport TX thread stack size.

**CONFIG\_BT\_HCI\_TRANSPORT\_TX\_PRIO**

HCI transport TX thread priority.

#### **CONFIG\_BT\_HCI\_TRANSPORT\_RX\_PRIO**

HCI transport RX thread priority.

#### **CONFIG\_BT\_MSG\_QUEUE\_COUNT**

Message number in message queue.

### **Rework Guide for EdgeFast Bluetooth Protocol Abstraction Layer**

**Hardware Rework Guide for MIMXRT1170-EVKB and Murata M.2 Module** This section is a brief hardware rework guidance of the EdgeFast Bluetooth PAL on the NXP i.MX MIMXRT1170-EVKB and the Murata's 1XK, 1ZM, 2EL or 2LL solution - direct M.2 connection to Embedded Artists EAR00385 (1XK), EAR00364 (1ZM), Rev-A1 (2EL) or EAR00500 (2LL) M.2 modules.

The hardware rework has two parts:

- HCI UART rework
- PCM interface rework

#### **Hardware rework**

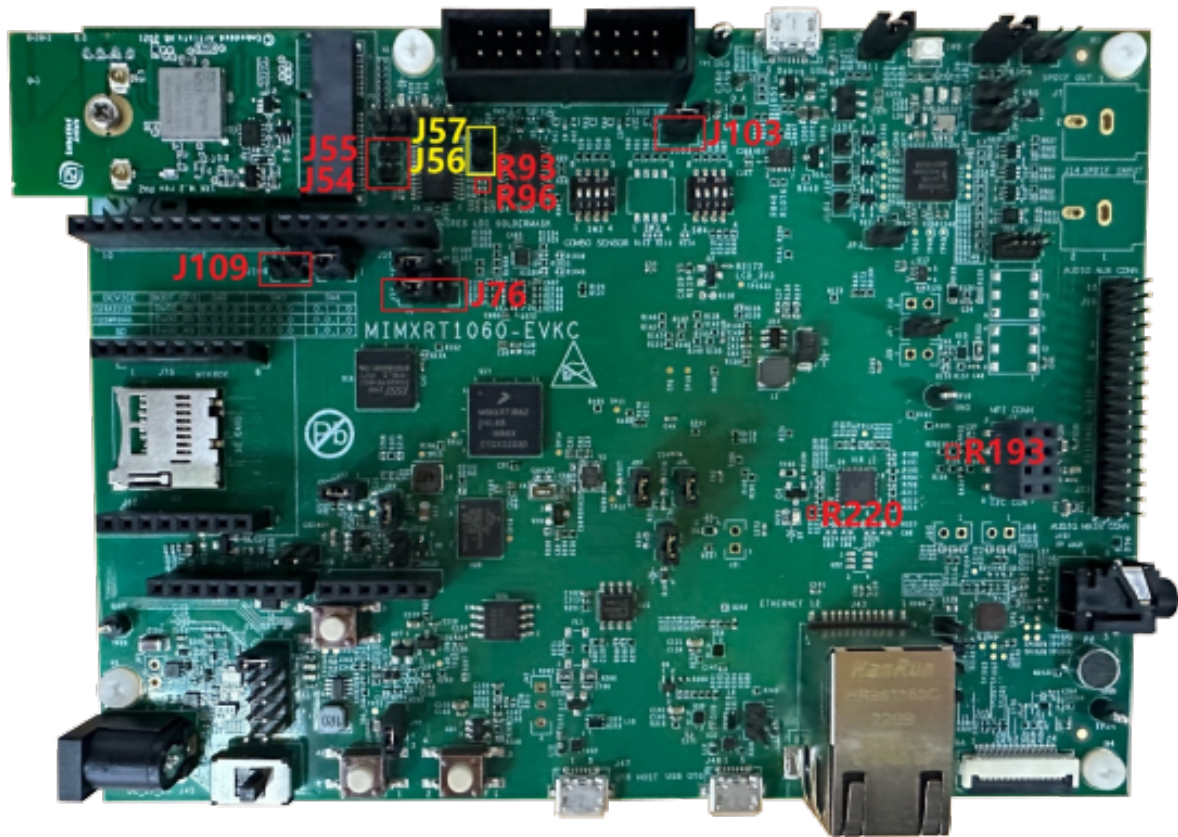
- **HCI UART rework**

1. Mount R93, R96.
2. Remove R193.
3. Connect J109, connect J76 2-3.

- **PCM interface rework**

1. Remove J54 and J55, connect J56 and J57.
2. Remove R220.
3. Connect J103.

**Note:** When J103 is connected, flash cannot be downloaded. So, remove the connection when downloading flash and reconnect it after downloading.



**Parent topic:** [Hardware Rework Guide for MIMXRT1060-EVKC and Murata M.2 Module](#)

**Hardware Rework Guide for MIMXRT1170-EVKB and Murata 2EL M.2 Module** Hardware Rework Guide for MIMXRT1170-EVKB and Murata 2EL M.2 Module

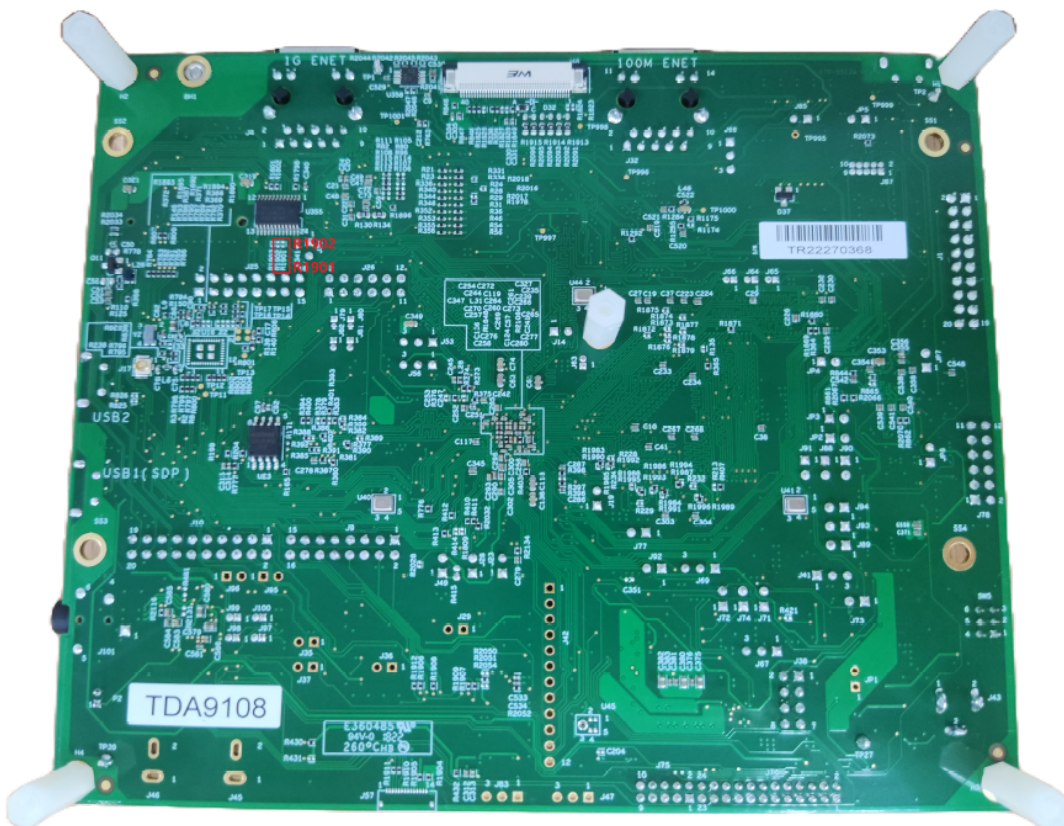
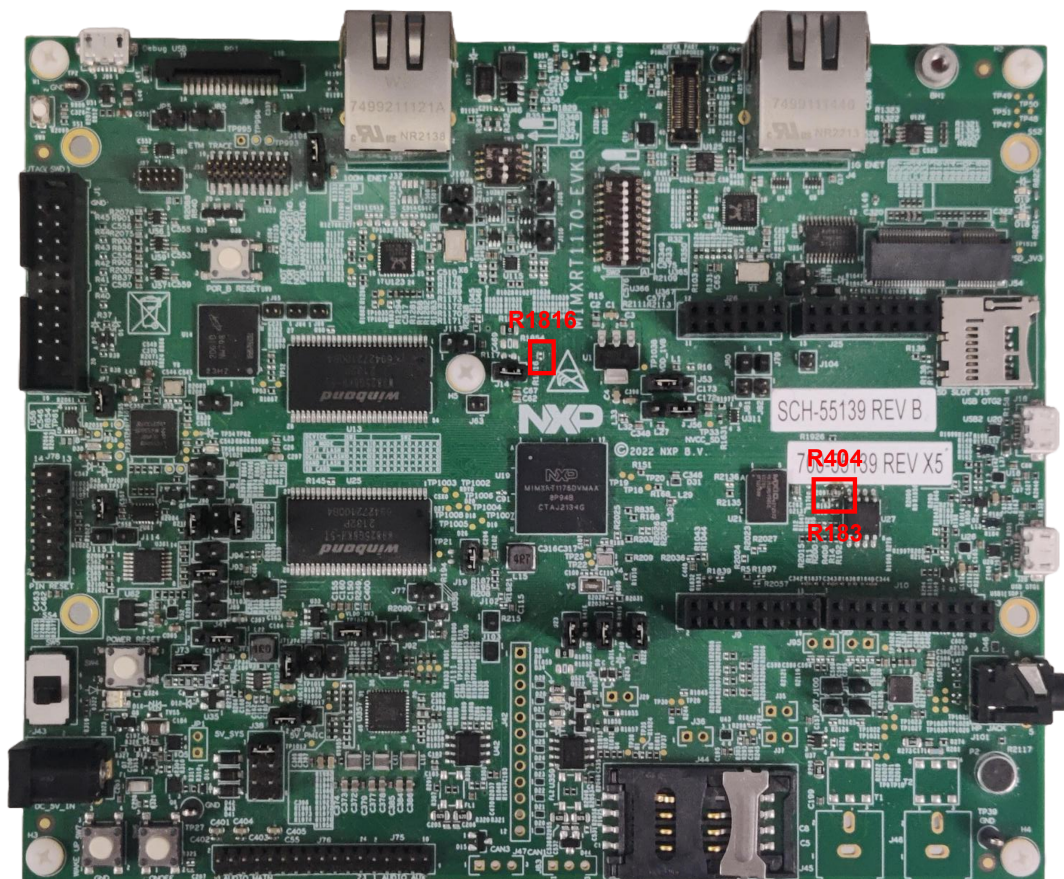
This section is a brief hardware rework guidance of the EdgeFast Bluetooth PAL on the NXP i.MX MIMXRT1170-EVKB and the Murata 2EL M.2 solution - direct M.2 connection to Embedded Artists' Rev-A1 (2EL) M.2 modules.

The hardware rework has three parts:

- HCI UART rework
- PCM interface rework
- LE Audio Synchronization interface rework (only used on sink side)

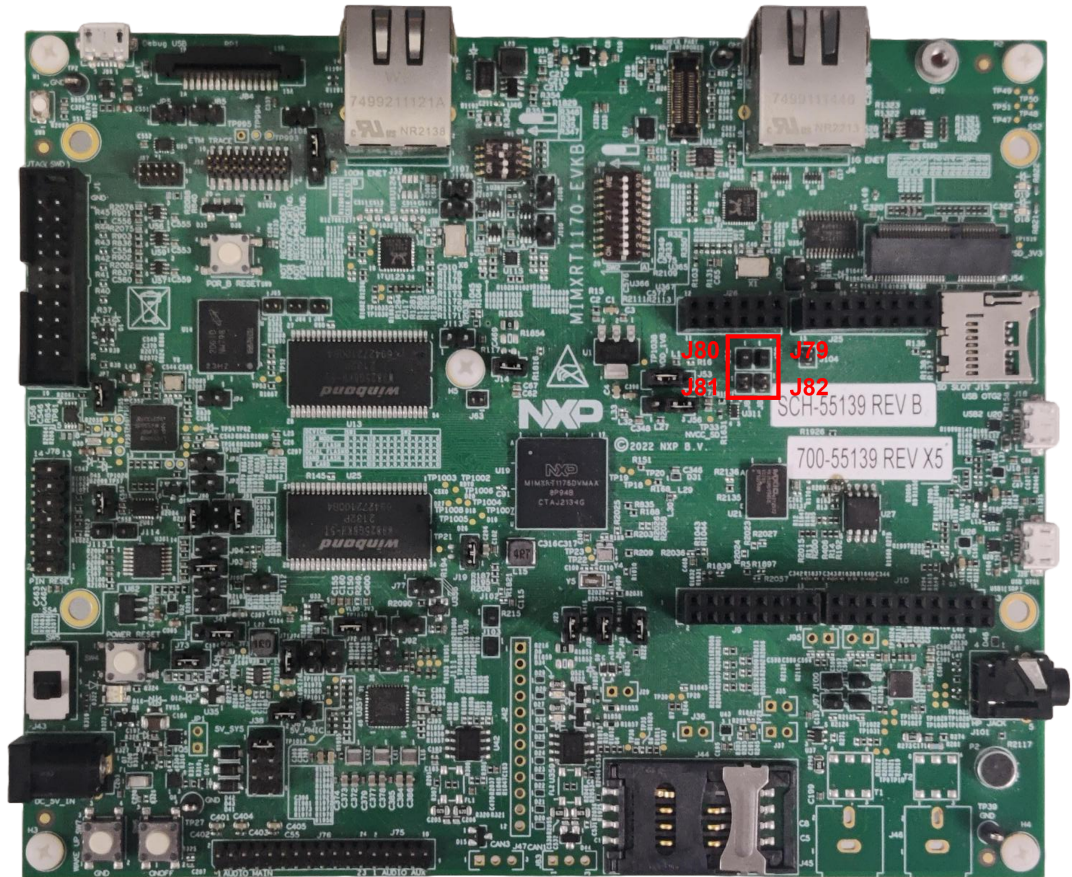
#### Hardware rework

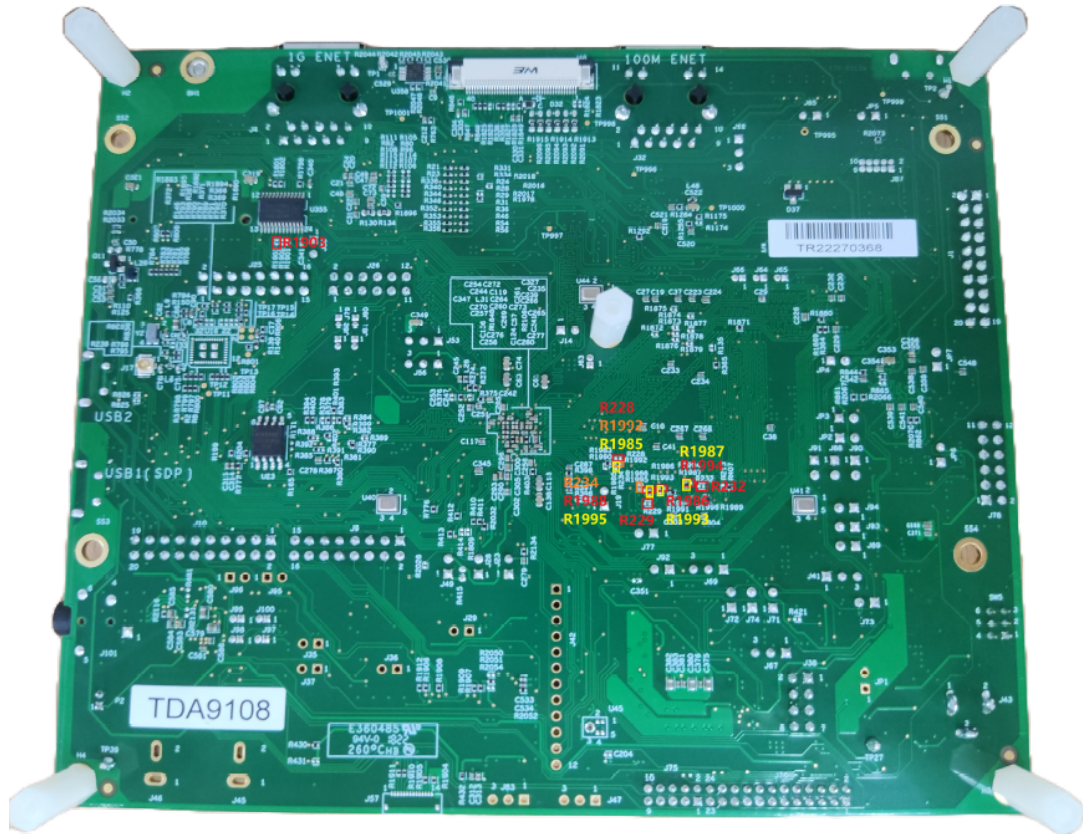
- **HCI UART rework**
  1. Remove resistors R183 and R1816.
  2. Solder 0 ohm resistor to R404, R1901, and R1902.



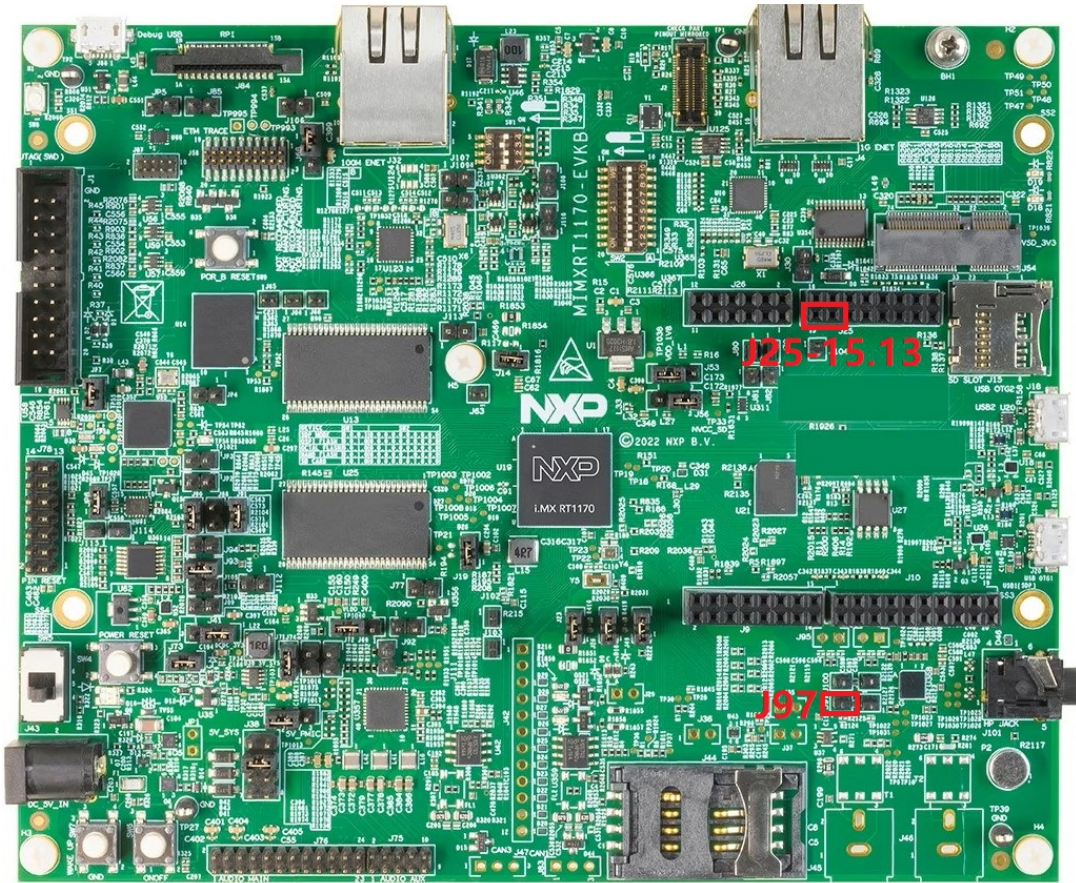
- PCM interface rework
  1. Disconnect header J79 and J80.

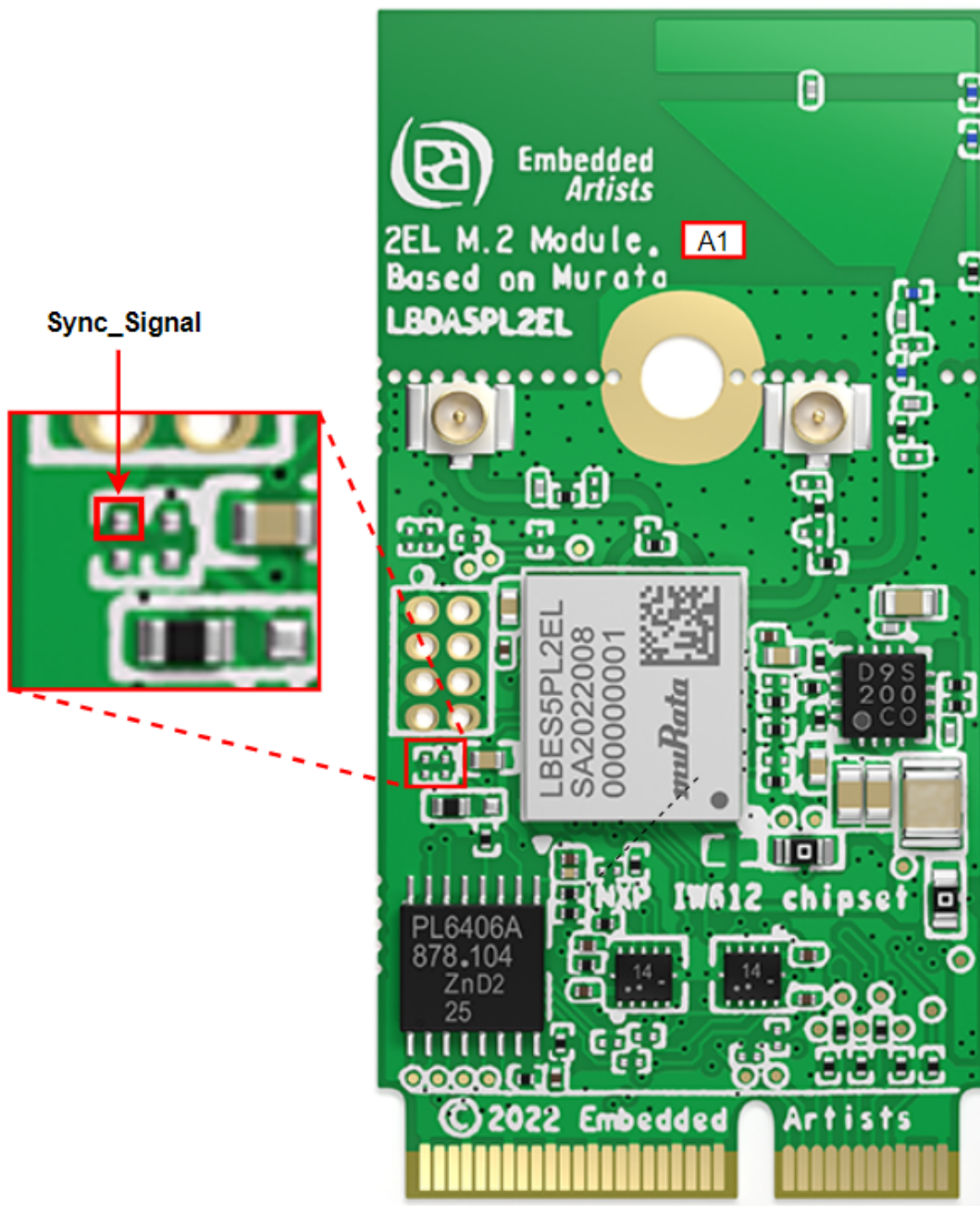
2. Connect header J81 and J82.
3. Remove resistors R1985, R1986, R1987, R1988, R1992, R1993, R1994, and R1995.
4. Solder 0 ohm resistor to R228, R229, R232, R234, and R1903.





- LE Audio Synchronization interface rework (only used on sink side)
  1. Connect J25-15 with J97.
  2. Connect J25-13 with 2EL's GPIO\_27





**Parent topic:** [Hardware Rework Guide for MIMXRT1170-EVKB and Murata 2EL M.2 Adapter](#)

**Hardware Rework Guide for MIMXRT685-EVK and AW-AM457-uSD** This section is a brief hardware rework guidance of the EdgeFast Bluetooth PAL on the NXP i.MX MIMXRT685-EVK board and AW-AM457-uSD. The AW-AM457-uSD user guide is available [here](#). The hardware rework has one part:

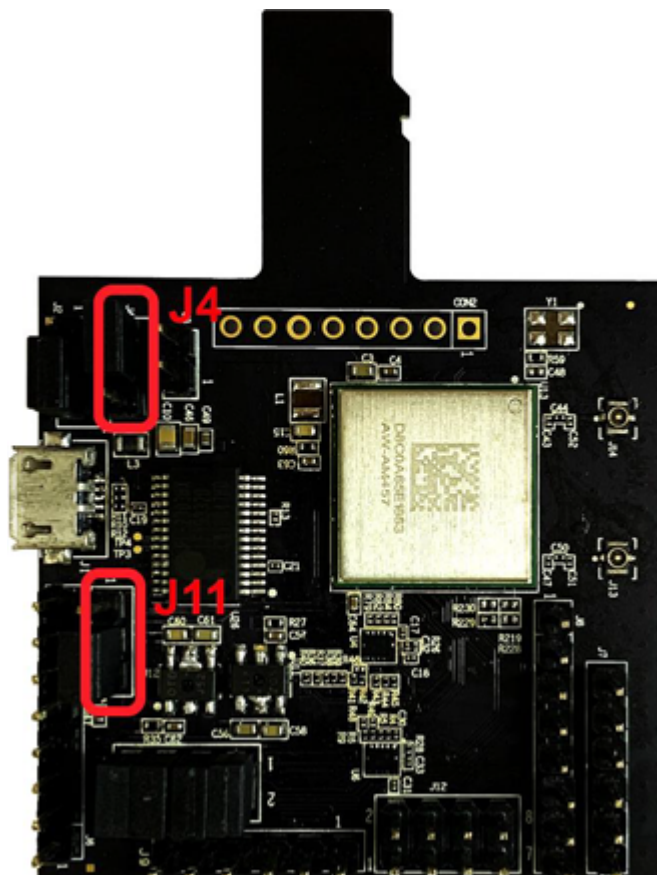
- HCI UART rework

**Hardware rework**    **HCI UART rework**

- R398 move from 1-2 to 2-3
- JP12 2-3
- Connect the pins of two boards as the following table.

Pin Name	AW-AM457-uSD	i.MX RT685	PIN NAME	GPIONAME of i.MX RT685
UART_TXD	J10 (pin 4)	J27 (pin 1)	US-ART4_RXD	FC4_RXD_SDA_MOSI_DATA
UART_RXD	J10 (pin 2)	J27 (pin 2)	USART4_TXD	FC4_TXD_SCL_MISO_WS
UART_RTS	J10 (pin 6)	J47 (pin 9)	USART4_CTS	FC4_CTS_SDA_SSEL0
UART_CTS	J10 (pin 8)	J27 (pin 5)	USART4_RTS	FC4_RTS_SCL_SSEL1
GND	J6 (pin 7)	J29 (pin 6)	GND	GND





### Jumper Settings:

- Connect J4[2-3] for VIO 3.3 V supply
- Connect J11[2-3] for VIO\_SD 3.3 V supply

### PCM interface rework

Connect the pins of two boards as the following table.

Pin Name	AW-AM457-uSD	i.MX RT685	PIN NAME of I.MX RT685	GPIONAME of I.MX RT685
PCM_IN	J9 (pin 1)	J47 (pin 7)	I2S2_TXD	FC2_RXD_SDA_MOSI_DATA
PCM_OUT	J9 (pin 2)	J28 (pin 4)	I2S5_RXD	FC5_RXD_SDA_MOSI_DATA
PCM_SYNC	J9 (pin 3)	J28 (pin 5)	I2S5_WS	FC5_TXD_SCL_MISO_WS
PCM_CLK	J9 (pin 4)	J28 (pin 6)	I2S5_SCK	FC5_SCK
GND	J9 (pin 6)	J29 (pin 7)	GND	GND

Parent topic: [Hardware Rework Guide for MIMXRT685-EVK and AW-AM457-uSD](#)

**Hardware Rework Guide for MIMXRT685-EVK and AW-CM358-uSD** This section is a brief hardware rework guidance of the EdgeFast Bluetooth PAL on the NXP i.MX MIMXRT685-EVK board and AW-CM358-uSD. The AW-CM358-uSD user guide is available [here](#). The hardware rework has one part:

- HCI UART rework

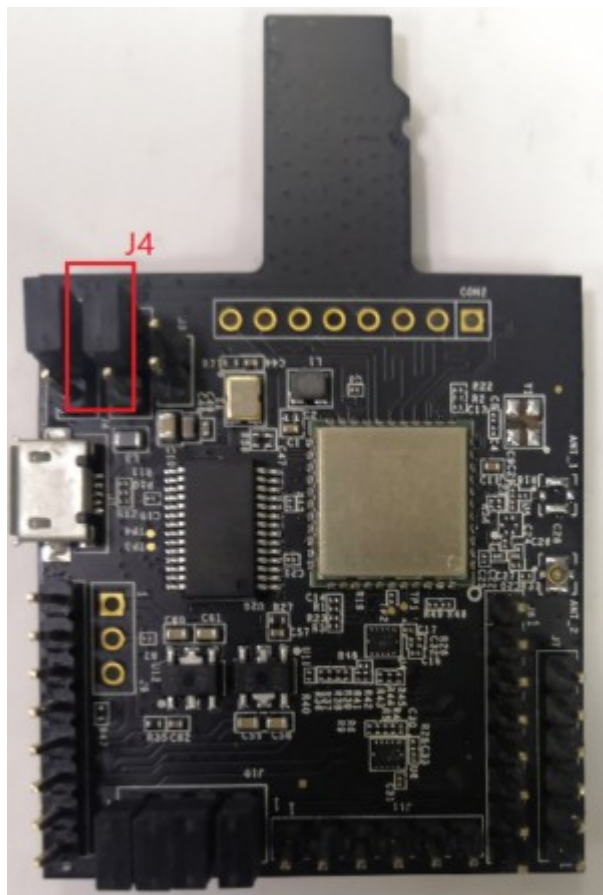
### Hardware rework HCI UART rework

R398 move from 1-2 to 2-3.

Connect the pins of two boards as the following table.

Pin Name	AW-CM358-USD	i.MXRT685	PIN NAME	GPIONAME of RT685
UART_TXD	J10 (pin 4)	J27 (pin 1)	USART4_RXD	FC4_RXD_SDA_MOSI_DATA
UART_RXD	J10 (pin 2)	J27 (pin 2)	USART4_TXD	FC4_TXD_SCL_MISO_WS
UART_RTS	J10 (pin 6)	J47 (pin 9)	USART4_CTS	FC4_CTS_SDA_SSEL0
UART_CTS	J10 (pin 8)	J27 (pin 5)	USART4_RTS	FC4_RTS_SCL_SSEL1
GND	J6 (pin 7)	J29 (pin 6)	GND	GND





**Jumper Setting:**

Connect J4[1-2] for VIO 1.8 V supply.

**PCM interface rework**

Connect the pins of two boards as the following table.

Pin Name	AW-CM358-USD	i.MX RT685	PIN NAME of RT685	GPIONAME of RT685
PCM_IN	J11 (pin 1)	J47 (pin 7)	I2S2_TXD	FC2_RXD_SDA_MOSI_DATA
PCM_OUT	J11 (pin 2)	J28 (pin 4)	I2S5_RXD	FC5_RXD_SDA_MOSI_DATA
PCM_SYNC	J11 (pin 3)	J28 (pin 5)	I2S5_WS	FC5_TXD_SCL_MISO_WS
PCM_CLK	J11 (pin 4)	J28 (pin 6)	I2S5_SCK	FC5_SCK
GND	J11 (pin 5)	J29 (pin 7)	GND	GND

Parent topic:[Hardware Rework Guide for MIMXRT685-EVK and AW-CM358-uSD](#)

**Hardware Rework Guide for MIMXRT685-EVK and AW-AM510-uSD** This section is a brief hardware rework guidance of the EdgeFast Bluetooth PAL on the NXP i.MX MIMXRT685-EVK board and AW-AM510-uSD. The AW-AM510-uSD user guide is available [here](#). The hardware rework has one part:

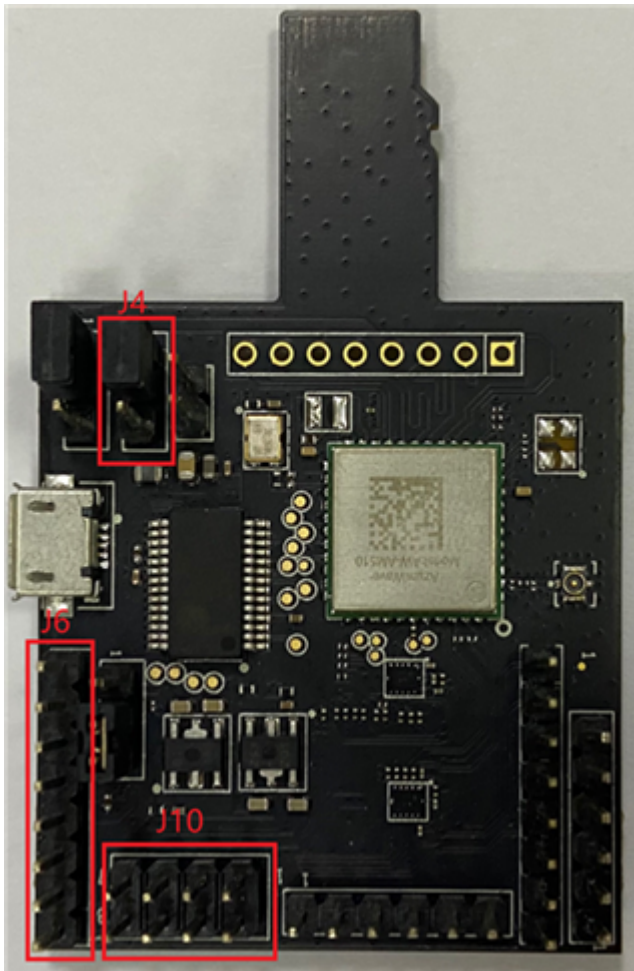
- HCI UART rework

**Hardware rework**

- HCI UART rework

Connect the pins of two boards as the following table.

Pin Name	AW-AM510-uSD	i.MXRT685	PIN NAME	GPIO NAME of RT685
UART_TXD	J10 (pin 4)	J27 (pin 1)	USART4_RXD	FC4_RXD_SDA_MOSI_DATA
UART_RXD	J10 (pin 2)	J27 (pin 2)	USART4_TXD	FC4_TXD_SCL_MISO_WS
UART_RTS	J10 (pin 6)	J47 (pin 9)	USART4_CTS	FC4_CTS_SDA_SSEL0
UART_CTS	J10 (pin 8)	J27 (pin 5)	USART4_RTS	FC4_RTS_SCL_SSEL1
GND	J6 (pin 7)	J29 (pin 6)	GND	GND



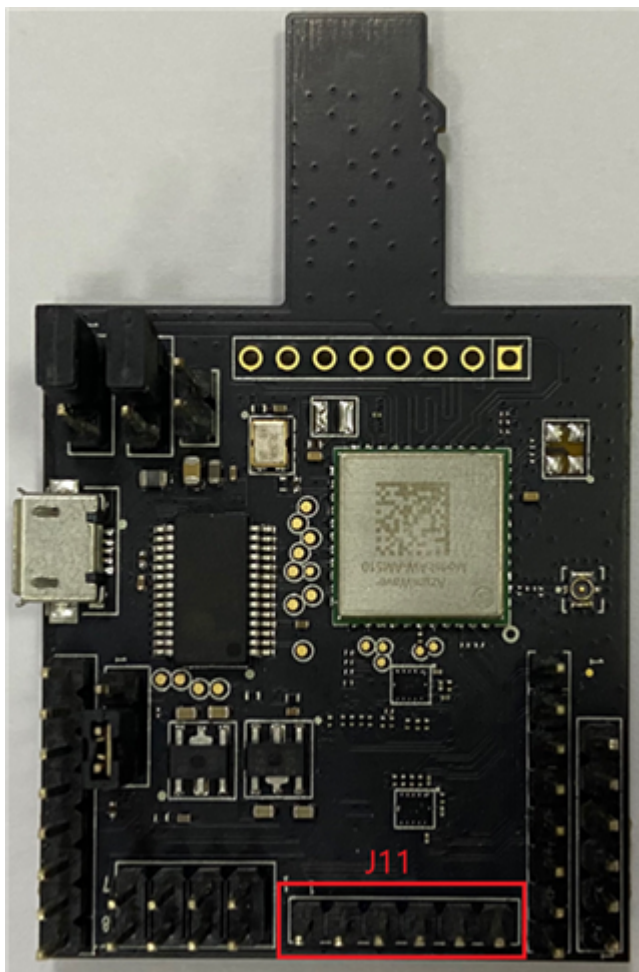
**Jumper Setting:**

- Connect J4[2-3] for VIO 3.3 V supply

• **PCM interface rework**

Connect the pins of two boards as the following table.

PIN NAME	AW-AM510-USD	i.MX RT685	PIN NAME of RT685	of	GPIONAME of RT685
PCM_IN	J11 (pin 1)	J47 (pin 7)	I2S2_TXD		FC2_RXD_SDA_MOSI_DATA
PCM_OUT	J11 (pin 2)	J28 (pin 4)	I2S5_RXD		FC5_RXD_SDA_MOSI_DATA
PCM_SYNC	J11 (pin 3)	J28 (pin 5)	I2S5_WS		FC5_TXD_SCL_MISO_WS
PCM_CLK	J11 (pin 4)	J28 (pin 6)	I2S5_SCK		FC5_SCK
GND	J11 (pin 6)	J29 (pin 7)	GND		GND



Parent topic: [Hardware Rework Guide for MIMXRT685-EVK and AW-AM510-uSD](#)

**Hardware Rework Guide for MIMXRT685-EVK and Murata uSD-M.2 Adapter** This section is a brief hardware rework guidance of the EdgeFast Bluetooth PAL on the NXP i.MX MIMXRT685-EVK board and the Murata uSD-M.2 adapter. For details on the Murata uSD-M.2 Adapter, see [Murata’s uSD-M.2 webpage](#).

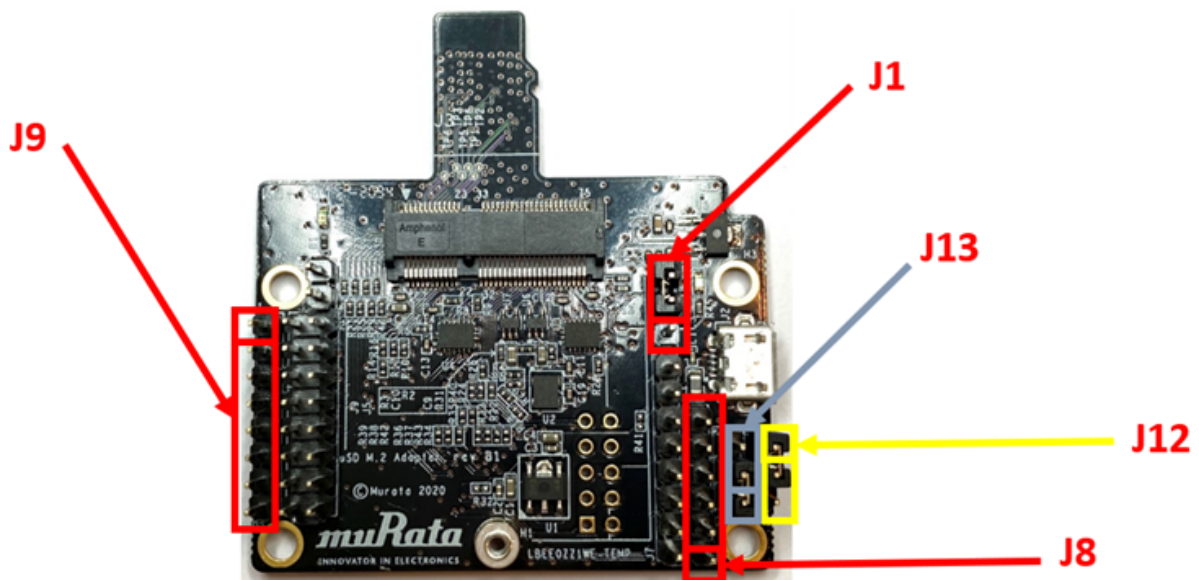
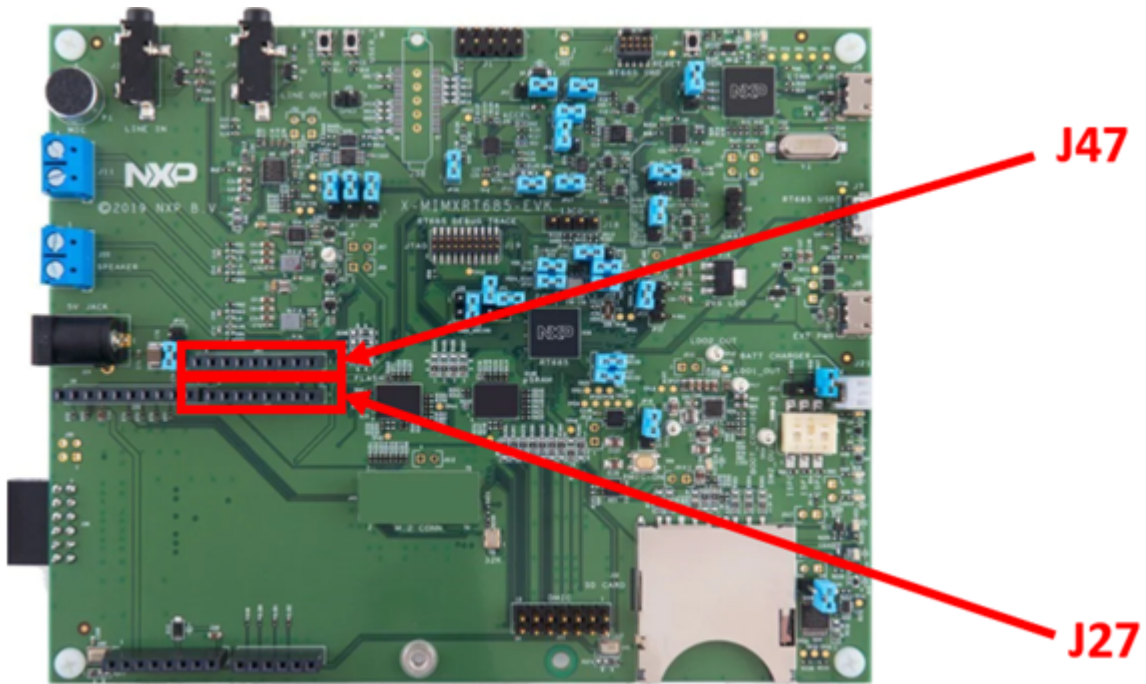
The hardware rework has one part:

- HCI UART rework

**Hardware rework HCI UART rework :**

- JP12 2-3
- Connect the pins of two boards as the following table using jumper cables included in Murata’s uSD-M.2 Adapter kit.

Pin name	uSD-M.2 adapter pin	i.MX RT685 pin	Pin name of RT685	GPIO name of RT685
BT_UART_TXD_HO	J9 (pin 1)	J27 (pin 1)	USART4_RXD	FC4_RXD_SDA_MOSI_DATA
BT_UART_RXD_HO	J9 (pin 2)	J27 (pin 2)	USART4_TXD	FC4_TXD_SCL_MISO_WS
BT_UART_RTS_HO	J8 (pin 3)	J47 (pin 9)	USART4_CTS	FC4_CTS_SDA_SSEL0
BT_UART_CTS_HO	J8 (pin 4)	J27 (pin 5)	USART4_RTS	FC4_RTS_SCL_SSEL1



#### Murata uSD-M.2 jumper settings:

- Both J12 and J13 = 1-2 (WLAN-SDIO = 1.8 V; and BT-UART and WLAN/BT-CTRL = 3.3 V)
- J1 = 2-3 (3.3 V from uSD connector)

Parent topic: [Hardware Rework Guide for MIMXRT685-EVK and Murata uSD-M.2 Adapter](#)

**Hardware Rework Guide for MIMXRT685-AUD-EVK and Murata M.2 Module** This section is a brief hardware rework guidance of the Edgefast Bluetooth PAL on the NXP i.MX MIMXRT685-AUD-EVK board and the Murata's 1XK, 1ZM, 2EL or 2LL solution - direct M.2 connection to Embedded Artists EAR00385 (1XK), EAR00364 (1ZM), Rev-A1 (2EL) or EAR00500 (2LL) M.2 modules.

The hardware rework has one part:

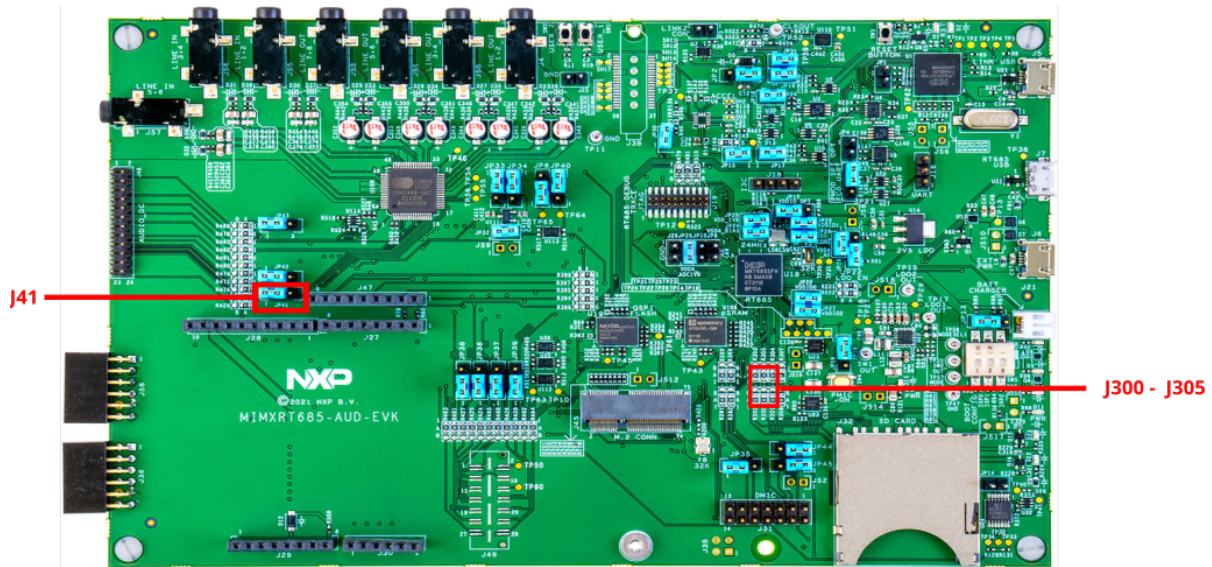
- HCI UART rework

**Hardware rework HCI UART rework:**

Mount R300~R305 A-B

**Jumper Setting:**

- Connect JP41[2-3]



Parent topic: [Hardware Rework Guide for MIMXRT685-AUD-EVK and Murata M.2 Module](#)

**Hardware Rework Guide for Low Power Feature on MIMXRT595-EVK and Murata 2EL M.2 Module** This section is a brief hardware rework guidance of the EdgeFast Bluetooth PAL for low power feature on the NXP i.MX MIMXRT595-EVK board and the Murata's 2EL - direct M.2 connection to Embedded Artists' Rev-A1 (2EL) M.2 modules.

The hardware rework has three parts:

- Debug console serial rework
- Host wake-up controller pin rework (H2C)
- Controller wake-up host pin rework (C2H)

**Hardware rework**

- **Debug console serial rework**

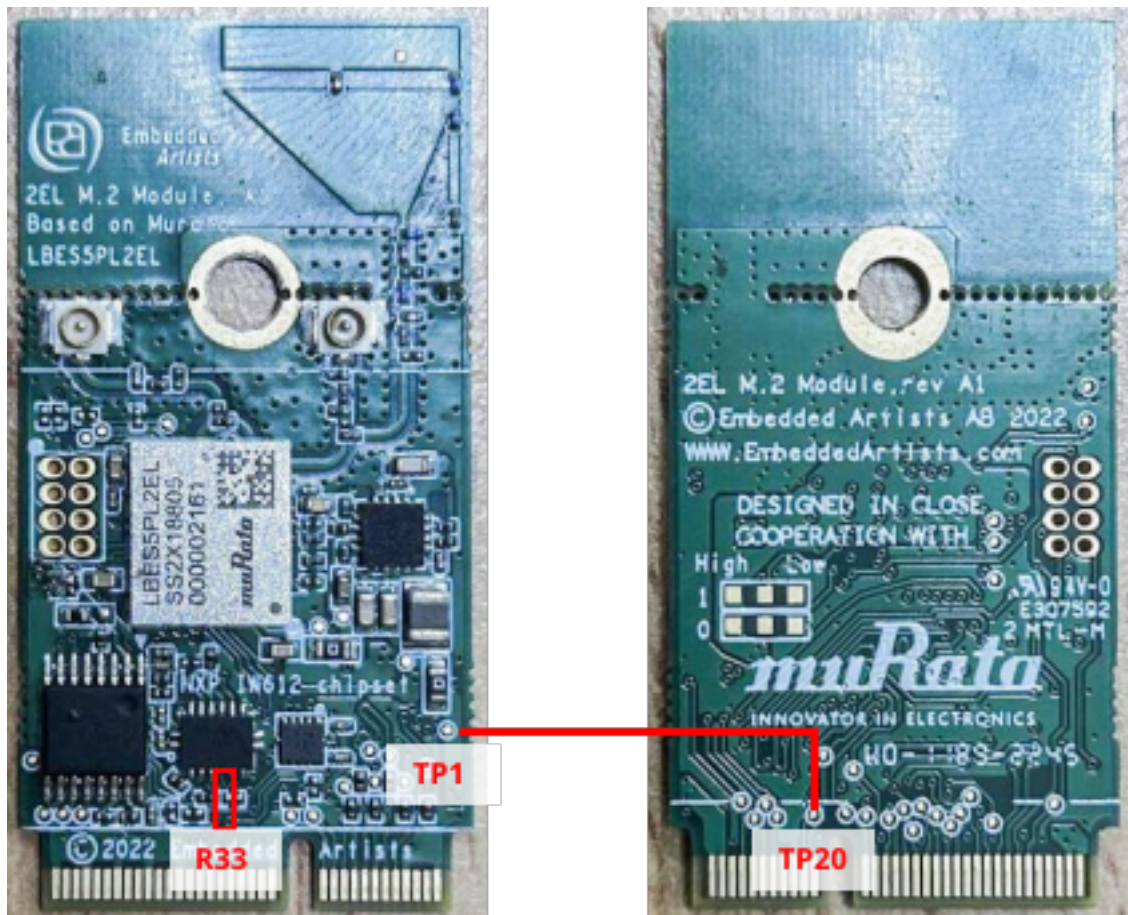
For details, refer [Hardware Rework Guide for MIMXRT595-EVK and Murata M.2 Module](#).

- **Host wake-up controller pin rework:**

For details, refer [Hardware Rework Guide for Low Power Feature on MIMXRT595-EVK and Murata 1XK M.2 Module](#).

- **Controller wake-up host pin rework:**

1. Remove resistors R709 on MIMXRT595-EVK,
2. Solder 0K ohm resistor on R33 of Murata 2EL M.2 Module
3. Solder 10K ohm resistor on the Murata 2EL M.2 Module between TP1 and TP20.



**Parent topic:** [Hardware Rework Guide for Low Power Feature on MIMXRT595-EVK and Murata 2EL M.2 Module](#)

**Hardware Rework Guide for MIMXRT595-EVK and Murata M.2 Module** This section is a brief hardware rework guidance of the EdgeFast Bluetooth PAL on the NXP i.MX MIMXRT595-EVK board and the Murata’s 1XK, 1ZM, 2EL or 2LL solution - direct M.2 connection to Embedded Artists EAR00385 (1XK), EAR00364 (1ZM), Rev-A1 (2EL) or EAR00500 (2LL) M.2 modules.

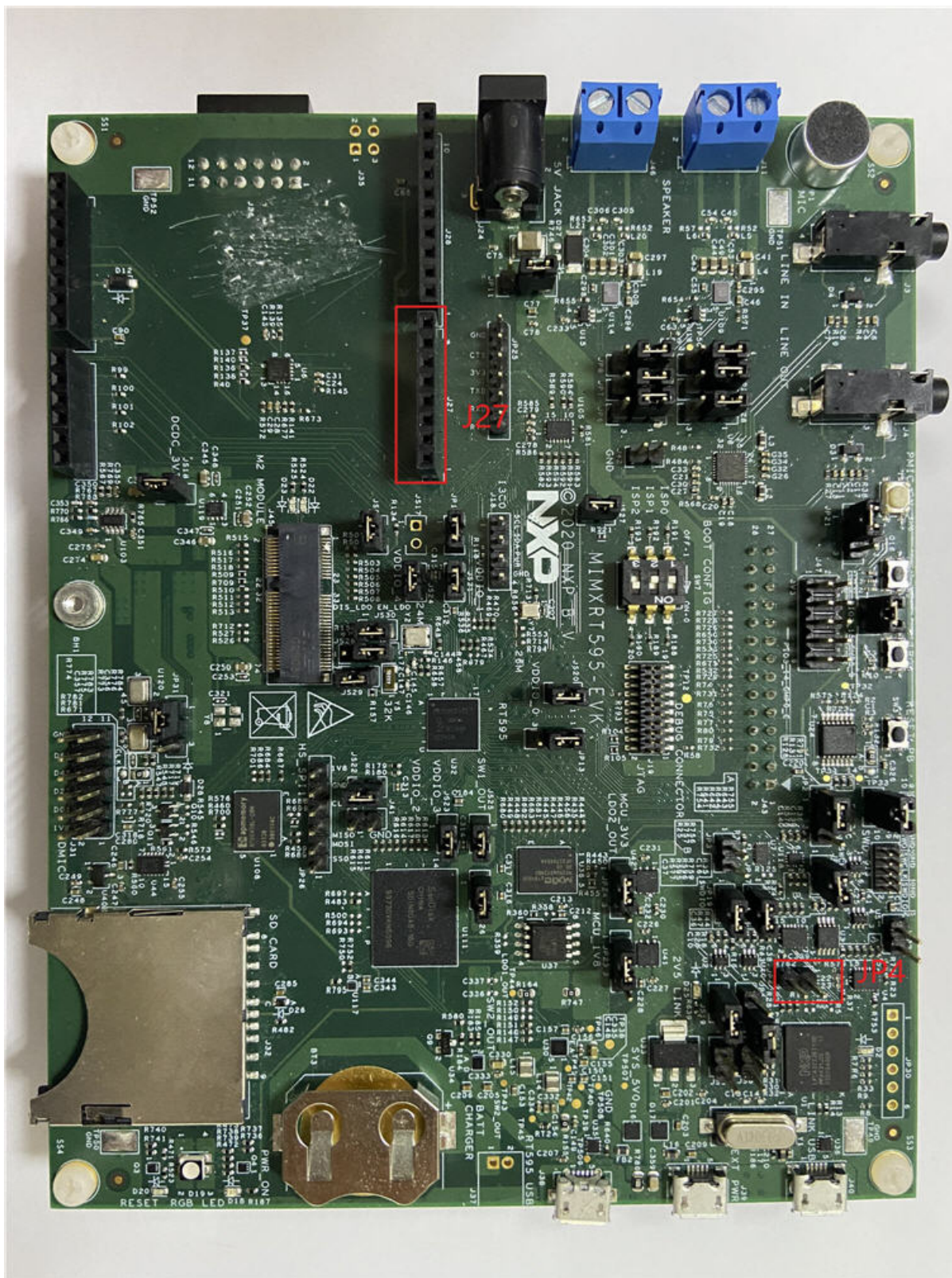
The hardware rework has one part:

- Debug console serial rework

#### **Hardware rework** Debug console serial rework:

No special rework is required, except the following to enable the debug port.

- JP4 1-2.
- J27 1 - TX of USB to serial converter
- J27 2 - RX of USB to serial converter



Parent topic: [Hardware Rework Guide for MIMXRT595-EVK and Murata M.2 Module](#)

**Hardware Rework Guide for Low Power Feature on MIMXRT595-EVK and Murata 1XK M.2 Module** This section is a brief hardware rework guidance of the EdgeFast Bluetooth PAL for low power feature on the NXP i.MX MIMXRT595-EVK board and the Murata’s 1XK - direct M.2 connection to Embedded Artists EAR00385 (1XK) M.2 modules.

The hardware rework has three parts:

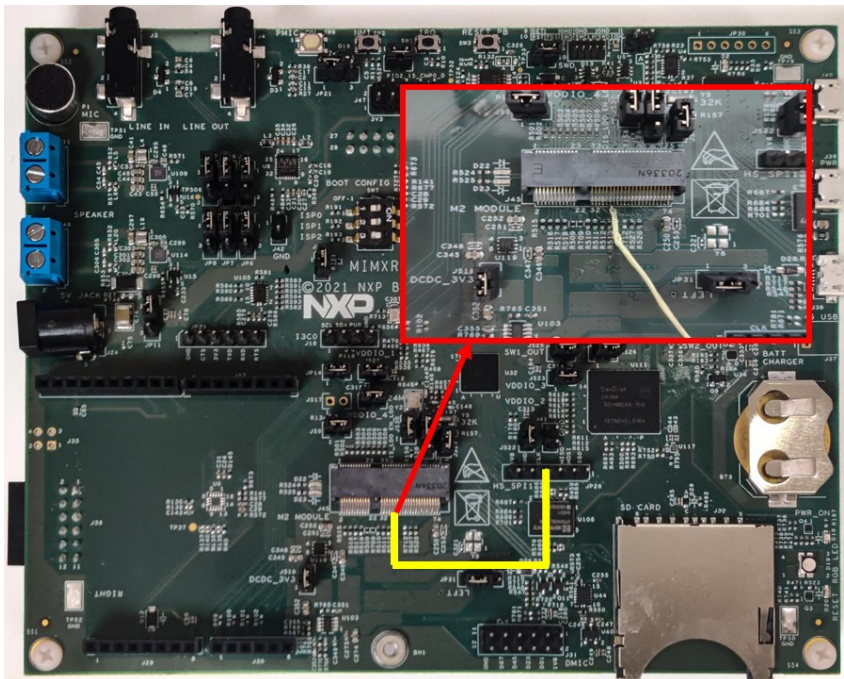
- Debug console serial rework
- Host wake-up controller pin rework (H2C)
- Controller wake-up host pin rework (C2H)

#### Hardware rework Debug console serial rework:

For details, refer [Hardware Rework Guide for MIMXRT595-EVK and Murata M.2 Module](#).

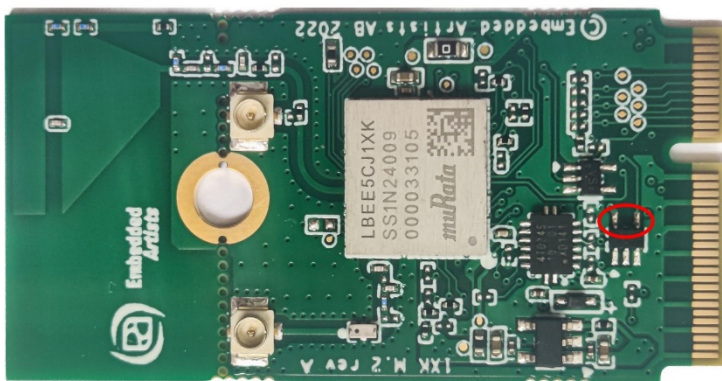
#### Host wake-up controller pin rework:

Connect M.2 (pin 42) to JP26 (pin 4) with a wire.



#### Controller wake-up host pin rework:

1. Remove resistors R709 on MIMXRT595-EVK.
2. Solder 10K ohm resistor on the Murata 1XK M.2 Module at the location shown in the following figure.



Parent topic: [Hardware Rework Guide for Low Power Feature on MIMXRT595-EVK and Murata 1XK M.2 Module](#)

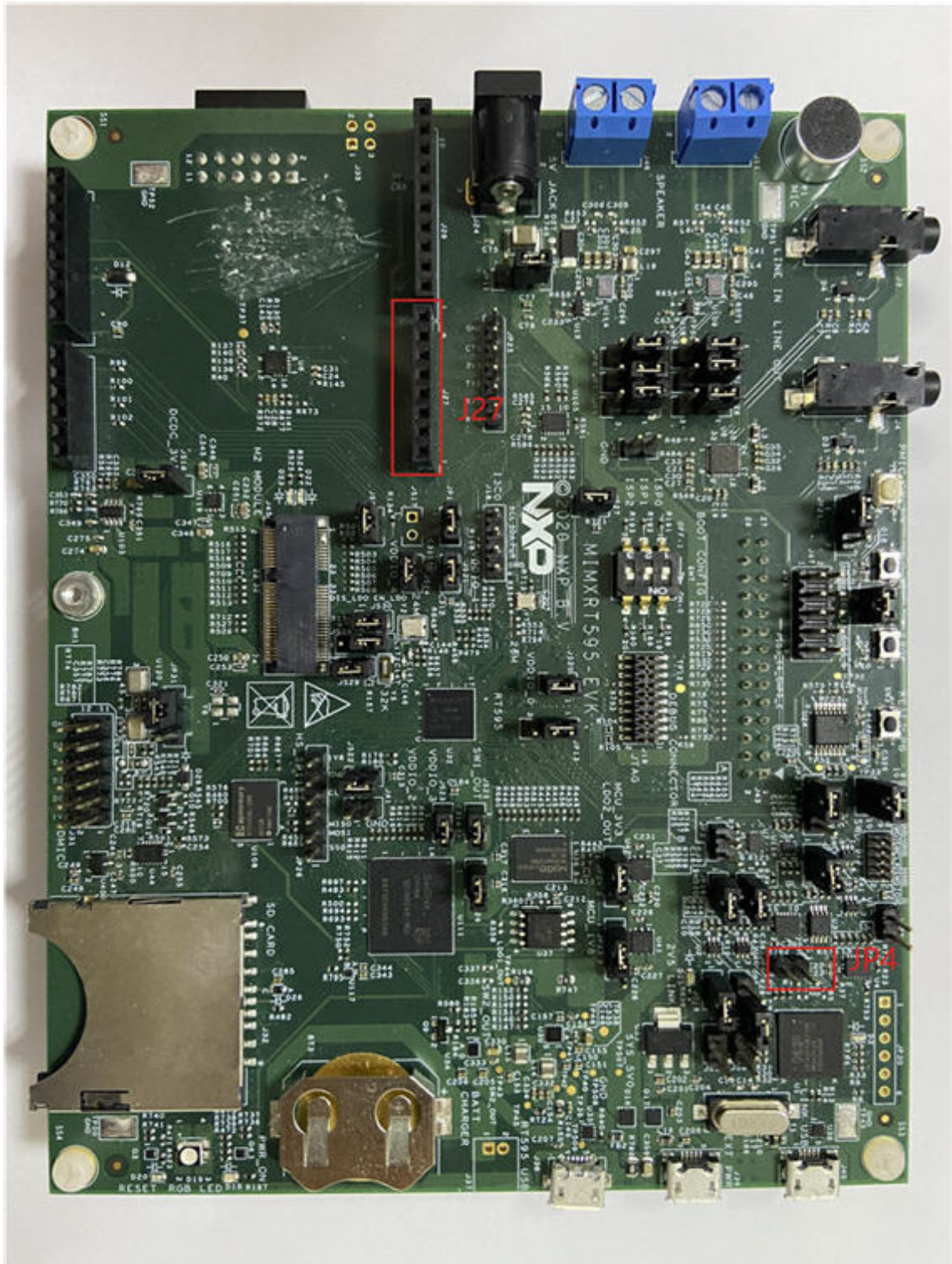
**Hardware Rework Guide for MIMXRT595-EVK and AW-AM510MA** This section is a brief hardware rework guidance of the EdgeFast Bluetooth PAL on the NXP i.MX MIMXRT595-EVK board and AW-AM510MA. The AW-AM510MA user guide is available [here](#). The hardware rework has one part:

- Debug console serial rework

**Hardware rework Debug console serial rework:**

No special rework is required, except the following to enable the debug port.

- Connect J39 with external power.
- Connect JP4 1-2.
- J27 1 — TX of USB to serial converter.
- J27 2 — RX of USB to serial converter.



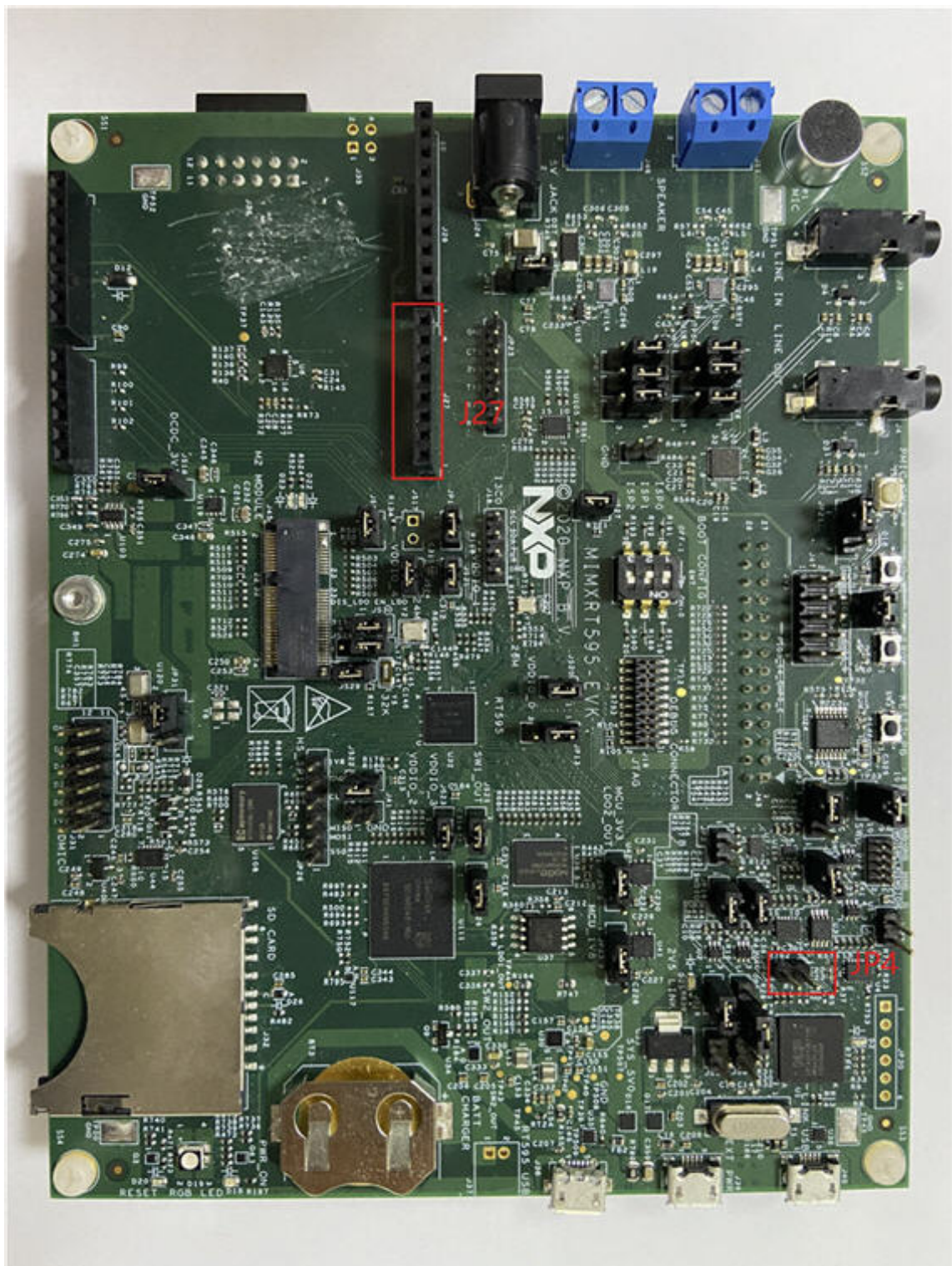
Parent topic: [Hardware Rework Guide for MIMXRT595-EVK and AW-AM510MA](#)

**Hardware Rework Guide for MIMXRT595-EVK and AW-CM358MA** This section is a brief hardware rework guidance of the Ethermind Bluetooth stack on the NXP i.MX MIMXRT595-EVK board and AW-CM358MA. The AW-CM358MA user guide is available [here](#). The hardware rework has one part:

- Debug console serial rework

### Hardware rework Debug console serial rework:

- Connect J39 with external power.
- JP4 1-2
- J27 1 - TX of USB to serial converter
- J27 2 - RX of USB to serial converter



Parent topic:[Hardware Rework Guide for MIMXRT595-EVK and AW-CM358MA](#)

**Hardware Rework Guide for MIMXRT1040-EVK and Murata M.2 Module** This section is a brief hardware rework guidance of the Edgefast Bluetooth PAL on the NXP i.MX MIMXRT1040-EVK board and the Murata's 1XK, 1ZM or 2LL solution - direct M.2 connection to Embedded Artists EAR00385 (1XK), EAR00364 (1ZM) or EAR00500 (2LL) M.2 modules.

The hardware rework has two parts:

- HCI UART rework
- PCM interface rework
- Wake pin rework

### Hardware rework

1. HCI UART rework
  - Solder R93 and R96
2. PCM interface rework
  - Solder R70 and R79; remove R76 and R86; Connect J80.
3. Wake pin rework
  - When using 2LL M.2 module, remove R456 and R457 to avoid the module has an impact on boot configuration.

**Note:** Make sure to disconnect J80 when debugging. Otherwise, the debugger downloading fails.

**Parent topic:** [Hardware Rework Guide for MIMXRT1040-EVK and Murata M.2 Module](#)

**Hardware Rework Guide for MIMXRT1060-EVKC and Murata M.2 Module** This section is a brief hardware rework guidance of the EdgeFast Bluetooth PAL on the NXP i.MX MIMXRT1060-EVKC and the Murata's 1XK, 1ZM, 2EL or 2LL solution - direct M.2 connection to Embedded Artists EAR00385 (1XK), EAR00364 (1ZM), Rev-A1 (2EL) or EAR00500 (2LL) M.2 modules.

The hardware rework has two parts:

- HCI UART rework
- PCM interface rework

### Hardware rework

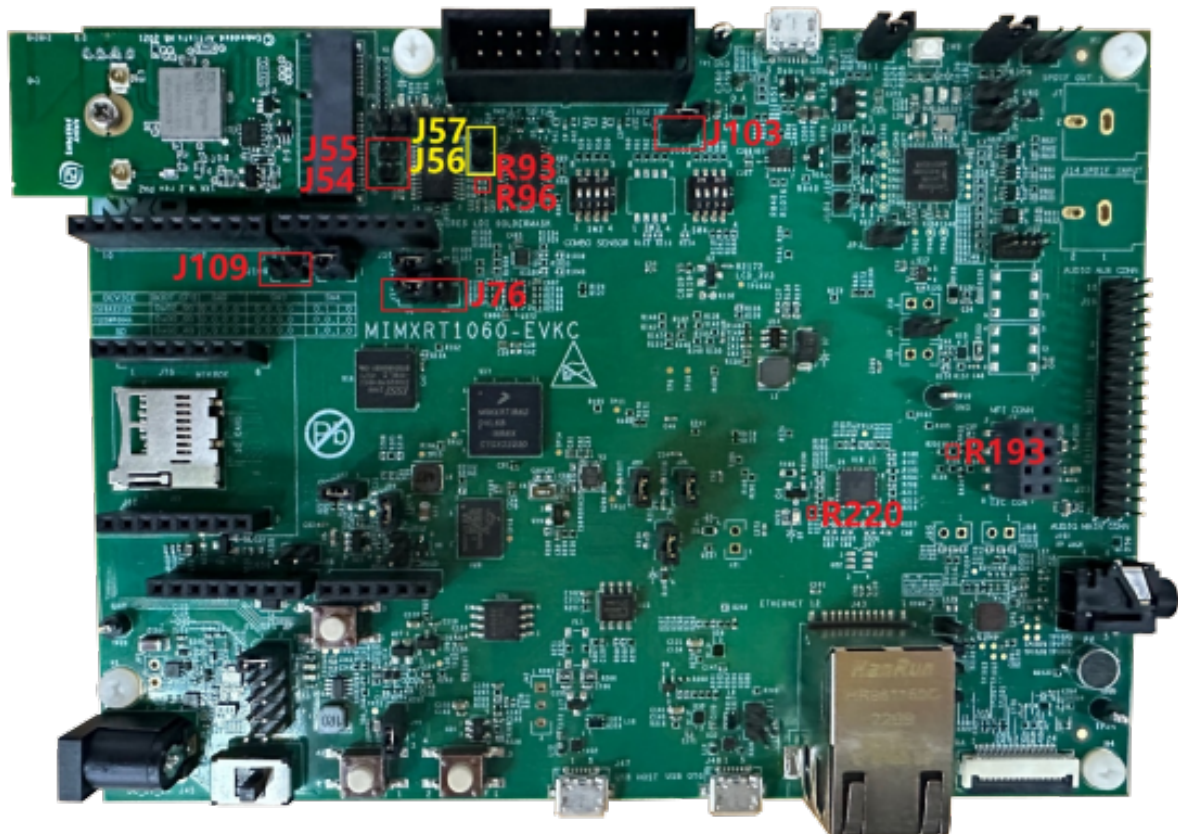
- **HCI UART rework**

1. Mount R93, R96.
2. Remove R193.
3. Connect J109, connect J76 2-3.

- **PCM interface rework**

1. Remove J54 and J55, connect J56 and J57.
2. Remove R220.
3. Connect J103.

**Note:** When J103 is connected, flash cannot be downloaded. So, remove the connection when downloading flash and reconnect it after downloading.



**Parent topic:** [Hardware Rework Guide for MIMXRT1060-EVKC and Murata M.2 Module](#)

**Hardware Rework Guide for MIMXRT1060-EVKC and Murata 2EL M.2 Adapter** This section is a brief hardware rework guidance of the EdgeFast Bluetooth PAL on the NXP i.MX MIMXRT1060-EVKC and the Murata 2EL M.2 solution - direct M.2 connection to Embedded Artists' Rev-A1 (2EL) M.2 modules.

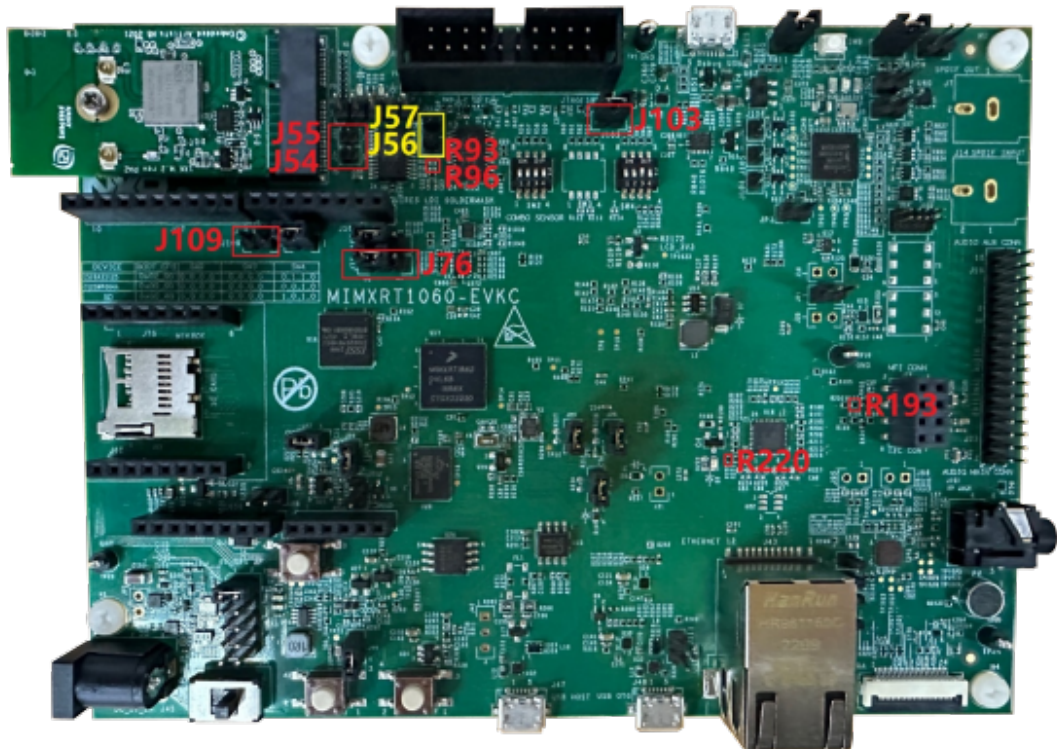
The hardware rework has three parts:

- HCI UART rework
- PCM interface rework
- LE Audio Synchronization interface rework (only used on sink side)

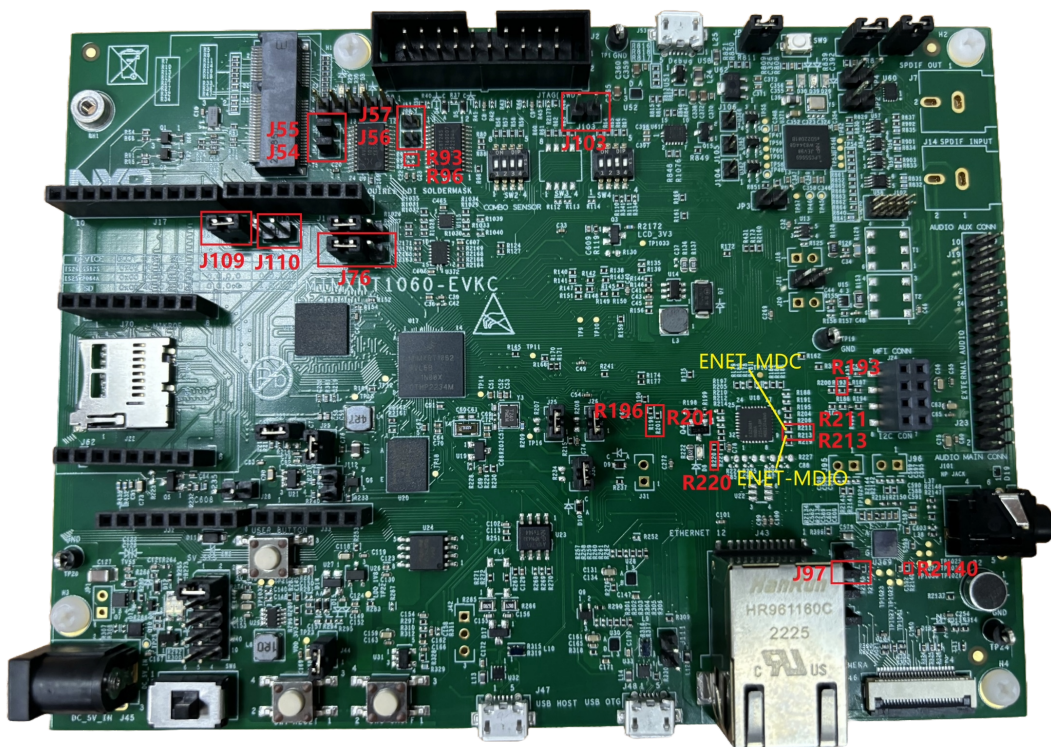
#### Hardware rework

- HCI UART rework
  1. Mount R93, R96.
  2. Remove R193.
  3. Connect J109, connect J76 2-3.
- PCM interface rework
  1. Remove J54 and J55, connect J56, and J57.
  2. Remove R220.
  3. Connect J103.

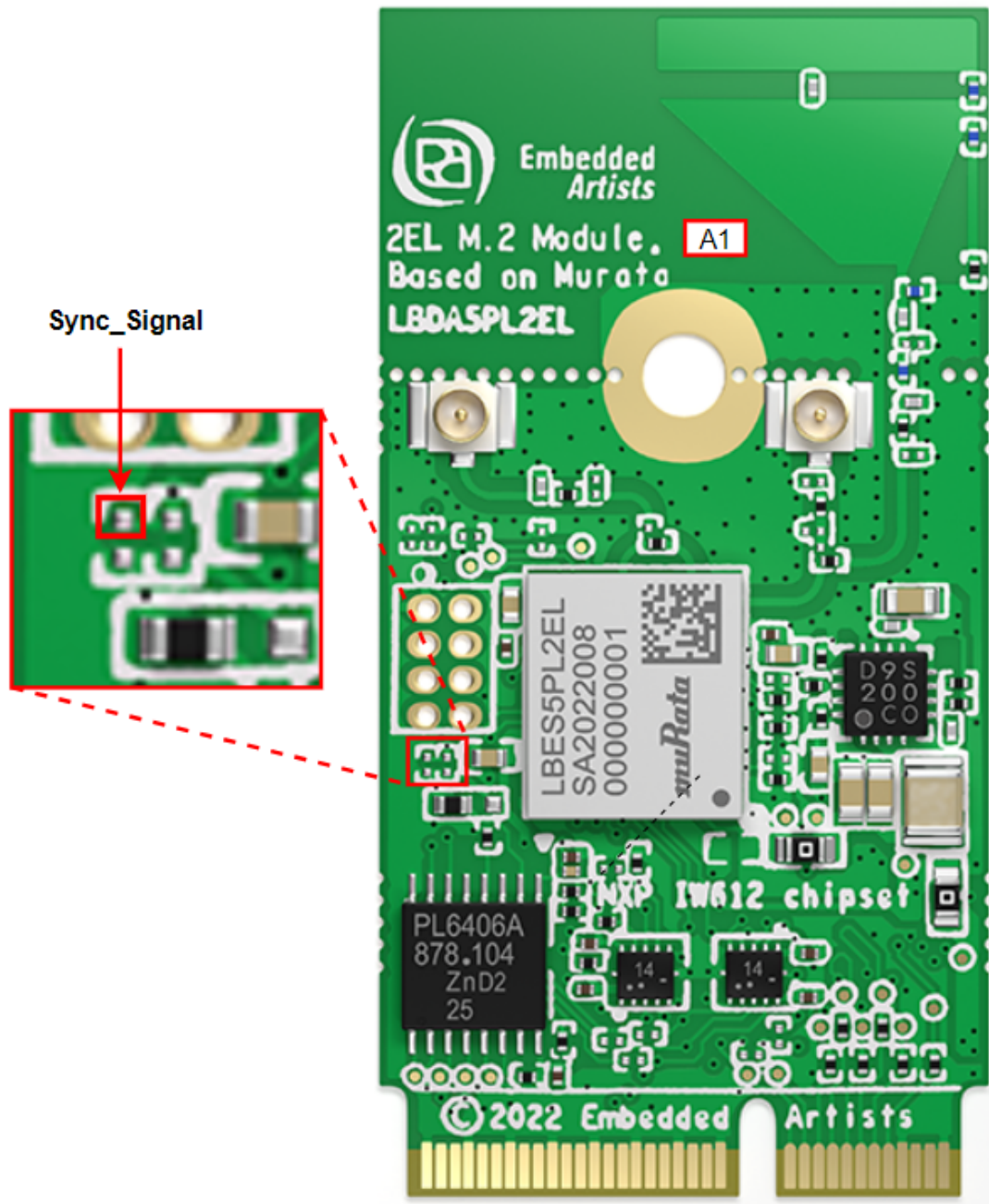
**Note:** When J103 is connected, flash cannot be downloaded. So, remove the connection when downloading flash and reconnect it after downloading.



- LE Audio Synchronization interface rework (only used on sink side)
  1. Remove J110 jumper cap.
  2. Remove R196, R201, R213, and R211.
  3. Connect J110-1 (GPT2\_CLK) to R2140 (SAI\_MCLK).
  4. Connect ENET\_MDIO (GPT2\_CAP1) with J97 (SAI\_SW).
  5. Connect ENET\_MDC (GPT2\_CAP2) with 2EL's GPIO\_27 (Sync Signal).







**Parent topic:** [Hardware Rework Guide for MIMXRT1060-EVKC and Murata 2EL M.2 Adapter](#)

**Hardware Rework Guide for MCXN547-EVK and Murata M.2 Module** This section is a brief hardware rework guidance of the EdgeFast Bluetooth PAL on the NXP MCXN547-EVK board and the Murata's 1XK, 1ZM or 2LL solution - direct M.2 connection to Embedded Artists EAR00385 (1XK), EAR00364 (1ZM) or EAR00500 (2LL) M.2 modules.

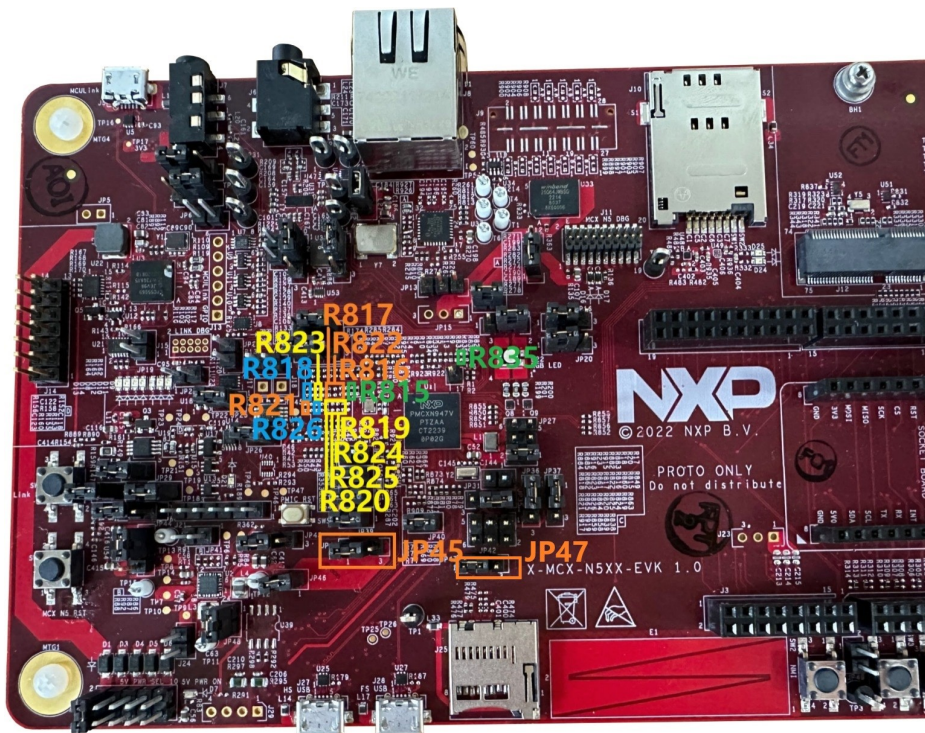
The hardware rework consists of two parts:

- M.2 UART interface
- M.2 SDIO interface

#### Hardware rework

- M.2 UART interface rework

- Mount R835
- Connect JP45 2-3 to supply 1.8V for GPIO4
- M.2 SDIO interface rework
  - Connect JP47 2-3 to supply 1.8V for GPIO2
  - Remove R818, connect R823
  - Remove R819, connect R824
  - Remove R817, connect R822
  - Remove R815, connect R816
  - Remove R820, connect R825



- Remove R821, connect R826

**Hardware Rework Guide for MCXN947-EVK and Murata M.2 Module** This section is a brief hardware rework guidance of the EdgeFast Bluetooth PAL on the NXP MCXN947-EVK board and the Murata’s 1XK, 1ZM or 2LL solution - direct M.2 connection to Embedded Artists EAR00385 (1XK), EAR00364 (1ZM) or EAR00500 (2LL) M.2 modules.

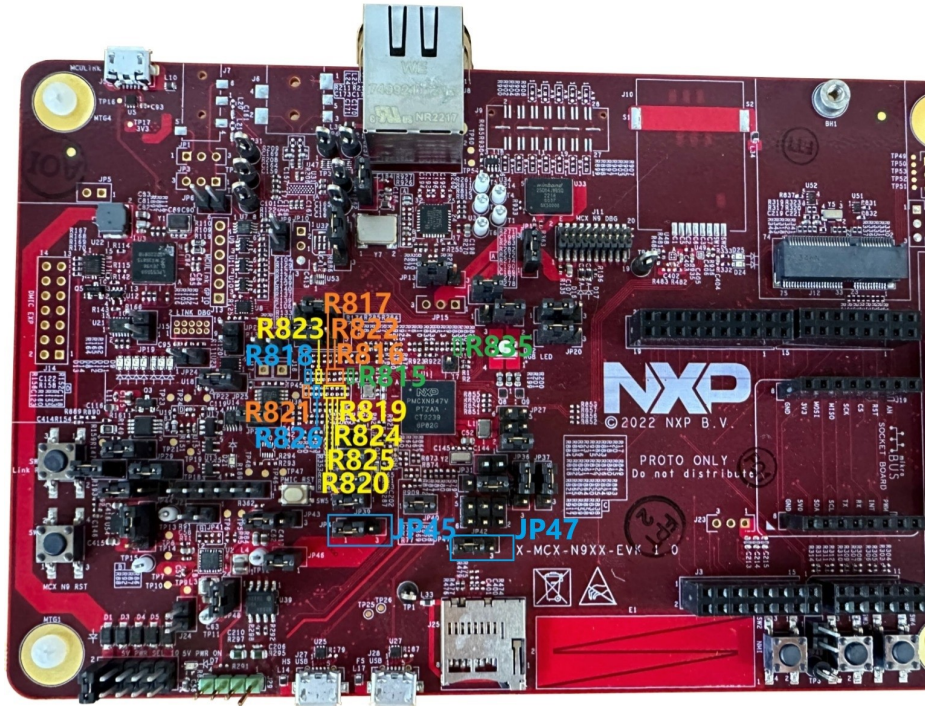
The hardware rework consists of two parts:

- M.2 UART interface
- M.2 SDIO interface

### Hardware rework

- M.2 UART interface rework
  - Mount R835
  - Connect JP45 2-3 to supply 1.8V for GPIO4
- M.2 SDIO interface rework
  - Connect JP47 2-3 to supply 1.8V for GPIO2

- Remove R818, connect R823
- Remove R819, connect R824
- Remove R817, connect R822
- Remove R815, connect R816
- Remove R820, connect R825



- Remove R821, connect R826

**Hardware Rework Guide for IMXRT1050-EVKB and Murata M.2 Module** This section is a brief hardware rework guidance of the EdgeFast Bluetooth PAL on the NXP IMXRT1050-EVKB board and the Murata 1XK,1ZM and 2EL solution - direct M.2 connection to Embedded Artists' EAR00385 (1XK) , EAR00364 (1ZM) or EAR00409 (2EL)M.2 modules. The hardware rework consists of three parts:

- Murata uSDM
- HCI UART rework

**Hardware rework**

- Murata uSD-M.2 jumper settings
  - J12 = 1-2: WLAN-SDIO & BT-PCM = 1.8 V
  - J13 = 1-2: BT-UART & WLAN/BT-CTRL = 3.3 V
  - J1 = 2-3: 3.3 V from uSD connector
- HCI UART interface rework

Connect the TX/RX/RTS/CTS pins of the two boards as show in Table 1 using the jumper cables included in the Murata's uSD-M.2 Adapter kit as shown in the following table.

Pin name	uSD-M.2 adapter pin	i.MX RT1050-EVKB pin	Pin name of RT1050-EVKB	GPIO name of RT1050-EVKB
BT_UART_TXD_	J9 (pin 1)	J22 (pin 1)	LPUART3_RXD	GPIO_AD_B1_07
BT_UART_RXD_	J9 (pin 2)	J22 (pin 2)	LPUART3_TXD	GPIO_AD_B1_06
BT_UART_RTS_	J8 (pin 3)	J23 (pin 3)	LPUART3_CTS	GPIO_AD_B1_04
BT_UART_CTS_	J8 (pin 4)	J23 (pin 4)	LPUART3_RTS	GPIO_AD_B1_05
GND	J7 (pin 7)	J25 (pin 7)	GND	GND

**Parent topic:** [Hardware Rework Guide for IMXRT1050-EVKB and Murata M.2 Module](#)

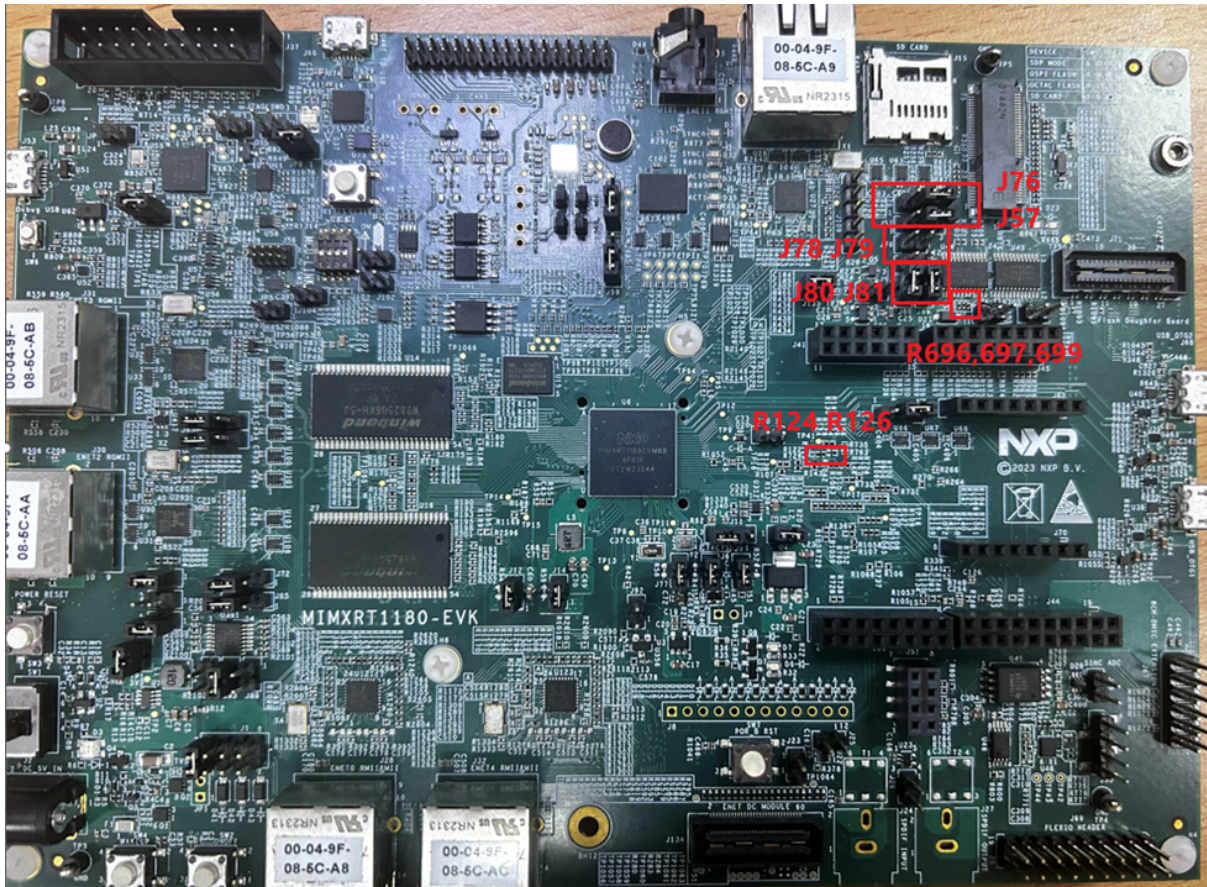
**Hardware Rework Guide for MIMXRT1180 and Murata M.2 Module** This section is a brief hardware rework guidance of the EdgeFast Bluetooth PAL on the NXP MIMXRT1180 board and the Murata's 1XK, 1ZM, 2EL or 2LL solution - direct M.2 connection to Embedded Artists EAR00385 (1XK), EAR00364 (1ZM), Rev-A1 (2EL) or EAR00500 (2LL) M.2 modules.

The hardware rework consists of two parts:

- HCI UART rework
- PCM interface rework

#### Hardware rework

- HCI UART rework:
  - Remove: R124,R126
  - Mount R696, R697
  - Connect J57 [2-3], J76 [2-3]
- PCM interface rework
  - Mount R699
  - Disconnect J78 J79
  - Connect J80 J81



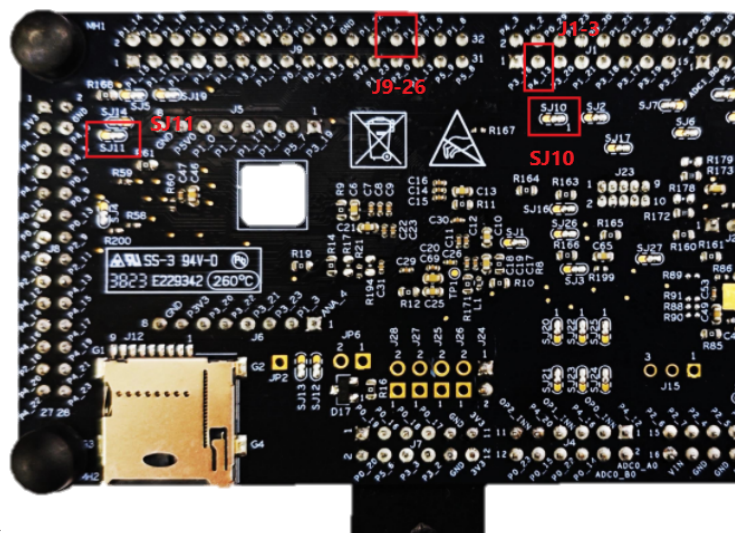
**Hardware Rework Guide for FRDM-MCXN947 and X-FRDM-WIFI-M.2 Adapter** This section is a brief hardware rework guidance of the EdgeFast Bluetooth PAL on the NXP FRDM-MCXN947 board and X-FRDM-WIFI-M.2 or the Murata's 2LL EAR00500 (2LL) M.2 modules solution.

The hardware rework consists of one part:

- UART interface rework

### Hardware rework

- UART interface rework
  - Remove SJ11 1-2, connect SJ11 2-3
  - Remove SJ10 1-2, connect J1-3 to J9-26
- X-FRDM-WIFI-M.2 jumper setting
  - Connect J8(On X-FRDM-WIFI-M.2) for 1.8V
  - Connect J24(On X-FRDM-WIFI-M.2) for 3.3V
  - Connect J19(On X-FRDM-WIFI-M.2) for 1.8V
  - Connect J25(On X-FRDM-WIFI-M.2) for 3.3V
  - Connect J15(On X-FRDM-WIFI-M.2) for 1.8V
  - Connect J16(On X-FRDM-WIFI-M.2) for 3.3V
  - Connect J17(On X-FRDM-WIFI-M.2) for 1.8V



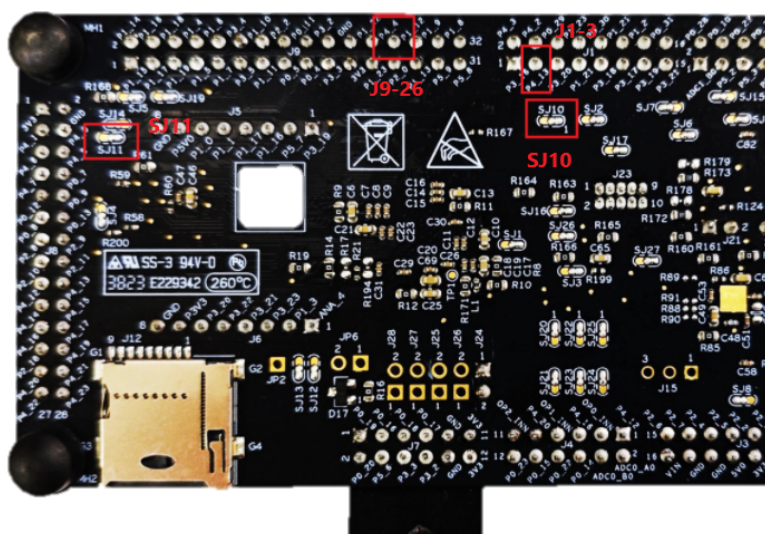
- Connect J18(On X-FRDM-WIFI-M.2) for 3.3V

**Hardware Rework Guide for FRDM-MCXM947 and FRDM-IW416-AW-AM510** This section is a brief hardware rework guidance of the EdgeFast Bluetooth PAL on the NXP FRDM-MCXM947 board and FRDM-IW416-AW-AM510 board. The hardware rework consists of two parts:

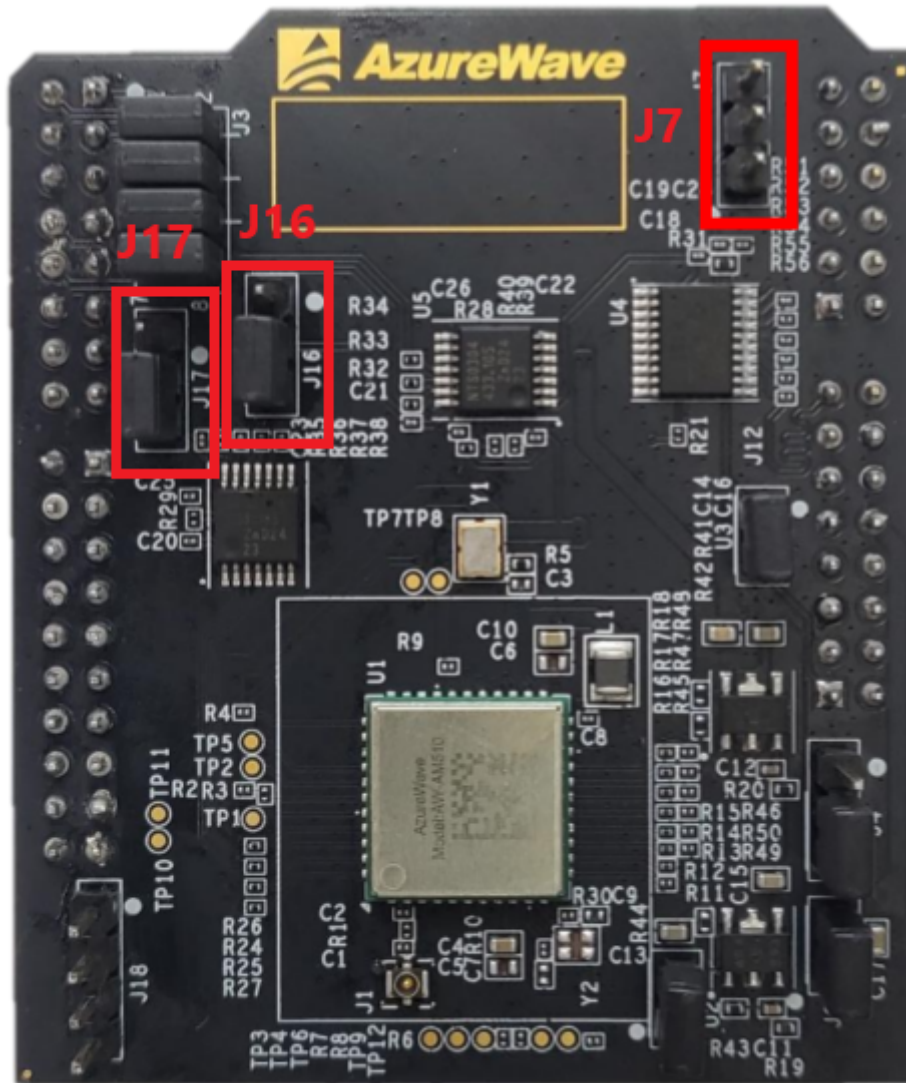
- UART interface rework
- FRDM-IW416-AW-AM510

### Hardware rework

- UART interface rework
  - Remove SJ11 1-2, connect SJ11 2-3
  - Remove SJ10 1-2, connect J1-3 to J9-26
- FRDM-IW416-AW-AM510 jumper setting
  - Connect J16 2-3 for 3.3V supply
  - Connect J17 2-3 for 3.3V UART voltage level



- Connect J7 2-3 for 3.3V SDIO voltage level



## Enabling Additional EdgeFast Bluetooth Protocol Abstraction Layer Examples on RT1064

**Introduction** NXP supports Bluetooth/Bluetooth Low Energy on RT1060EVK and RT1060EVKC. RT1064 has the same MCU die with RT1060EVK and RT1060EVKC and therefore it is possible to migrate the examples.

This document takes *peripheral\_ht* as an example and describes the steps to migrate EdgeFast examples from RT1060EVK to RT1064 (based on SDK 2.13.0) and from RT1060EVKC to RT1064 (based on SDK 2.14.0) with different toolchains including IAR, Arm GCC, and MDK.

**Migrate examples from RT1060EVK to RT1064** This topic describes the Common steps and the steps to migrate with the IAR, Arm GCC, and MDK toolchains.

### Common steps

1. Download *SDK\_2.13.0\_EVK-MIMXRT1060* and *SDK\_2.13.0\_EVK-MIMXRT1064*.
2. Copy the following folders from RT1060EVK package to RT1064 package: `<install_dir>/components/internal_flash/` `<install_dir>/middleware/edgefast_bluetooth/` `<install_dir>/middleware/wireless/`.

3. Create a folder named `edgefast_bluetooth_examples/` under `<rt1064_install_dir>/boards/evkmimxrt1064/`.
4. Copy the entire folder from `<rt1060evk_install_dir>/boards/evkmimxrt1060/edgefast_bluetooth_examples/peripheral_ht/` to `<rt1064_install_dir>/boards/evkmimxrt1064/edgefast_bluetooth_examples/`.
5. Copy `clock_config.[c/h]` and `board.c` from `<rt1064_install_dir>/boards/evkmimxrt1064/demo_apps/hello_world/` to `<rt1064_installed>/boards/evkmimxrt1064/edgefast_bluetooth_examples/peripheral_ht/` to replace the previous files.
6. Add `#define EDGEFAST_BT_LITTLEFS_MFLASH 1` in `<rt1064_install_dir>/boards/evkmimxrt1064/edgefast_bluetooth_examples/peripheral_ht/app_config.c`.
7. Make the following changes in `<rt1064_installed>/boards/evkmimxrt1064/edgefast_bluetooth/peripheral_ht/board.h`.

```
73 #define BOARD_FLASH_SIZE (0x800000U) 73 #define BOARD_FLASH_SIZE (0x400000U)
```

Parent topic:[Migrate examples from RT1060EVK to RT1064](#)

### IAR

1. Navigate to `<rt1064_install_dir>/boards/evkmimxrt1064/edgefast_bluetooth_examples/peripheral_ht/iar/`.
2. Make the following changes.

File name	Previous item	New item
peripheral_ht.ewp	1060	1064
	1062	1064

3. Rename `MIMXRT1062xxxxx_flexspi_nor.icf` as `MIMXRT1064xxxxx_flexspi_nor.icf` and make the following changes.

<pre>47 define symbol m_interrupts_start = 0x60002000; 48 define symbol m_interrupts_end   = 0x600023FF; 49 50 define symbol m_text_start       = 0x60002400; 51 define symbol _ROM_END_         = 0x6057FFFF;  06 define exported symbol m_boot_hdr_conf_start = 0x60000000; 07 define symbol m_boot_hdr_ivt_start   = 0x60001000; 08 define symbol m_boot_hdr_boot_data_start = 0x60001020; 09 define symbol m_boot_hdr_dcd_data_start = 0x60001030;  95 BT_LITTLEFS_STORAGE_SECTOR_SIZE = 0x1000; /* 4k flash secto 96 BT_LITTLEFS_STORAGE_MAX_SECTORS = (0x60800000 - EDGEFAST_BT_ 97 ***/</pre>	<pre>47 define symbol m_interrupts_start = 0x70002000; 48 define symbol m_interrupts_end   = 0x700023FF; 49 50 define symbol m_text_start       = 0x70002400; 51 define symbol _ROM_END_         = 0x7017FFFF;  06 define exported symbol m_boot_hdr_conf_start = 0x70000000; 07 define symbol m_boot_hdr_ivt_start   = 0x70001000; 08 define symbol m_boot_hdr_boot_data_start = 0x70001020; 09 define symbol m_boot_hdr_dcd_data_start = 0x70001030;  95 BT_LITTLEFS_STORAGE_SECTOR_SIZE = 0x1000; /* 4k flash sect 96 BT_LITTLEFS_STORAGE_MAX_SECTORS = (0x70400000 - EDGEFAST_BT_ 97 ***/</pre>
------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Parent topic:[Migrate examples from RT1060EVK to RT1064](#)

### Arm GCC

1. Navigate to `<rt1064_install_dir>/boards/evkmimxrt1064/edgefast_bluetooth_examples/peripheral_ht/armgcc/`.
2. Rename the following files.

Path	Previous name	New name
<code>&lt;rt1064_install_dir&gt;/middleware/wireless/ethermind/</code>	<code>middleware_edgefast_bluetooth_cmake</code>	<code>middleware_edgefast_bluetooth_k32w061_control_cmake</code>

3. Make following changes.

File name	Previous item	New item
config.cmake	1060	1064
	1062	1064
flags.cmake	1062	1064
CMakeLists.txt	1060	1064
	1062	1064

4. `mflash` is used in RT1064 instead of `flash_adapter`; therefore, comment `include(component_flexspi_nor_flash_adapter_rt1064_MIMXRT1064)` in `CMakeLists.txt`.

5. Rename `MIMXRT1062xxxxx_flexspi_nor.ld` as `MIMXRT1064xxxxx_flexspi_nor.ld` and make the following changes.

Parent topic: [Migrate examples from RT1060EVK to RT1064](#)

**MDK**

1. Navigate to `<rt1064_install_dir>/boards/evkmimxrt1064/edgefast_bluetooth_examples/peripheral_ht/mdk/`.

2. Make following changes.

File name	Previous item	New item
peripheral_ht.uvprojx	1060	1064
	1062	1064

3. Copy `evkmimxrt1064_flexspi_nor.ini` from `<rt1064_install_dir>/boards/evkmimxrt1064/demo_apps/hello_world/mdk/` to `<rt1064_install_dir>/boards/evkmimxrt1064/edgefast_bluetooth_examples/peripheral_ht/mdk/`.

4. Rename `MIMXRT1062xxxxx_flexspi_nor` as `MIMXRT1064xxxxx_flexspi_nor` and make the following changes.

Parent topic:[Migrate examples from RT1060EVK to RT1064](#)

**Migrate examples from RT1060EVK to RT1064** This topic describes the Common steps and the steps to migrate with the IAR, Arm GCC, and MDK toolchains.

### Common steps

1. Download SDK\_2.14.0\_EVKC-MIMXRT1060 and SDK\_2.14.0\_EVK-MIMXRT1064.
2. Copy the following folders from the RT1060EVK package to the RT1064 package: <install\_dir>/middleware/edgfast\_bluetooth/ <install\_dir>/middleware/wireless/ethermind.
3. Create a new folder named edgefast\_bluetooth\_examples/ under <rt1064\_install\_dir>/boards/evkmimxrt1064/.
4. Copy the entire folder from <rt1060evkc\_install\_dir>/boards/evkmimxrt1060/edgefast\_bluetooth\_examples/peripheral\_ht/ to <rt1064\_install\_dir>/boards/evkmimxrt1064/edgefast\_bluetooth\_examples/.
5. Copy clock\_config.[c/h] and board.c from <rt1064\_install\_dir>/boards/evkmimxrt1064/demo\_apps/hello\_world/ to <rt1064\_installed>/boards/evkmimxrt1064/edgefast\_bluetooth\_examples/peripheral\_ht/ to replace the previous files.

Parent topic:[Migrate examples from RT1060EVK to RT1064](#)

### IAR

1. Navigate to <rt1064\_install\_dir>/boards/evkmimxrt1064/edgefast\_bluetooth\_examples/peripheral\_ht/iar/.
2. Make the following changes in the listed order.

File name	Previous item	New item
peripheral_ht.ewp mflash/evkmimxrt1060	1062 mflash/mimxrt1064	1064
evkmimxrt1060	evkmimxrt1064	
6B	6A	

3. Rename MIMXRT1062xxxxx\_flexspi\_nor.icf as MIMXRT1064xxxxx\_flexspi\_nor.icf and make the following changes.

39 define symbol m_interrupts_start = 0x60002000;	39 define symbol m_interrupts_start = 0x70002000;
40 define symbol m_interrupts_end = 0x600023FF;	40 define symbol m_interrupts_end = 0x700023FF;
41	41
42 define symbol m_text_start = 0x60002400;	42 define symbol m_text_start = 0x70002400;
43 define symbol m_text_end = 0x607FFFFF -	43 define symbol m_text_end = 0x703FFFFF -
57 define exported symbol m_boot_hdr_conf_start = 0x60000000;	57 define exported symbol m_boot_hdr_conf_start = 0x70000000;
58 define symbol m_boot_hdr_ivt_start = 0x60001000;	58 define symbol m_boot_hdr_ivt_start = 0x70001000;
59 define symbol m_boot_hdr_boot_data_start = 0x60001020;	59 define symbol m_boot_hdr_boot_data_start = 0x70001020;
60 define symbol m_boot_hdr_dcd_data_start = 0x60001030;	60 define symbol m_boot_hdr_dcd_data_start = 0x70001030;

Parent topic:[Migrate examples from RT1060EVK to RT1064](#)

### Arm GCC

1. Navigate to <rt1064\_install\_dir>/boards/evkmimxrt1064/edgefast\_bluetooth\_examples/peripheral\_ht/armgcc/.

2. Copy folder from `<rt1060evkc_install_dir>/boards/evkcmimxrt1060/edgefast_bluetooth_examples/template/` to `<rt1064_install_dir>/boards/evkcmimxrt1064/edgefast_bluetooth_examples/` and rename the files.

Path	Previous name	New name
<code>&lt;rt1064_install_dir&gt;/boards/evkcmimxrt1064/edgefast_bluetooth_examples/</code>	<code> middleware_edgefast_bluetooth_mcux_linker_template_evkcmimxrt1060.cmake</code>	<code> middleware_edgefast_bluetooth_mcux_linker_template_evkcmimxrt1064.cmake</code>
<code>&lt;rt1064_install_dir&gt;/boards/evkcmimxrt1064/edgefast_bluetooth_examples/</code>	<code> middleware_edgefast_bluetooth_sdio_template_evkcmimxrt1060.cmake</code>	<code> middleware_edgefast_bluetooth_sdio_template_evkcmimxrt1064.cmake</code>

3. Add the following content to `<rt1064_install_dir>/devices/MIMXRT1064/all_lib_device.cmake` at appropriate location.

```

...
${CMAKE_CURRENT_LIST_DIR}/../../boards
${CMAKE_CURRENT_LIST_DIR}/../../boards/evkcmimxrt1064/edgefast_bluetooth_examples/
->template
${CMAKE_CURRENT_LIST_DIR}/../../middleware/edgefast_bluetooth
${CMAKE_CURRENT_LIST_DIR}/../../middleware/wireless/ethermind
...
include_if_use(middleware_edgefast_bluetooth_ble_ethermind_cm7f)
include_if_use(middleware_edgefast_bluetooth_ble_ethermind_lib_cm7f)
include_if_use(middleware_edgefast_bluetooth_br_ethermind_cm7f)
include_if_use(middleware_edgefast_bluetooth_br_ethermind_lib_cm7f)
include_if_use(middleware_edgefast_bluetooth_btble_ethermind_cm7f)
include_if_use(middleware_edgefast_bluetooth_btble_ethermind_lib_cm7f)
include_if_use(middleware_edgefast_bluetooth_common_ethermind)
include_if_use(middleware_edgefast_bluetooth_common_ethermind_hci)
include_if_use(middleware_edgefast_bluetooth_common_ethermind_hci_uart)
include_if_use(middleware_edgefast_bluetooth_config_ethermind)
include_if_use(middleware_edgefast_bluetooth_config_template)
include_if_use(middleware_edgefast_bluetooth_extension_common_ethermind)
include_if_use(middleware_edgefast_bluetooth_k32w061_controller)
include_if_use(middleware_edgefast_bluetooth_mcux_linker_template_evkcmimxrt1064)
include_if_use(middleware_edgefast_bluetooth_pal)
include_if_use(middleware_edgefast_bluetooth_pal_db_gen_ethermind)
include_if_use(middleware_edgefast_bluetooth_pal_host_msdfatfs_ethermind)
include_if_use(middleware_edgefast_bluetooth_pal_platform_ethermind)
include_if_use(middleware_edgefast_bluetooth_porting)
include_if_use(middleware_edgefast_bluetooth_porting_atomic)
include_if_use(middleware_edgefast_bluetooth_porting_list)
include_if_use(middleware_edgefast_bluetooth_porting_net)
include_if_use(middleware_edgefast_bluetooth_porting_toolchain)
include_if_use(middleware_edgefast_bluetooth_porting_work_queue)
include_if_use(middleware_edgefast_bluetooth_profile_bas)
include_if_use(middleware_edgefast_bluetooth_profile_dis)
include_if_use(middleware_edgefast_bluetooth_profile_fmp)
include_if_use(middleware_edgefast_bluetooth_profile_hps)
include_if_use(middleware_edgefast_bluetooth_profile_hrs)
include_if_use(middleware_edgefast_bluetooth_profile_hrs)
include_if_use(middleware_edgefast_bluetooth_profile_ipsp)
include_if_use(middleware_edgefast_bluetooth_profile_pxr)
include_if_use(middleware_edgefast_bluetooth_profile_tip)
include_if_use(middleware_edgefast_bluetooth_profile_wu)
include_if_use(middleware_edgefast_bluetooth_sdio_template_evkcmimxrt1064)
include_if_use(middleware_edgefast_bluetooth_shell)
include_if_use(middleware_edgefast_bluetooth_shell_ble)
include_if_use(middleware_edgefast_bluetooth_template)
include_if_use(middleware_edgefast_bluetooth_wifi_nxp_controller_base)...

```

4. Make the following changes in the listed order.

File name	Previous item	New item
config.cmake mflash_evkcmimxrt1060	MIMXRT1 mflash_rt	MIMXRT1064xxxxxA
1062	1064	
evkcmimxrt1060	evk- mimxrt10	
flags.cmake 6B	1062 6A	1064
CMakeLists.txt <rt1064_install_dir>/middleware/edgefast_bluetooth/ middleware_edgefast_bluetooth_template.cmake	1062 evkcmimx	1064 evk- mimxrt1064
<rt1064_install_dir>/middleware/wireless/ethermind/ middleware_edgefast_bluetooth_common_ethermind_hci_uart. cmake	1062	1064
<rt1064_install_dir>/middleware/wireless/ethermind/ middleware_edgefast_bluetooth_k32w061_controller.cmake	1062	1064
<rt1064_install_dir>/middleware/wireless/ethermind/ middleware_edgefast_bluetooth_wifi_nxp_controller_base.cmake	evkcmimx	evk- mimxrt1064
<rt1064_install_dir>/boards/evkcmimxrt1064/ edgefast_bluetooth_examples/middleware_edgefast_bluetooth_mcux_ cmake	1062	1064
<rt1064_install_dir>/boards/evkcmimxrt1064/ edgefast_bluetooth_examples/middleware_edgefast_bluetooth_sdio_t cmake	1062	1064

5. Rename MIMXRT1062xxxxxx\_flexspi\_nor.ld as MIMXRT1064xxxxxx\_flexspi\_nor.ld and make the following changes.

Parent topic: [Migrate examples from RT1060EVKC to RT1064](#)

### MDK

1. Navigate to <rt1064\_install\_dir>/boards/evkcmimxrt1064/edgefast\_bluetooth\_examples/peripheral\_ht/mdk/.
2. Make the following changes in the listed order.

File name	Previous item	New item
peripheral_ht.uvprojx	1062 mflash/evkcmimxrt1060	1064 mflash/mimxrt1064
	evkcmimxrt1060	evkcmimxrt1064
	6B	6A

- Copy `evkmimxrt1064_flexspi_nor.ini` from `<rt1064_install_dir>/boards/evkmimxrt1064/demo_apps/hello_world/mdk/` to `<rt1064_install_dir>/boards/evkmimxrt1064/edgefast_bluetooth_examples/peripheral_ht/mdk/`.
- Rename `MIMXRT1062xxxxx_flexspi_nor` as `MIMXRT1064xxxxx_flexspi_nor` and make the following changes.

43	#define m_flash_config_start	0x60000000	43	#define m_flash_config_start	0x70000000
44	#define m_flash_config_size	0x00001000	44	#define m_flash_config_size	0x00001000
45			45		
46	#define m_ivt_start	0x60001000	46	#define m_ivt_start	0x70001000
47	#define m_ivt_size	0x00001000	47	#define m_ivt_size	0x00001000
48			48		
49	#define m_interrupts_start	0x60002000	49	#define m_interrupts_start	0x70002000
50	#define m_interrupts_size	0x00004000	50	#define m_interrupts_size	0x00004000
51			51		
52	#define m_text_start	0x60002400	52	#define m_text_start	0x70002400
53	#define m_text_size	0x007FDC00 - LITTLEFS	53	#define m_text_size	0x003FDC00 - LITTLEFS

Parent topic: [Migrate examples from RT1060EVKC to RT1064](#)

**Note about the source code in the document** Example code shown in this document has the following copyright and BSD-3-Clause license:

Copyright 2024 NXP Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

- Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
- Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
- Neither the name of the copyright holder nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT HOLDER OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

## Enabling Additional Edgefast BT PAL Examples on M4 core for RT1170

**Introduction** RT1170 works with two cores: M7 and M4, on which both all EdgeFast examples can run. However, all the EdgeFast examples in the release package are enabled on M7. Only the A2DP source example is enabled on M4.

EdgeFast projects for both the cores share the demo source files but with different project settings. Therefore, the examples can be migrated.

This document describes the steps to migrate EdgeFast examples from M7 to M4 with different toolchains. There are four main steps required. Additionally, you can also delete the function.

- Create an M4 project
- Rearrange source files
- Rearrange project files

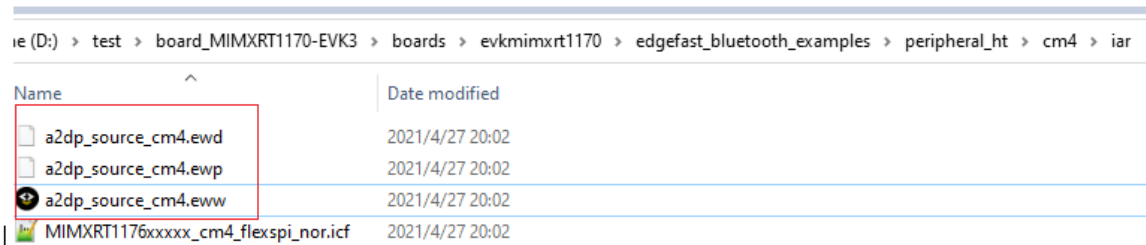
4. Adjust project settings
5. Delete function

In this document, the `peripheral_ht` example is used to demonstrate how to enable EdgeFast examples on M4 core with IAR and ARMGCC.

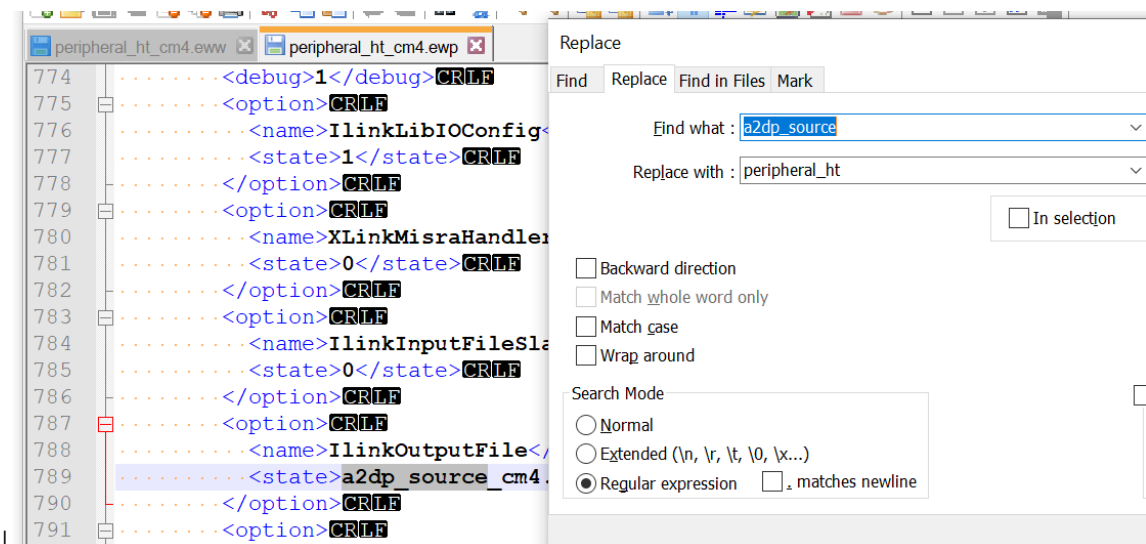
**IAR** This section describes the steps to create an M4 project with IAR, rearrange source and project files, adjust project settings, and delete function.

**Create an M4 project** To create an M4 project, perform the following steps:

1. Copy the folder `cm4` in the directory `<install_dir>boards\evkmimxrt1170\edgefast_bluetooth_examples\<example>` into the folder in which the example should be enabled. In this case, copy the folder `cm4` into the directory `<install_dir>boards\evkmimxrt1170\edgefast_bluetooth_examples\peripheral_ht`.
2. Open the folder `iar` in the directory `<install_dir>boards\evkmimxrt1170\edgefast_bluetooth_examples\peripheral_ht\iar`.
3. Rename the files. Change the file name `a2dp_source_cm4` to `peripheral_ht_cm4` in all the respective files.



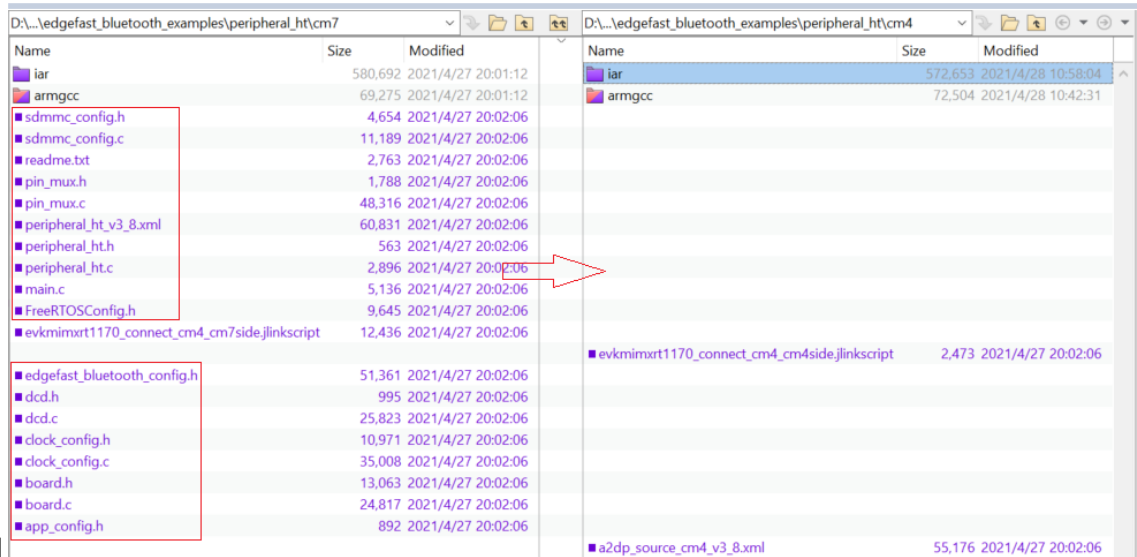
4. Open the files `peripheral_ht_cm4.eww` and `peripheral_ht_cm4.ewp` with a text editor, such as Notepad, Notepad++, Sublime, or Visual Studio Code.
5. Search and replace all `a2dp_source_cm4` with `peripheral_ht_cm4`, and then save the files.



Parent topic:[IAR](#)

**Rearrange source files** To rearrange source files, perform the following steps:

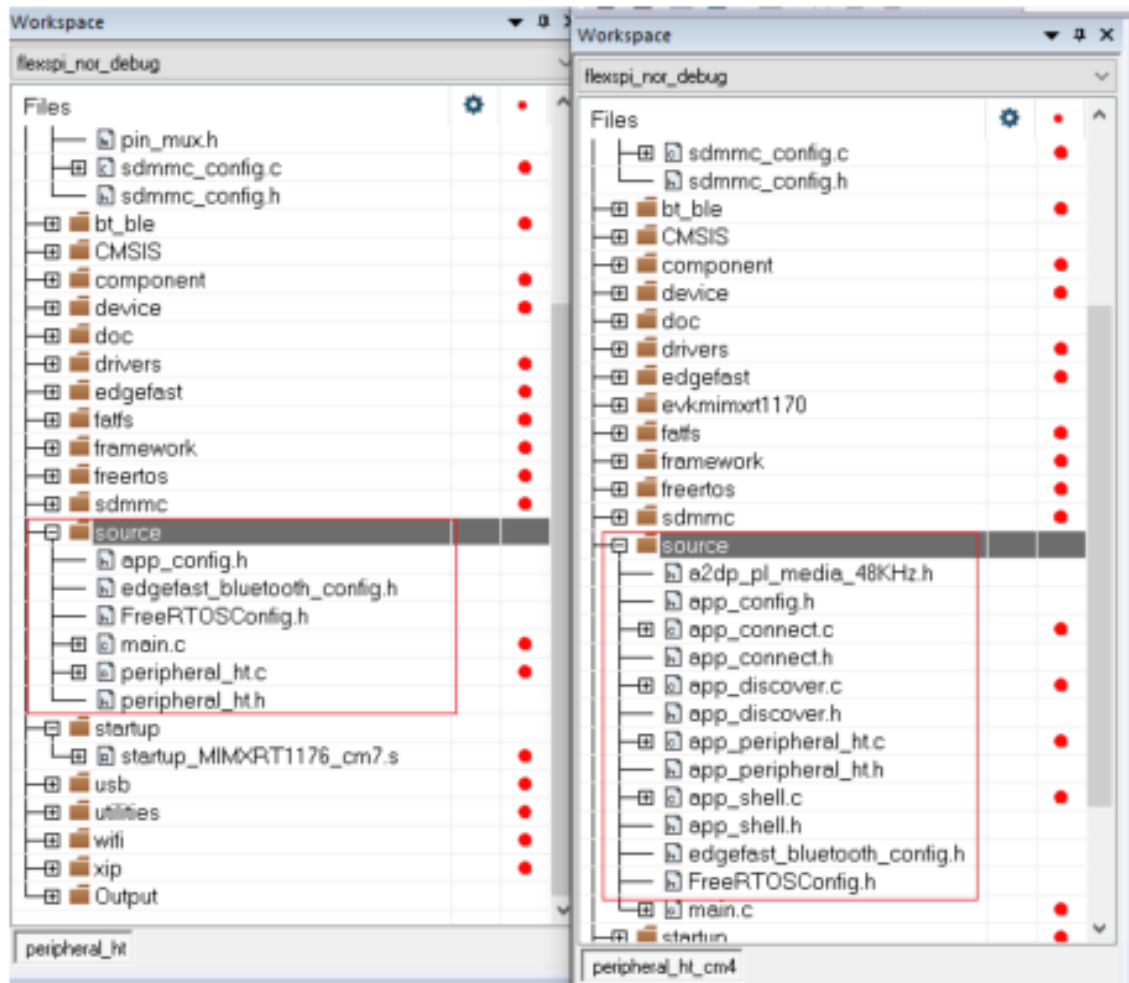
1. Open the folder *cm4* in the directory `<install_dir> boards|evkmimxrt1170|edgefast_bluetooth_examples|periph` and delete all files with the extensions `*.c` and `*.h`.
2. Copy the files with the extensions `*.c` and `*.h` from the folder `boards|evkmimxrt1170|edgefast_bluetooth_examples|peripheral_ht|cm7|` to the folder `<install_dir> boards|evkmimxrt1170|edgefast_bluetooth_examples|peripheral_ht|cm4.`



Parent topic:[IAR](#)

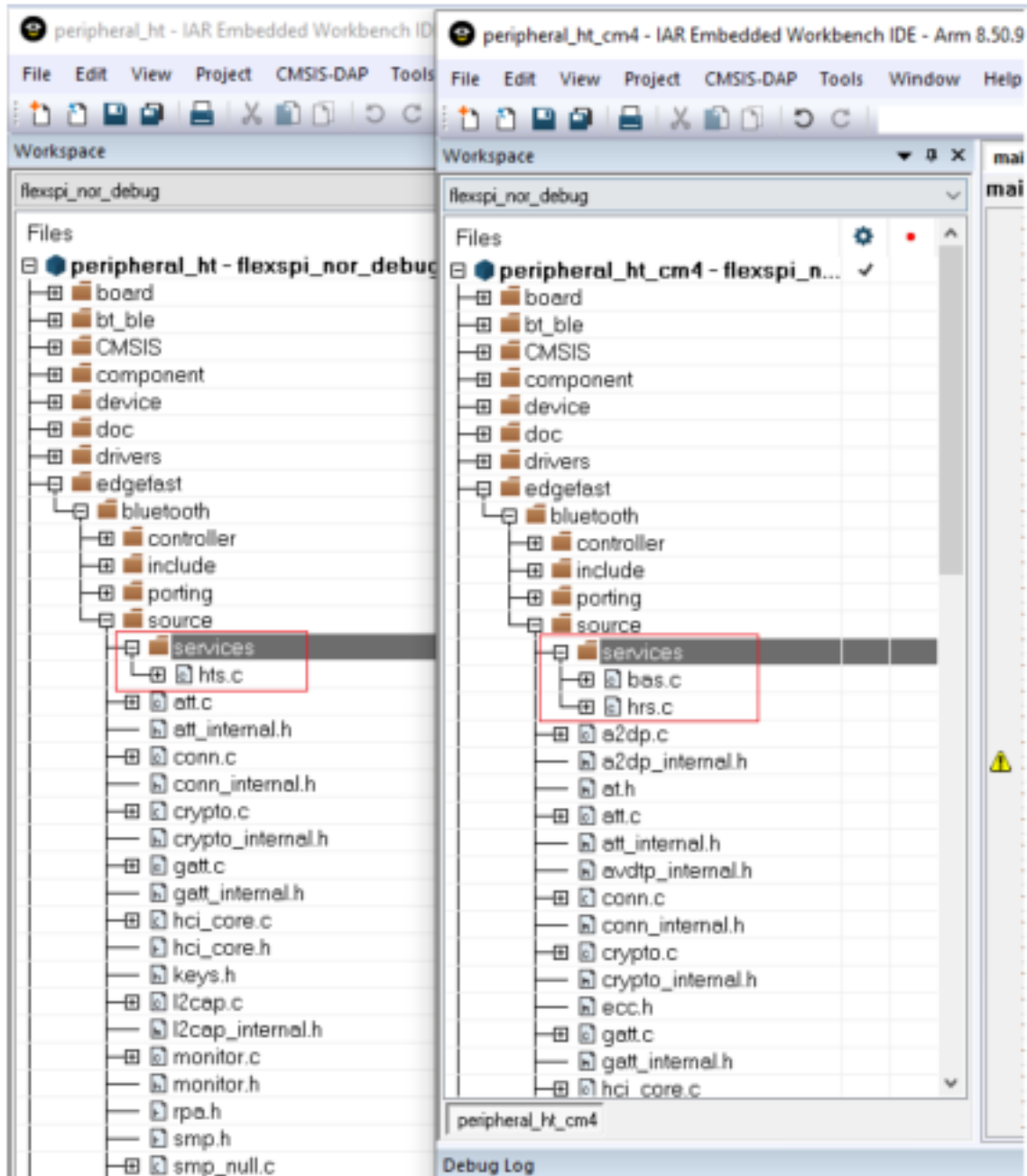
**Rearrange project files** To rearrange project files, perform the following steps:

1. Open the *peripheral\_ht\_cm7* and *peripheral\_ht\_cm4* IAR projects in the directories `<install_dir> boards|evkmimxrt1170|edgefast_bluetooth_examples|peripheral_ht |cm7|iar` and `<install_dir> boards|evkmimxrt1170|edgefast_bluetooth_examples|peripheral_ht |cm4|iar`.
  1. Compare the whole project directory, find file groups that the *cm7* project has but are missing in the *cm4* project. Add the missing file groups from the *cm7* project into the *cm4* project.
  2. Compare the difference between the two groups with the same name. Remove files that do not exist in the *cm7* project but exist in the *cm4* project. Find files that are available in the *cm7* project but are missing in the *cm4* project. Add the missing files from the *cm7* project into the *cm4* project.
2. For example, in the following figure, the files in the source group in the *cm4* project must be removed, and the files in the path: `<install_dir>|boards|evkmimxrt1170|edgefast_bluetooth_examples|peripheral_ht` with the same name as the files in the *cm7* project must be added into the *source* group.



3. Compare the *services* group.

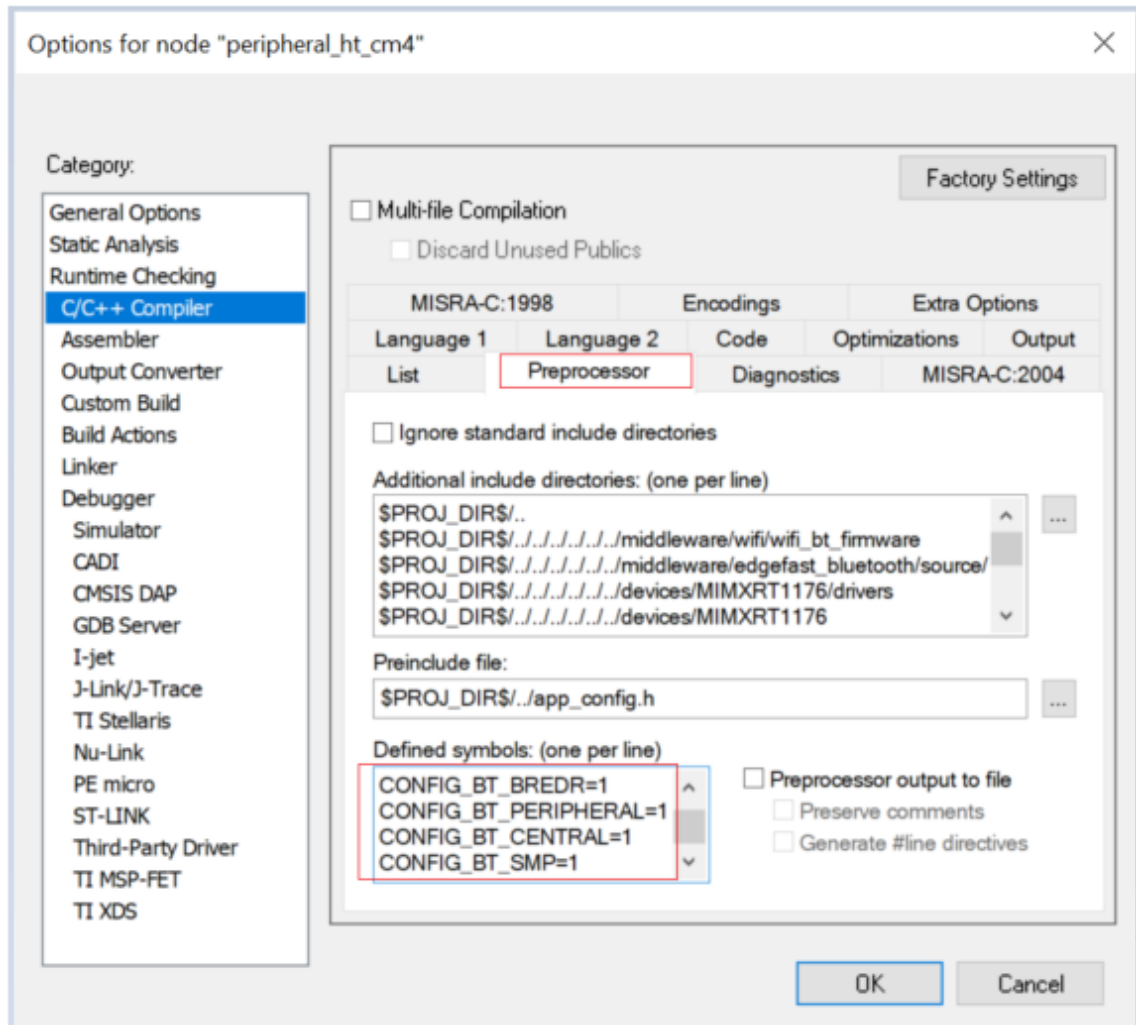
The peripheral hts profile is in the *services* folder. Add the hts.c file to the *services* group of the *cm4* folder.



Parent topic:[IAR](#)

**Adjust project settings** To adjust the project settings, perform the following steps:

1. Compare the macro in the project settings: **Option** > **C/C++ compiler** > **Preprocessor**.
2. Find the macros that do not exist in the **cm4** project but are available in the **cm7** project. Delete these macro. The rule is that **m7** macro setting should be same with **m4**.



The macros are in the `**peripheral\_ht\_cm4.ewp**` file.



**Parent topic:** [IAR](#)

**Delete function** As a final step, remove the function `SCB_DisableDCache()`; in `main.c`.

On the completion of the above steps, the M7 project successfully migrates to an M4 project. You can now download and debug the M4 example project.

**Parent topic:** [IAR](#)

**Arm GCC** This section describes the steps to create an M4 project with Arm GCC, rearrange source and project files, adjust project settings, and delete function.

**Create an M4 project** To create an M4 project, perform the following steps:

1. Copy the folder `<install_dir>boards\evkmimxrt1170\edgefast_bluetooth_examples\a2dp_source\cm4` into another folder in which the example should be enabled. In this case, copy the folder `<install_dir>`

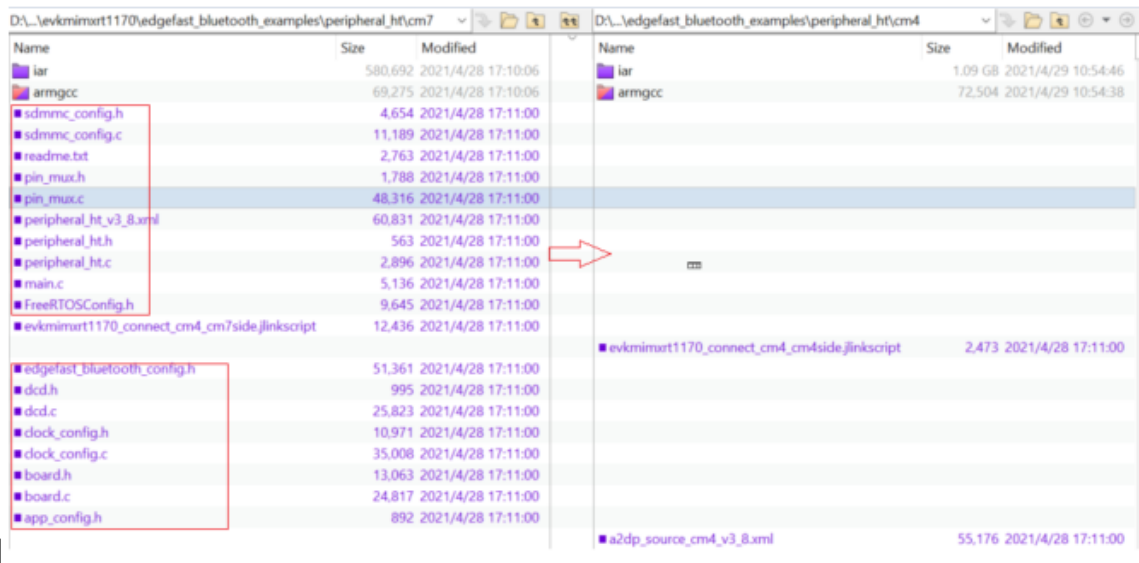
`boards\evkmimxrt1170\edgefast_bluetooth_examples\a2dp_source_cm4` into `<install_dir>boards\evkmimxrt1170\edgefast_bluetooth_examples\peripheral_ht\cm4*`.

2. Open the file `CMakeLists.txt` located in the path: `<install_dir>boards\evkmimxrt1170\edgefast_bluetooth_examples\peripheral_ht\cm4\armgcc`.
3. Search and replace all `a2dp_source_cm4` with `peripheral_ht_cm4`, and then save the files.

Parent topic: [Arm GCC](#)

**Rearrange source files** To rearrange source files, perform the following steps:

1. Open the folder `<install_dir>boards\evkmimxrt1170\edgefast_bluetooth_examples\peripheral_ht\cm4` and delete all files with the extensions `*.c` and `*.h`.
2. Copy the files with the extensions `*.c` and `*.h` in the folder `<install_dir>boards\evkmimxrt1170\edgefast_bluetooth_examples\peripheral_ht\cm7` to the folder `<install_dir>boards\evkmimxrt1170\edgefast_bluetooth_examples\peripheral_ht\cm4`.



Parent topic: [Arm GCC](#)

**Rearrange project files** To rearrange project files, perform the following steps:

1. Open the `CMakeLists.txt` of the two examples respectively. The two files are in the `<install_dir>boards\evkmimxrt1170\edgefast_bluetooth_examples\peripheral_ht\cm7\armgcc` and `<install_dir>boards\evkmimxrt1170\edgefast_bluetooth_examples\peripheral_ht\cm4\armgcc` folders respectively.
2. Search the section `add_executable`. Compare the difference between the two sections. Remove files that do not exist in the `cm7` project but are available in the `cm4` project. Add the files that exist in the `cm7` project but are not available in the `cm4` project into the `cm4` project. For example, in the following figure, the files in the red box should be removed and the files in the green box must be added into the `cm4` project.

Parent topic:[Arm GCC](#)

**Adjust project setting** To adjust the project settings, perform the following steps:

1. Open the *flags.cmake* of the two examples respectively. The two files are in the `<install_dir>boards\evkmimxrt1170\edgfast_bluetooth_examples\peripheral_ht\cm7\armgcc` and `<install_dir>boards\evkmimxrt1170\edgfast_bluetooth_examples\peripheral_ht\cm4\armgcc` folders respectively.
2. Search the **CMAKE\_C\_FLAGS\_DEBUG** section.
  1. Compare the macro between the two sections.
  2. Add the macros that do not exist in the **cm4** project but are available in the **cm7** project into the cm4 project. The rule is that macro setting should be same.
  3. Delete the macros highlighted in the red rectangle.

Parent topic:[Arm GCC](#)

**Delete function** As a final step, remove the function “*SCB\_DisableDCache()* in *main.c*.

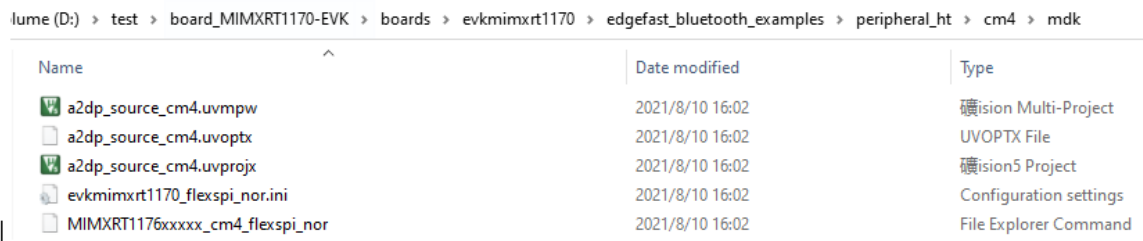
On the completion of the above steps, the M7 project successfully migrates to an M4 project. You can now download and debug the M4 example project.

Parent topic:[Arm GCC](#)

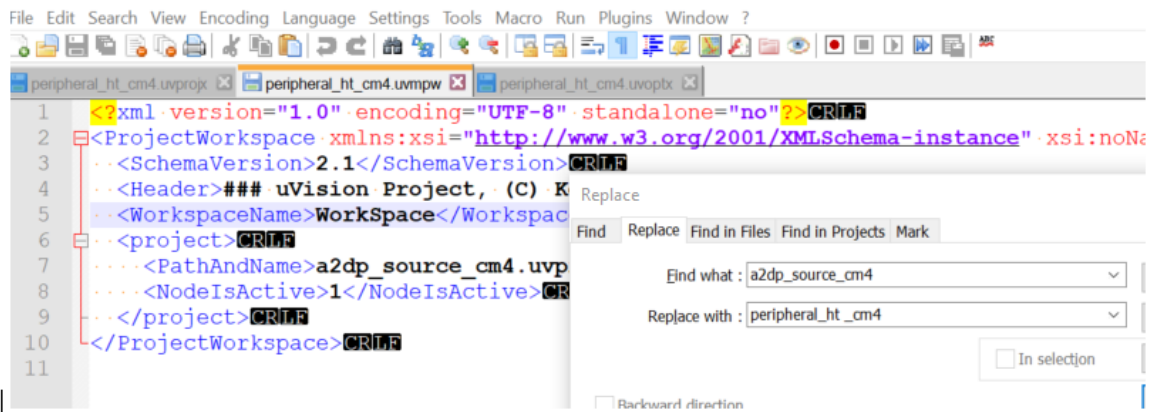
**MDK** This section describes the steps to create an M4 project with MDK, rearrange source and project files, adjust project settings, and delete function.

## Create an M4 project

1. Copy folder *cm4* from `<install_dir>boards|evkmimxrt1170|edgefast_bluetooth_examples|a2dp_source|cm4` into the folder in where the example must be enabled. In this case, copy folder *cm4* into directory `<install_dir>boards|evkmimxrt1170|edgefast_bluetooth_examples|peripheral_ht`.
2. Open folder *mdk* from `<install_dir>boards|evkmimxrt1170|edgefast_bluetooth_examples|peripheral_ht|cm4`



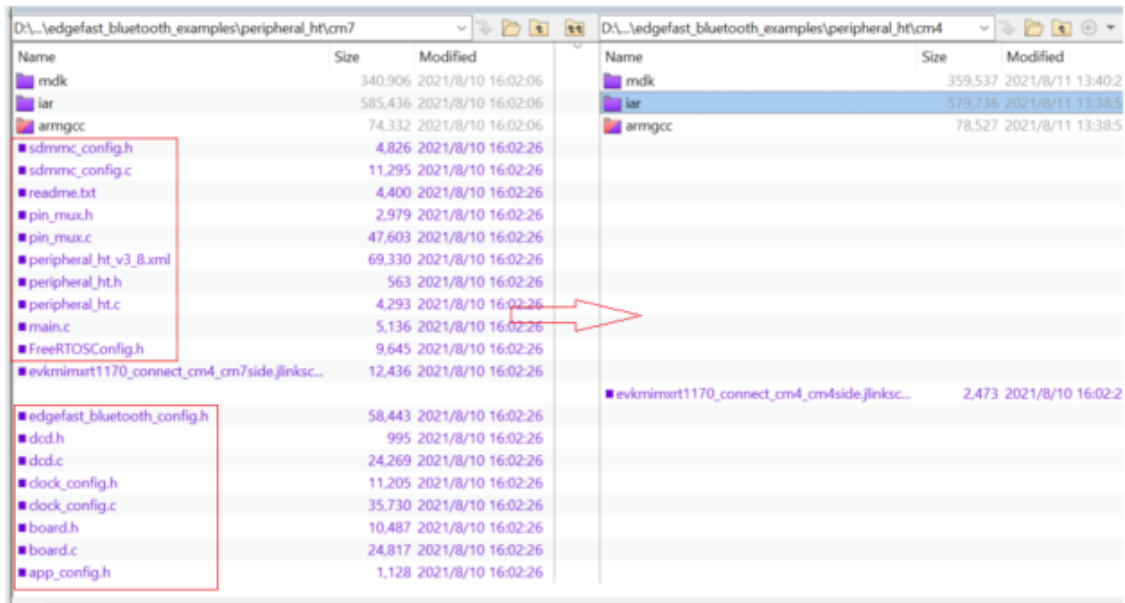
3. Change the filename *a2dp\_source\_cm4* to *peripheral\_ht\_cm4* respectively.
4. Open the files *\*peripheral\_ht\_cm4.\*uvmpw* and *peripheral\_ht\_cm4.uvoptx*, *peripheral\_ht\_cm4.uvprojx* with a text editor, such as Notepad, Notepad++, Sublime, or Visual Studio code.
5. Search and replace *a2dp\_source\_cm4* with *peripheral\_ht\_cm4*, and then save the files.



Parent topic:[MDK](#)

## Rearrange source files

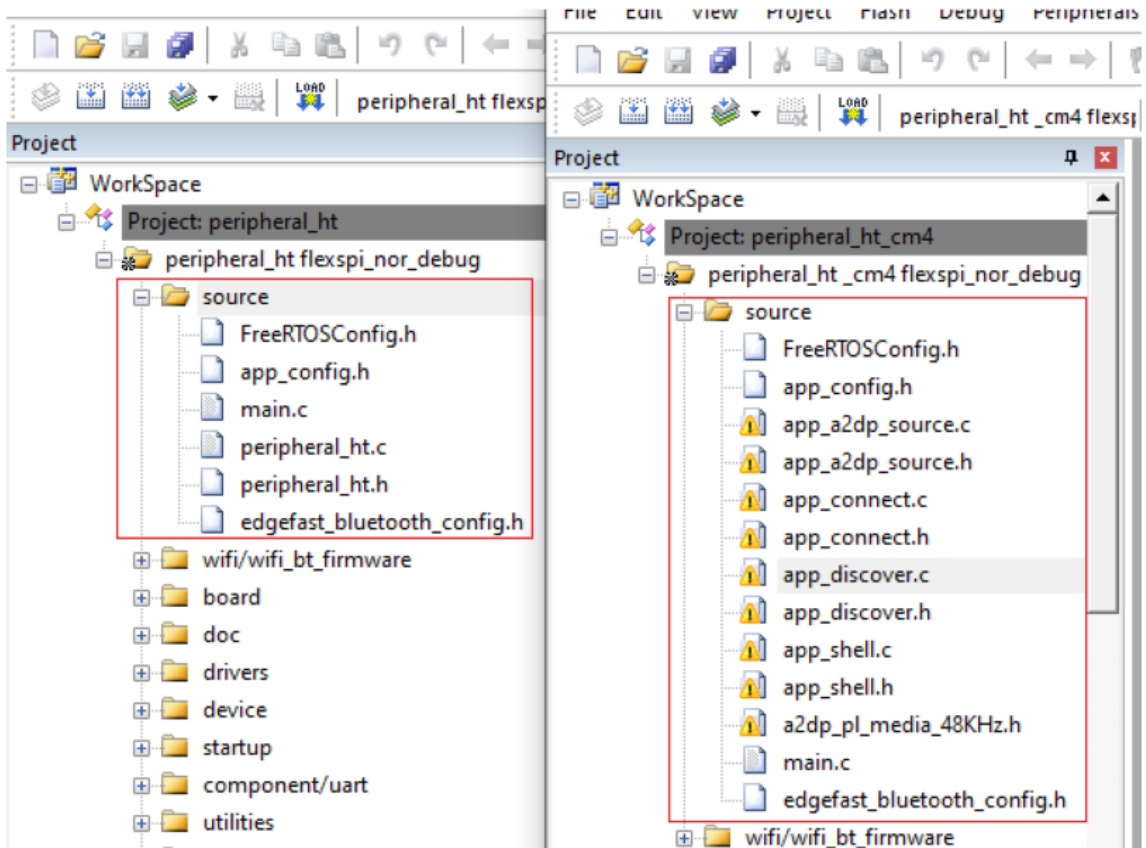
1. Open folder *cm4* in `*<install_dir>*boards|evkmimxrt1170|edgefast_bluetooth_examples|peripheral_ht|cm4`, and delete all files with the `.c` and `.h` file name extension.
2. Copy files with the `.c` and `.h` filename extension in folder *cm7* with directory `<install_dir>boards|evkmimxrt1170|edgefast_bluetooth_examples|peripheral_ht|cm7` to folder *cm4* with directory `<install_dir>boards|evkmimxrt1170|edgefast_bluetooth_examples|peripheral_ht|cm4`.



Parent topic: [MDK](#)

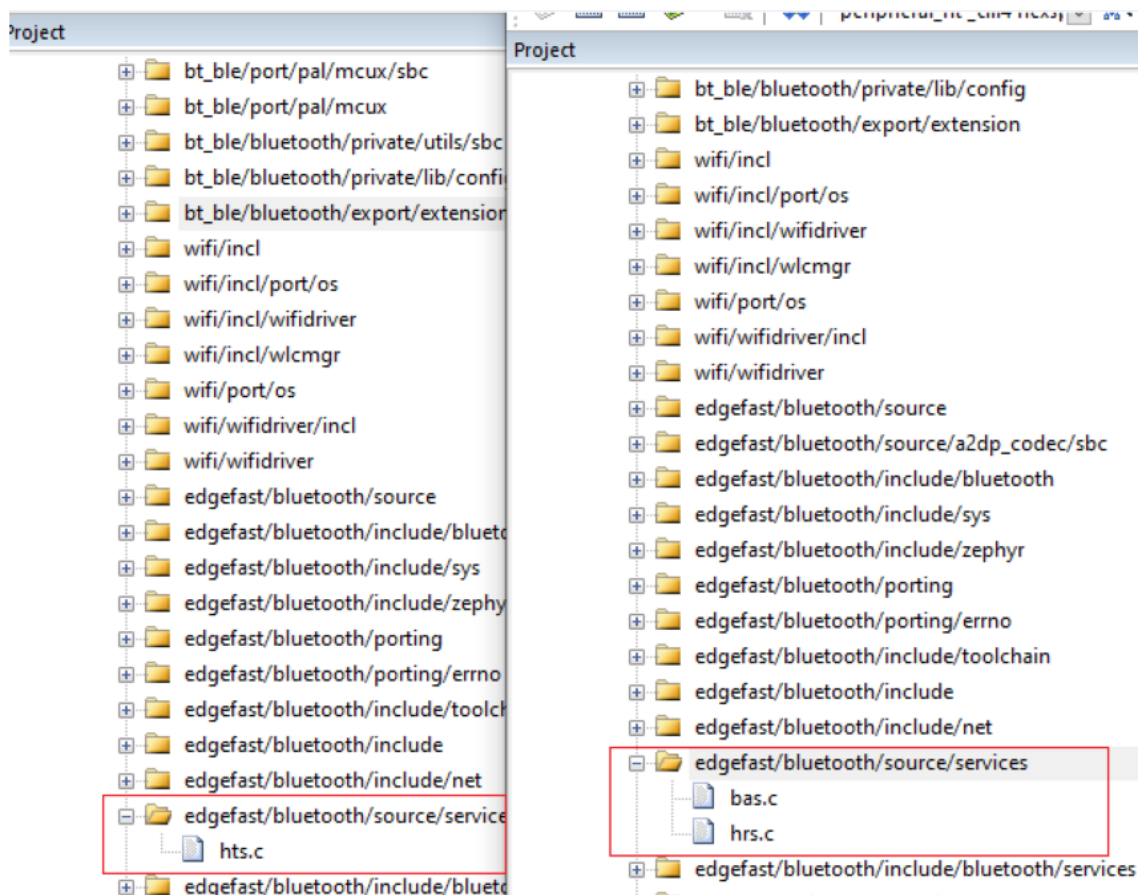
### Rearrange project files

1. Open the *peripheral\_ht\_cm7* and *peripheral\_ht\_cm4* IAR projects. The two workspaces are located in `*<install_dir>*boards|evkmimxrt1170|edgefast_bluetooth_examples|peripheral_ht|cm7|mdk` and `*<install_dir>*boards|evkmimxrt1170|edgefast_bluetooth_examples|peripheral_ht|cm4|mdk` respectively.
  - Compare the whole project directory, find file groups that the cm7 project has but the cm4 project not and then add these groups into the cm4 project.
  - Compare the difference between the two groups with the same name, remove files that do not exist in the cm7 project but exist in the cm4 project; find files that the cm7 project has but the cm4 project not and then add these files into the cm4 project.
2. For the *source* group, in this case, the files in the source group in the cm4 project must be removed, and the files in the path `<install_dir>|boards|evkmimxrt1170|boards|evkmimxrt1170|edgefast_bluetooth_examples|peripheral_ht|cm4` with the same name as the files in the cm7 project must be added into the *source* group.



### 3. Compare the **service: group**.

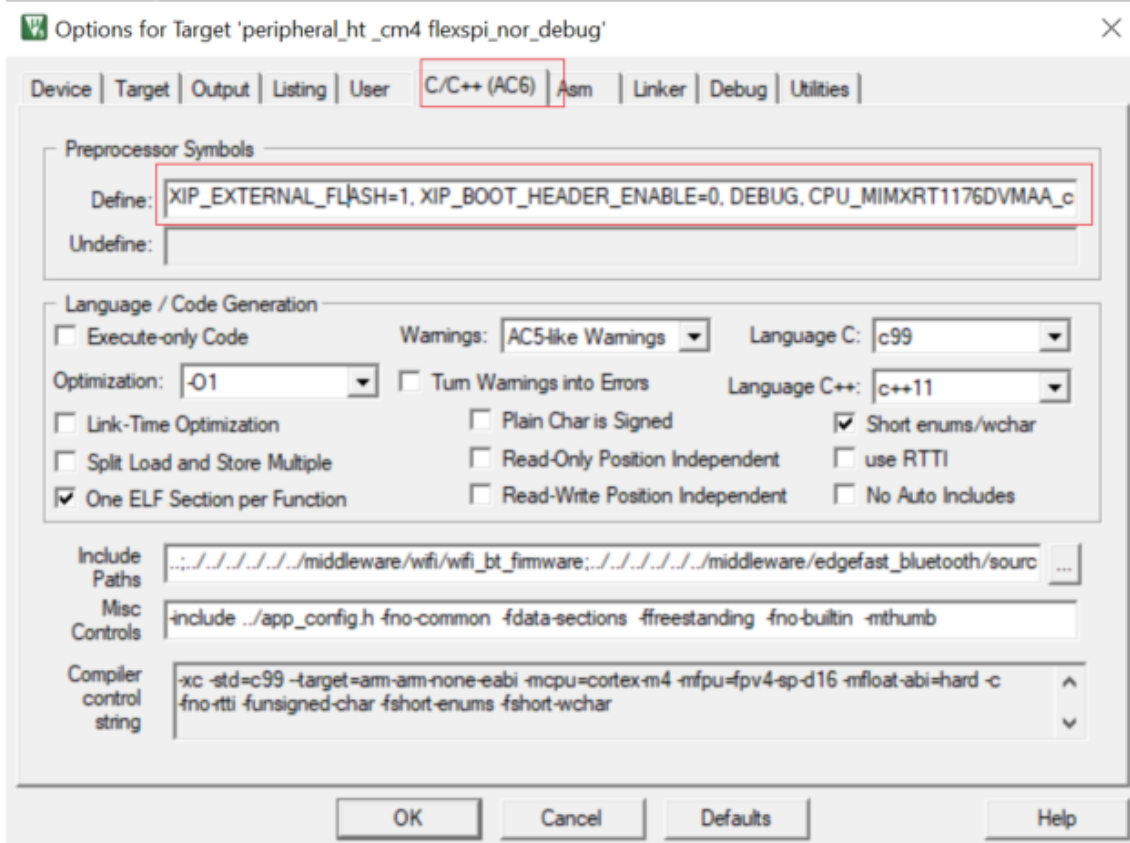
Peripheral hts profile is located in “**service**” folder. Add the hts.c file to the services group of the cm4 folder.



Parent topic: [MDK](#)

### Adjust project settings

1. Compare the macro in the project settings: *preprocessor symbols*.
2. Compare the macro that does exist in the cm4 project but exists in the cm7 project.
3. Delete the following macro. The rule is that m7 macro setting should be same as m4 .  
The macro could also be found in be eripheral\_ht\_cm4.uvprojx.





Parent topic:[MDK](#)

**Delete function** Remove function `SCB_DisableDCache()`; in `main.c`.

On successful completion of the above steps, the M7 project is changed to the M4 project. You can now download and debug the M4 example project.

Parent topic:[MDK](#)

**Note** The above steps are based on the `a2dp_source` example and help enable the `peripheral_ht` example on the `m4` core. You can use the same steps for other examples and migrate them from an `m7` project to an `m4` project.



# Chapter 2

## RTOS

### 2.1 FreeRTOS

#### 2.1.1 FreeRTOS kernel

Open source RTOS kernel for small devices.

[FreeRTOS kernel for MCUXpresso SDK Readme](#)

[FreeRTOS kernel for MCUXpresso SDK ChangeLog](#)

[FreeRTOS kernel Readme](#)

#### 2.1.2 FreeRTOS drivers

This is set of NXP provided FreeRTOS reentrant bus drivers.

#### 2.1.3 backoffalgorithm

Algorithm for calculating exponential backoff with jitter for network retry attempts.

[Readme](#)

#### 2.1.4 corehttp

C language HTTP client library designed for embedded platforms.

#### 2.1.5 corejson

JSON parser.

**Readme**

### **2.1.6 coremqtt**

MQTT publish/subscribe messaging library.

### **2.1.7 corepkcs11**

PKCS #11 key management library.

**Readme**

### **2.1.8 freertos-plus-tcp**

Open source RTOS FreeRTOS Plus TCP.

**Readme**